

Contributions to Microwave Passive Component Design

by

Petrie Meyer



*Dissertation presented for the degree of Doctorate in
Engineering in the Faculty of Engineering at Stellenbosch
University*

Supervisor: Prof. C. Fourie

December 2019

Declaration

By submitting this dissertation electronically, I declare that the entirety of the work contained therein is my own, original work, that I am the sole author thereof (save to the extent explicitly otherwise stated), that reproduction and publication thereof by Stellenbosch University will not infringe any third party rights and that I have not previously in its entirety or in part submitted it for obtaining any qualification.

Date: December 2019

Copyright © 2019 Stellenbosch University
All rights reserved.

Abstract

Contributions to Microwave Passive Component Design

P. Meyer

Dissertation: DEng

December 2019

The dissertation presents an overview of the publications of the candidate and his research group on design techniques and structures for microwave passive networks which have advanced the field in a number of aspects. They have also impacted materially on local industry. The work includes three main activities, namely numerical modelling and analysis of microwave structures, microwave filter applications, and microwave antenna applications.

A particular focus is placed on structures supporting multiple propagating modes, as this has been a recurring topic throughout the career of the author. Firstly applied to microwave waveguide filters, his most recent work extends multimodal concepts also to antennas. The modelling of these structures forms a crucial part of the design procedure, and also contributes largely to the ability of designers to exploit this behaviour to achieve added functionality and improved performance.

Uittreksel

Contributions to Microwave Passive Component Design

P. Meyer

Proefskrif: DIng

Desember 2019

Hierdie proefskrif bied 'n oorsig aan van die kandidaat en sy navorsingsgroep se publikasies in die veld van passiewe mikrogolf netwerke en antennes, wat 'n bydrae tot die veld gemaak het, en 'n impak in industrie gehad het. Drie hoof aktiwiteite word aangebied, naamlik numeriese modellering en analise, mikrogolffilter toepassings, en mikrogolfantennes.

'n Spesifieke fokus word geplaas op strukture wat die voortplanting van meer as een modus ondersteun, aangesien hierdie 'n deurlopende tema was in die kandidaat se hele loopbaan. Oorspronklik toegepas op filterstrukture, verskyn hierdie tema ook in die mees onlangse werk op antennes. Die modellering van hierdie strukture vorm 'n integrale deel van die ontwerpsiklus, en dra beduidend by tot die vermoë van ontwerpers om hierdie tipe gedrag te benut, om sodoende ekstra funksionaliteit in te bou in die ontwerp, en werkverrigting te verhoog.

Acknowledgements

I would like to express my sincere gratitude to the following people and organisations ...

Contents

Declaration	i
Abstract	ii
Uittreksel	iii
Acknowledgements	iv
Contents	v
List of Figures	vi
1 Background	1
1.1 Introduction	1
1.2 A Short Profile	2
1.3 Contributions	3
1.4 Layout	4
1.5 Recognition	4
2 Modelling	6
2.1 Introduction	6
2.2 The Combined Mode-Matching and Method-of-Lines Technique	8
2.3 Other Computational Work	12
2.4 Measurement	14
2.5 Parameter Extraction of FET Circuit models	14
2.6 Interpolation-Based Meta-Models of Microwave Components .	19
2.7 Conclusion	31
3 Microwave Filters	32
3.1 Introduction	32
3.2 Bandpass filters utilising higher-order modes	32
3.3 Bandstop filters for microwave heating applications	39
3.4 Waffle-iron filters	42
3.5 Absorbing filters	46
3.6 Tunable and Planar Filters	50

3.7	Multi-band filters	62
3.8	Other Filters	66
3.9	Conclusion	72
4	Passive Devices	73
4.1	Introduction	73
4.2	Matching networks	73
4.3	Directional Couplers	75
4.4	Power dividers and combiners	78
4.5	Microwave Switches	82
4.6	Conclusion	87
5	Antennas, Antenna Feeds, and Mixed-Mode Formulations	88
5.1	Introduction	88
5.2	X-band monopulse waveguide feed	88
5.3	The Square Kilometre Array Antenna	90
5.4	Multi-mode antennas and mixed-mode systems	92
5.5	Reflector antenna feeds	107
5.6	Conclusion	111
6	Conclusions	113
	Appendices	114
A	Postgraduate Students	115
A.1	DEng Graduates	115
A.2	Postdoctoral Fellows	115
A.3	PhD Graduates	115
A.4	Current PhD students - 2018	116
A.5	Master's students upgraded to PhD	116
A.6	Master's Graduates	117
A.7	Current Master's students	118
	Bibliography	119

List of Figures

2.1	E-plane waveguide filter	7
2.2	Discretisation for 2D Method-of-Lines	9

2.3	Interdigital filter top view	10
2.4	Interdigital filter cross-sections	11
2.5	Interdigital filter response	11
2.6	13-Element small-signal FET-model	15
2.7	Comparison of extraction errors	16
2.8	Global error function behaviour	17
2.9	Global error function behaviour	17
2.10	Robustness plots and histograms	18
2.11	Model responses of successive order	21
2.12	Optimised response showing support points	21
2.13	Typical characteristic function	21
2.14	Characteristic function as numerator and denominator showing support points	21
2.15	Microstrip line cross-section	22
2.16	Finline cross-section	22
2.17	Microstrip modes	22
2.18	Finline modes	22
2.19	Two-variable function landscape showing support points	23
2.20	Two-variable error landscape	23
2.21	Step in waveguide	23
2.22	Model errors for step in waveguide	23
2.23	Iris in waveguide	24
2.24	Model errors for iris in waveguide	24
2.25	Step in waveguide for multi-variate, multiple output problem	24
2.26	Model errors for step in waveguide for multi-variate, multiple output problem	24
2.27	Slot in waveguide for multi-variate, multiple output problem	24
2.28	Model errors for slot in waveguide for multi-variate, multiple output problem	24
2.29	Input and output coupled ring resonators	25
2.30	Fit of interpolation model	26
2.31	Split modes	27
2.32	Masked modes	27
2.33	Identification of modes for thin ring	28
2.34	Identification of modes for thick ring	29
2.35	Resonance frequencies of modes for thin ring	30
2.36	Resonance frequencies of modes for thick ring	30
2.37	Calculation of Q	30
2.38	Resonant frequency and Q results	30
3.1	Circuit model for a mult-mode discontinuity	33
3.2	Basic waveguide discontinuity structure	35
3.3	Basic waveguide discontinuity circuit	35
3.4	Basic waveguide discontinuity structure	35

3.5	Basic waveguide discontinuity circuit	35
3.6	Typical cylindrical waveguide iris	36
3.7	Performance of Space-Mapping optimisation	36
3.8	Typical characteristic polynomial	36
3.9	Quad-mode diplexer modes	37
3.10	Quad-mode diplexer	37
3.11	Quad-mode diplexer results	37
3.12	Shorted-stub filter	38
3.13	Shorted-stub coupling	38
3.14	Shorted-stub filter results	38
3.15	Dielectric heating oven	39
3.16	Bandstop filter functional block	40
3.17	Functional block equivalent circuit	40
3.18	Functional block parameter space	40
3.19	Bandstop filter convergence	40
3.20	Bandstop filter	41
3.21	Bandstop filter result - mode 1	41
3.22	Bandstop filter result - mode 2	41
3.23	Bandstop filter result - mode 3	41
3.24	Dielectric heating oven	42
3.25	Waffle-Iron filter	43
3.26	Waffle-Iron filter with oblique pattern 1	44
3.27	Waffle-Iron filter with oblique pattern 2	44
3.28	Comparison of waffle-iron design approaches	44
3.29	Waffle-Iron filter measured results S11	45
3.30	Waffle-Iron filter measured results S21	45
3.31	Planar waffle-iron filter 1	46
3.32	Planar waffle-iron filter 2	46
3.33	Planar waffle-iron stackup	46
3.34	Typical planar manufacturing problems	46
3.35	Planar waffle-iron filter 1 measurement	47
3.36	Planar waffle-iron filter 2 measurement	47
3.37	Etched ring absorber	48
3.38	Etched ring filter results	48
3.39	Principle of absorbing filter	48
3.40	Basic absorbing slot structure	49
3.41	Absorbing slot equivalent circuit	49
3.42	Absorbing slot filter	49
3.43	Absorbing filter S11	50
3.44	Absorbing filter S21	50
3.45	Triple band resonator	51
3.46	Triple band resonator equivalent circuit	51
3.47	Triple band detuned resonator	52
3.48	Detuned resonance frequencies	52

3.49 Triple band filter	52
3.50 Triple band filter measurements	52
3.51 Composite split-ring resonator	53
3.52 Composite split-ring resonator states	53
3.53 Composite split-ring resonator measurements	54
3.54 Mixed coupling matrix	54
3.55 Mixed coupling circuit	54
3.56 Mixed coupling filter layout	55
3.57 Mixed coupling filter measurements	55
3.58 Pedestal resonator structure	56
3.59 Pedestal resonator characteristics	56
3.60 Pedestal resonator filters	57
3.61 Pedestal resonator filter 1 measurements	57
3.62 Pedestal resonator filter 1 measurements	58
3.63 Spatially decoupled biasing principle	59
3.64 Tunable staircase filter using spatial decoupling	59
3.65 Filter measurements	59
3.66 Tunable Non-Resonant-Node inverter principle	60
3.67 Tunable NRN Coupling	61
3.68 Tunable NRN spurious response	61
3.69 Tunable NRN Filter	61
3.70 Tunable NRN filter measurements S21	61
3.71 Tunable NRN filter measurements S11	62
3.72 Tunable NRN filter measurements S11	62
3.73 Multiband frequency transform	63
3.74 Multiband frequency transform function	64
3.75 Multiband LC transform	64
3.76 Multiband resonator transform	64
3.77 Multiband filter	65
3.78 Multiband filter response	65
3.79 Multiband waveguide filter	65
3.80 Multiband waveguide filter response	65
3.81 Multiband coaxial filter layout	66
3.82 Multiband coaxial filter photograph	66
3.83 Multiband coaxial filter measurements	66
3.84 Multiband coaxial filter measurements	66
3.85 Tunable evanescent mode filter	67
3.86 Filter measurements	67
3.87 Miniaturised combline filter structure	67
3.88 Miniaturised combline filter	67
3.89 Miniaturised combline filter measurements	68
3.90 Wideband measurements	68
3.91 Combline filter for KAT receiver	68
3.92 KAT filter measurements	69

LIST OF FIGURES

x

3.93 KAT filter measurements	69
3.94 KAT7 filter photograph	69
3.95 KAT7 filter layout	69
3.96 KAT7 filter measurements	69
3.97 KAT7 filter measurements	69
3.98 Cylindrical waveguide diplexer	70
3.99 Comblin diplexer	70
3.100 Comblin diplexer measurements	71
3.101 Comblin diplexer measurements	71
3.102 Coaxial diplexer	71
3.103 Coaxial diplexer measurements	71
4.1 Waveguide to finline transition	74
4.2 Focussing optimiser	75
4.3 VR optimiser	75
4.4 Finline taper measured results	75
4.5 Finline taper measured results	75
4.6 Moreno crossed-slot directional coupler	76
4.7 Bandwidth comparisons for couplers with different roof heights . .	76
4.8 Two-layer crossed-slot measured results	77
4.9 Two-layer crossed-slot measured results	77
4.10 Three-layer crossed-slot measured results	78
4.11 Basic conical line combiner	79
4.12 Conical combiner input port detail	79
4.13 Conical combiner common port detail	79
4.14 Conical combiner cross section	79
4.15 Conical combiner measured S11	80
4.16 Conical combiner measured Sn1	80
4.17 Tapered line conical combiner common port detail	80
4.18 Tapered line conical combiner cross section	80
4.19 Tapered line conical combiner measured S11	81
4.20 Tapered line conical combiner measured Sn1	81
4.21 Conical line cut-off frequencies	82
4.22 Conical line mode pattern	83
4.23 PIN diode mounting structure	84
4.24 Embedded PIN diode model	84
4.25 PIN diode in evanescent mode waveguide	84
4.26 Evanescent mode waveguide model	84
4.27 Third order switch construction	85
4.28 Fifth order switch attenuation	85
4.29 Fifth order switch in filter mode	86
4.30 Fifth order switch attenuation in filter mode	86
4.31 Evanescent mode switch low power test results	86
4.32 Evanescent mode switch high power test results	86

LIST OF FIGURES

xi

5.1	Monopulse feed modes	89
5.2	Monopulse feed structure	89
5.3	Monopulse feed predicted modal return loss	90
5.4	Monopulse feed plus channel return loss	90
5.5	Monopulse feed azimuth channel return loss	90
5.6	Monopulse feed elevation channel return loss	90
5.7	The MEERKAT antenna array	91
5.8	Dual mode antenna layout	93
5.9	Modal radiation patterns	93
5.10	Measured radiation patterns	94
5.11	Combined radiation patterns	94
5.12	Dual mode antenna - second prototype	95
5.13	Modal excitations	95
5.14	Dual mode receiver	96
5.15	Dual-mode sensitivity	96
5.16	Quad-mode antenna	97
5.17	Quad-mode receiver	97
5.18	Quad-mode excitations and patterns	97
5.19	Quad-mode antenna gain	98
5.20	Quad-mode IXR	98
5.21	Quad-mode antenna with bow-tie	99
5.22	Matching of QMA with bow-tie	99
5.23	Quad-mode antenna TSA	99
5.24	Matching of QMA with TSA	99
5.25	Onsala LOFAR LBA array configuration	100
5.26	Comparison of QMA and LBA Arrays	100
5.27	Multi-port Networks	101
5.28	General mixed-mode network	101
5.29	Single-ended radiation patterns	103
5.30	Modal radiation patterns	103
5.31	Transformed measured pattern cuts	104
5.32	Four conductor transmission line	105
5.33	Single-ended port electric fields	105
5.34	Mixed-mode port electric fields	105
5.35	S-parameters using simple transformation	106
5.36	S-parameters using full transformation	106
5.37	Six conductor transmission line	106
5.38	Six conductor transmission line port electric fields	107
5.39	Six conductor transmission line S-parameters	107
5.40	QRFH structure	108
5.41	Cross-section of flared ridges	108
5.42	QRFH feeds	110
5.43	Comparison of excited modes	110
5.44	Aperture modes	111

*LIST OF FIGURES***xii**

5.45 TE-mode cut-off frequencies in taper	111
5.46 QRFH antenna prototype	111
5.47 Prototype quadraxial feed	111
5.48 Measured results of the QRFH prototype	112
5.49 Measured results of the QRFH prototype	112

Chapter 1

Background

1.1 Introduction

Passive microwave component design has undergone huge changes over the past 30 years, but in some ways has also stayed much the same. In the 1980's, computer power and memory, especially that of personal computers, were very limited, and electromagnetic analysis was only possible on large mainframe computers. Designers of passive microwave components were therefore fully dependent on equivalent circuit models of distributed structures, with the values of the circuit elements expressed as functions of physical dimensions such as lengths and widths, and wavelength. Classical texts such as Marcuvitz's *Waveguide Handbook*, *Microwave Filters*, *Impedance-Matching Networks*, and *Coupling Structures* by Matthaei, Young and Jones, and Collin's *Field Theory of Guided Waves*, as well as a host of journal papers, provided graphs and formulas for equivalent circuit elements, and designers were effectively limited to these structures. Any new structures had to be characterised with approximate (or self-written numerical) electromagnetic analysis, or measurements.

Since then, the capabilities of both personal computers and commercial electromagnetic software have grown exponentially, with the current state-of-the-art making the analysis of a typical planar or cavity filter possible on a laptop, and within a time frame of minutes. This has created an enormous amount of freedom for designers, as any geometrical shape can now be investigated for its electrical properties, and used in a design.

In addition, the application of microwave circuits have undergone a breathtaking change - three decades have essentially witnessed the whole mobile revolution. Where microwave components and sub-systems were the domain of expensive military and communications equipment, now even a simple cell-phone contains up to eight microwave radios. The active parts of microwave systems have shrunk exponentially, and entire receiver-transmitter units are currently available on commercially available chips. For designers of passive subsystems, mobile applications have created a whole new set of very chal-

lenging design requirements, with form-factors, weight, size and most importantly cost, of equal or more importance than electrical performance. New developments in manufacturing techniques such as multi-layer stacking of microwave substrates, and inexpensive numerically controlled milling machines, have opened up the way for completely new ways of thinking about microwave design, resulting in three-dimensional technologies such as Surface Integrated Waveguide (SIW) and Low Temperature Co-fired Ceramic (LTCC).

While a lot has changed, the most important aspects of microwave design have however remained, and ironically even grown in importance. With essentially unlimited design variations possible these days, it has become imperative for present day designers to have a fundamental knowledge of how fields behave in structures, of the characteristics of a wide range of classical and modern solutions, and of the possibilities and cost of a host of manufacturing processes. Especially for an engineer trained in classical network synthesis and modelling, the current environment offers design opportunities never seen before.

The aim of the dissertation presented here, is to illustrate the contributions of myself and my research group to this exciting field of microwave passive circuits, including antennas. Viewed as a body of knowledge, I believe this work has made a significant contribution to the field in both the academic research community, and the commercial microwave industry in South Africa. This dissertation therefore describes my journey through three decades of microwave passive component design, up to the time of writing in 2018.

1.2 A Short Profile

My tertiary education commenced when I enrolled for my BEng degree in 1983 at the Department of Electronic Engineering at Stellenbosch University. I subsequently obtained all my degrees at the same department, with an MEng in 1986, a PhD in 1995, and quite dramatically different, a BA Honours degree in English Literature in 2012. The latter was started on a whim, but ended up being an immensely enriching experience. Whilst busy with my Master's degree, I also embarked on what turned out to be a lifelong academic career, first as a temporary, part-time, junior lecturer, and then stepwise through all the ranks. In 2003 I was appointed as a full professor, and most recently, in 2016, as a Distinguished Professor. Through the years I was involved with almost all levels of departmental management, including that of Head of Department.

Almost from the start of my career, I became active in the broader professional environment. Over the years, I have worked as contract designer for a host of local companies, primarily on microwave filter design. On the academic front, I started the first local newsletter of the South African branch of the IEEE in 1990, and filled various positions in the society until I became chairman of the local branch in 1996. I was general chair of three consecutive local IEEE AP/MTT conferences (2005-2009), and on the technical commit-

tee of various IEEE Region 8 africon conferences, including being chair of the technical programme committee of IEEE region 8 africon 1999. During this period, I was also a standing member of a THRIP panel (THRIP was one of the largest government funding programmes in South Africa).

Since 2000, I and my research group have been involved with a number of international cooperation programmes. Most important of these were a joint project under the South Africa-Flanders agreement with KU Leuven on parameter extraction techniques to establish circuit models for microwave FETs (2000-2006), a joint project under the South Africa-Flanders agreement with Antwerp University on macro-modelling of microwave circuits (2002-2006), and a European Union FP7 project (Marie Curie) *Multiwaves*, on tunable and reconfigurable filters (2010-2014). This project included Novi-Sad University (Serbia), University of St Petersburg (Russia), and Herriot-Watt University (Scotland).

At present, I head the Microwave and Antenna Laboratory at Stellenbosch University, a research group funded by a number of local industrial partners, the National Research Foundation (NRF), and the South African SKA. The group currently consists of 10 staff members and in the region of 50 postgraduate students.

1.3 Contributions

My activities over the years have covered quite a wide spectrum of research. Starting from mainly defence orientated work on numerical electromagnetic analysis techniques and applications to microwave filter design, I spent a significant phase working on mathematical modelling (or meta-modelling) and optimisation of microwave structures. This branched out to other microwave devices such as combiners and switches. The most recent years saw a deep involvement in the South African efforts on the Square-Kilometre-Array (SKA) radio telescope which is currently under construction in the Karoo, including work on reflector antenna feeds, arrays, receiver front ends etc.

In terms of research outputs, my body of work at present includes more than 40 peer-reviewed journal papers, more than 80 conference papers and workshops, 2 book chapters and 2 patents. I have supervised more than 60 postgraduate students and post-doctoral fellows, including 2 DEng candidates - the highest degree awarded by the Faculty of Engineering at Stellenbosch University, based on a lifetime technical contribution. The first of these was by Prof Willem Perold on his contributions to the fields of superconductor devices and sensors [1], and the second by Prof David Davidson on his contributions to the field of electromagnetics [2]. A full list appears in Appendix A.

The main contributions of myself and my research group over the past three decades, can be summarised as follows:

- Advances in the design of devices using multiple propagating modes. This includes modelling and analysis algorithms, structural innovation, and measurement techniques. The range of devices includes filters, dividers and antennas.
- Advances in mathematical models (meta-models) of microwave devices, including multi-variate models, and optimisation techniques exploiting these models.
- Advances in microwave filter design. This includes a number of unpublished high-performance filters for industry which will be discussed here briefly.
- Advances in multi-modal antenna design, and work on the SKA reflector feed designs.

These topics will be discussed in detail in the body of the dissertation, with references to published work.

1.4 Layout

As the aim of this dissertation is purely to present contributions by myself and my research group, it differs markedly from standard dissertations in terms of referencing. For the purposes of the DEng, only references to work by the author himself are included. It goes without saying however that all the work presented here built on previous work by other authors not referenced here. In all cases, the reader should consult the specific papers for these references.

The dissertation is structured by topic and not chronologically, as many of the topics run throughout the whole of my career. Four main chapters make up the bulk of the work. Chapter 2 presents my work on numerical analysis, mathematical modelling and optimisation. Chapter 3 focuses on filters and devices utilising higher order propagating modes, except antennas. Chapter 4 discusses work on general passive devices. Finally, Chapter 5 presents the work on antennas.

1.5 Recognition

While the body of the dissertation provides a technical perspective on my research career, I have over the years received more general recognition on a number of occasions, which do not form part of the main dissertation text. At the completion of my Master's degree, I was awarded the Stellenbosch University Chancellor's medal, the highest award of the university to a student, partially based on my research for the degree. In 2009, I was elected as Fellow of the South African Academy of Engineering, and in 2015 I received the

Stellenbosch University Lifetime Award, for excellence over a career. This is the highest award of the university to a staff member. In 2012 the South African National Research Foundation (NRF) awarded me a B-rating (a B-rating indicates an "internationally recognized researcher"). Finally, in 2016 I was appointed as one of 40 Distinguished Professors at Stellenbosch University, the highest academic rank at the university.

Chapter 2

Modelling

2.1 Introduction

Numerical modelling is an integral part of microwave, antenna and electromagnetics research. Throughout a large part of my career, any analysis or design of a structure was done using circuit models, with element values in look-up tables or from equations, or self-written electromagnetic analysis code. Even for filter synthesis, self-written code was required if no standard tables could be used. The start of my career therefore focused very strongly on Computational Electromagnetics (CEM), and the creation of numerical software tools.

In the case of numerical electromagnetic analysis, especially in-house written code which can seldom be optimised for speed, execution times are often long. When there is a requirement for optimisation, such a code needs to execute multiple times, which often results in design cycles which are prohibitively slow. The late 1990's saw a surge in attention in so-called *meta-models* - typically sets of general mathematical equations, such as partial fraction expansions or polynomials, with coefficients calculated by a set of test points. As a result of a joint programme with Antwerp University, meta-modelling formed a large part of my research for almost a decade.

While meta-models proved extremely useful for passive structures, active components such as transistors are even today still best modelled by equivalent circuit models. To obtain the element values for such a circuit model, from for instance a set of measurements, is however challenging, as the sensitivity of any response to one of the elements can vary wildly between elements. So-called *parameter extraction* techniques thus also formed an important part of my research.

Finally, any device utilising multiple excitations, or multiple sets of electromagnetic fields, requires advanced network models. The development of network theory and models for thus type of device stretches back to the very start of my career, and has emerged again in my most recent work on multi-mode antennas. This is however discussed in chapter 5.

2.1.1 Accurate Filter Synthesis

In 1986, my final year project entailed the accurate exact design of filters using the insertion loss method combined with cascade synthesis. At that stage, the first personal computers typically had clock speeds of below 10MHz and typically 128kB of RAM, and floating point operations required a special co-processor. The problem with exact synthesis was (and is) that it is numerically ill-conditioned, in the sense that small rounding errors at each stage of the synthesis very quickly cause the synthesis to become unstable. In the cascade synthesis procedure, this takes the form of two element values which should be identical at each stage of the process, starting to diverge in numerical value. To combat this, synthesis could either be performed in a transformed frequency plane, known as z-plane synthesis, or by keeping all the polynomials in product form, i.e. as a list of roots. The latter was my project, and required a complex-valued numerical root-finding procedure at each step. No complex variable type however existed in any of the standard compiler languages, therefore I had to create a library of pointer-based algorithms to perform from the most basic of numerical operations, to fairly advanced two-variable Newton-Raphson algorithms.

This was my first taste of numerical work, and resulted in my first set of publications [3, 4]. It also initiated me into a field which would become one of my core research fields.

2.1.2 E-plane filters and the Mode-Matching method

Waveguide filters with thin metal inserts in the E-plane (therefore called *E-plane filters*), emerged as a very popular type of filter in the early eighties. All the inserts could be etched very accurately and inexpensively from a single thin metal sheet, resulting a filter with waveguide performance, yet requiring only very simple manufacturing techniques. An example is shown in Fig 2.1.

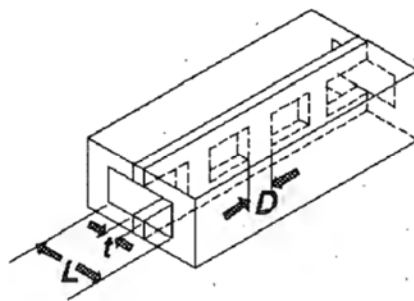


Figure 2.1: E-plane waveguide filter (from [5])

The goal of my Master's degree was to design such a filter. As full-wave optimisation of a three-dimensional structure was not possible, the design relied on creating equivalent circuit models of each vertical post, using numerical electromagnetic analysis of only one post. This resulted in my first numerical code - an implementation of the Mode-Matching Method. This code ran on an Olivetti M24 personal computer, and could perform a narrow band frequency sweep of a second order filter in a few hours. At the time, the work was of significant interest to the local defence industry, as South Africa was under severe sanctions due to the political situation, and especially microwave components and subsystems were extremely hard to acquire on the open market. It was therefore published locally [5].

Due to the very long analysis times, the dependence on EM analysis in order to design these filters was problematic to local industry, and a set of equations was next derived to approximate the analysis accurately enough to design very narrow band filters [6, 7]. Finally, the work was extended to round pins in waveguide [8].

2.2 The Combined Mode-Matching and Method-of-Lines Technique

Both the technique for Mode-Matching analysis from my Master's degree work, and the complex root-finding technique from my undergraduate work, would prove to be building blocks of my first serious research effort, i.e. my PhD [9]. Again originating from industry, a serious local need had arisen for planar filters at the time of the start of my PhD. While the theory for the Finite-Element electromagnetic analysis (FEM) of planar circuits was well established at that stage, analysis of even a very simple structure, such as a single discontinuity, was a challenge in terms of both memory and execution time on a personal computer. Most compilers for personal computers (running Microsoft MS-DOS) had a maximum size limit of 64kB for any single variable, and for FEM analysis, quite complicated data structures were required which very quickly created single variable structures exceeding this limit. Even though various software techniques emerged to create larger variables by using more than one 64kB block, these were slow, clumpy and often failed.

For two-dimensional planar structures, a very efficient and accurate method of electromagnetic analysis was proposed by Pregla and Pascher in 1989. This method solved the two-dimensional Helmholtz equation in a transformed domain on a set of vertical lines, and was called the *Method-of-Lines (MOL)*. The basic structure for half of a symmetrical two-layer planar structure is shown in Fig. 2.2.

The MOL relied on the discretisation of the partial derivative with respect to the horizontal direction. With the z -directed electric field on line i described

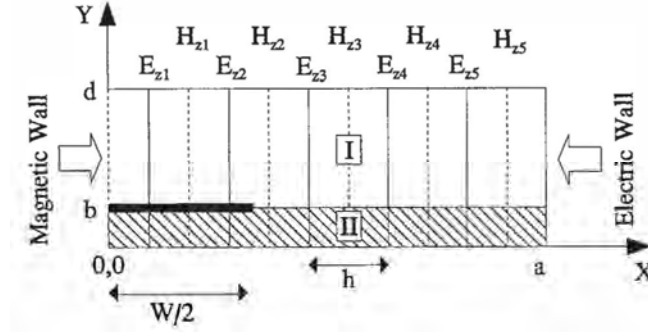


Figure 2.2: Discretisation for 2D Method-of-Lines(from [10])

by a set of equations

$$\frac{\partial^2 E_{zi}}{\partial x^2} + \frac{\partial^2 E_{zi}}{\partial y^2} + (\gamma^2 + k^2)E_{zi} = 0 \quad (2.1)$$

where $i = 1 \dots N$, the finite difference derivatives with respect to x can be expressed in a matrix form as

$$\frac{\partial^2 [E_z]}{\partial x^2} = \frac{1}{h^2} [D_{xx}] [E_z] \quad (2.2)$$

This allows the system to be diagonalised using standard matrix techniques and the diagonalisation matrix $[T]$, consisting of the eigenvectors of $[D_{xx}]$. In turn, this can be used to define the transformed field vector $[\tilde{E}_z] = [T]^t [E_z]$. When inserted back into a transformed Helmholtz equation, a set of one-dimensional, second order differential equations in y are obtained as

$$\frac{1}{h^2} [d] [\tilde{E}_z] + \left(\frac{\partial^2}{\partial y^2} + \gamma^2 + k^2 \right) [\tilde{E}_z] = 0 \quad (2.3)$$

where $[d]$ is the diagonal eigenvalue matrix of $[D_{xx}]$. Each of these equations can be solved separately by applying the correct, transformed boundary conditions and solving for values of γ .

The 2D-MOL is a very efficient numerical implementation, as only one dimension is discretised while the other is treated analytically, resulting in very small matrices. The extension to three-dimensional problems however proved to be difficult, as instead of $N \times N$ -matrices (where N is the number of lines), sets of $N_x N_z \times N_x N_z$ matrices result (with N_x the number of lines in the x -direction and N_z the number of lines in the z -direction). For structures with large z -dimensions such as transmission-line filters, this proved fatal, as the matrices simply became too large.

For my PhD, I proposed a combination of the very memory-efficient 2D-MOL, and the equally memory-efficient *Mode-Matching Method*. The latter

was one of the first numerical electromagnetic analysis techniques, and entails the matching of orthogonal expansions of fields on both sides of an abrupt discontinuity.

In order to do this, the work firstly developed closed-form analytical expressions for the transformed fields in the 2D-MOL [11], which at that point were not available in literature. This was then used to find solutions for the propagation constant γ for each cross-section of the structure. The process to calculate γ for high numbers of modes (up to 100) is completely non-trivial, and involves the finding of multiple imaginary and complex roots, in ascending order without skipping one, of a severely non-linear function which exhibits poles and zeros in random orders - such function not being available analytically, but only through a computer algorithm. The next step, i.e. the application of the Mode-Matching Method, required the solution of the generalised scattering matrix for each discontinuity, using the integrals of products of the fields. To implement this analytically, I developed a set of Mode-Matching equations in the transformed domain which yielded a full set of generalised S-parameters using only analytical diagonal matrices, of low order. This was the first formulation of this nature, and because of the diagonal nature and the low order of the matrices, had a very low memory requirement, and a fast execution speed [10]. The method was further extended to analyse whole structures by cascading the S-parameters of each discontinuity with section of multi-modal transmission lines.

The combined technique, called the *Combined Mode-Matching and Method-of-Lines Technique*, was tested on a variety of single microstrip discontinuities such as open and short-circuits, and gaps. As a final illustration, a small interdigital filter which exhibited an unexpected transmission zero, was analysed [12]. The filter, and its cross-sections, are shown in Figs. 2.3 and 2.4

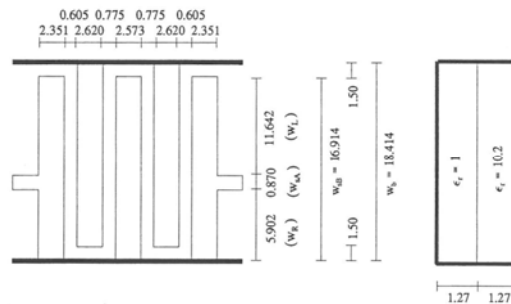


Figure 2.3: Interdigital filter top view (from [12])

The full filter response, shown in Fig. 2.5, clearly shows the transmission zero, and a filter response with a 5% error in centre frequency as compared to measurement.

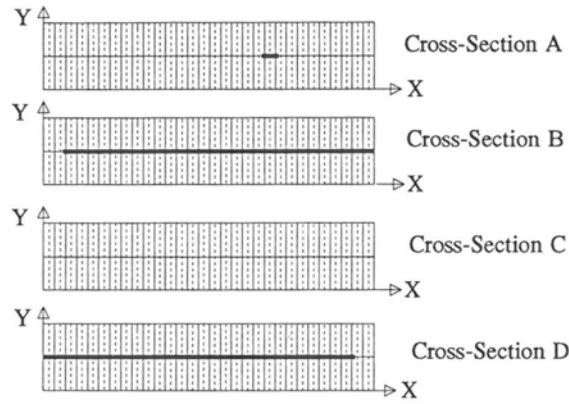


Figure 2.4: Interdigital filter cross-sections (from [12])

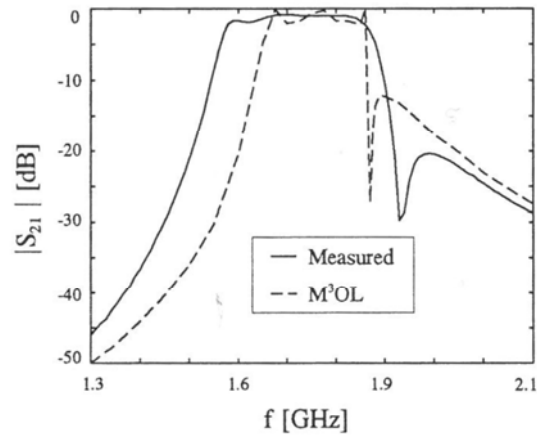


Figure 2.5: Interdigital filter response (from [12])

To assess this work after a twenty-five-year interval is complex. After two decades of rapid progress in computational electromagnetics, it is hard to envisage a scenario where no commercial tools were available to analyse even a small filter. For the example shown, this code was one of a very small number of methods at the time which could analyse such a filter on a small PC. The result in Fig. 2.5 indeed shows only a comparison with measured data, as no other software was available. As such, the work constituted a very useful tool for planar design, as it could show full-wave effects in addition to the normal circuit, or TEM-line analysis. It also extended the 2D-MOL significantly, as the 3D implementation would never become viable due to the very large data structures it required.

At the time, this approach had the following unique advantages over exist-

ing methods:

- Using the smallest data structures of any full-wave method.
- Having data structures independent of the longitudinal dimension of a structure. This was especially useful for planar filter structures having relatively few discontinuities along the longitudinal direction, but electrical lengths of a number of wavelengths.
- Having both memory requirement and execution time completely independent of the height of the structure, as that was treated analytically.
- Yielding modal information between every two successive discontinuities.

The enormous jumps in computer hardware and software would however, within a few years, remove the limits on variable size, and allow for huge data structures. This suited the methods utilising full three-dimensional discretisation, which could be used for much more general structures. Methods like the one proposed here therefore very quickly became redundant, and would indeed be replaced rapidly by commercial software such as CST, Ansoft HFSS, etc.

The impact of this first research project on my own work would however turn out to be significant and lasting, and a very important building block in my career. Especially the themes related to higher order electromagnetic modes would become a recurring theme in my work, and would appear in future work on microwave filters, modelling, and antennas.

2.3 Other Computational Work

Following the completion of my PhD, my work would mostly shift from direct CEM to that of modelling and structural design. However, a number of contributions on CEM were made over the years, mostly as part of various bigger projects.

The first of these was work on the so-called *hybrid methods* that were very popular in the early 90's. At this time, a large body of research focused on the combination of different numerical methods, exploiting the strong points of each. For this work, PhD student Dr Riana Geschke, with supervision from my colleague Prof David Davidson, Prof Ron Ferrari from Cambridge, and myself, implemented a method proposed by Prof Ferrari, the so-called *Extended Huygens' Method*, for waveguide problems [13]. The technique formed part of the class of hybrid Integral Equation and Finite Element techniques, as applied to general penetrable discontinuities, with the aim of treating the region exterior to waveguide discontinuity using the Surface Integral Formulation, and the discontinuity with the Finite Element Method. The method employed both the electric and magnetic waveguide Green dyadics in an integral equation that may be recognised to be of the form described as a formulation of Huygens'

principle, here satisfying the particular field boundary conditions of a hollow waveguide [14, 15, 16, 17]. The method proved to be efficient in terms of memory, but again the rapid improvements in computers made the work essentially obsolete within a few years.

Other work, in the form of small niche solutions, were focused on improving the speed of standard methods for specific structures. The first of these was a technique for optimally selecting the modes to be used in a given Mode-Matching implementation, which emerged from the PhD work of my student Dr Chris Vale, during his research into multi-modal stopband filters [18]. For general cross-sections, an infinite set of modes, including all TE, TM, and hybrid modes need to be used to perfectly match fields at a boundary. However, the behaviour of scattering parameters are typically influenced by only a few dominant modes. For simple problems, it is straightforward to identify these dominant modes, but for more complex problems, this becomes more difficult. This work automated this process, and reduced the matrices to be solved dramatically by ignoring non-dominant modes.

A second very useful contribution in this area, was from the Master's degree work on Method-of-Moments implementations by my student Dr Marliize Schoeman [19], and took the form of a detailed analysis of the structure of the matrices generated by the Method-of-Moments' formulations utilising both magnetic and electric surface currents for apertures and metal sections respectively [20]. As for the work on Mode-Matching, this work was aimed at packing the matrices in ways that allow for a separation between dominant and non-dominant entries, resulting in smaller matrices. In addition, the work provided fascinating insights into the method itself.

As a final contribution of significance in this list, an algorithm for optimising the placement of sources in the 2D Method-of-Moments analysis of coupled line structures of arbitrary form, resulted from the undergraduate work on interdigital filter design by my student Dr Dirk de Villiers [21]. The method used straight-line shadows to calculate directly illuminated areas, with these areas then populated with a high density of sources. The 2D Method-of-Moments is very simple to implement, and the technique is still used widely for quick MATLAB programmes.

While general CEM software has become the default tool for designers over the last decade, such software is still very expensive, especially for industry. For standard structures, many of the classical techniques can be (and often still are) self-coded. The improvements referenced here are therefore still used in industry, even today. Open-source software such as Python has in fact created a small resurgence in the development of toolboxes which can analyse sets of very specific and limited structures.

2.4 Measurement

An important part of modelling is of course the verification of models. In the 1990's, this was mostly done using published results, or measurements using Vector Network Analysers. For the latter, calibration is of essence, and my modelling work at the time exposed me to the world of calibration and measurements. At the time, superconductors also formed part of my interests, and my very first postgraduate student, Mr Jakobus van Zyl, therefore worked on calibration procedures for measurements of superconducting passive devices [22]. This also resulted in the first international conference publication by one of my students, an important milestone in my career [23]. This work also brought me my first PhD student, Dr Cornel van Niekerk, who started his career on this subject [24].

2.5 Parameter Extraction of FET Circuit models

Starting in 1996, myself and Dr Cornell van Niekerk embarked on a project to extract circuit models for Field-Effect transistors (FET's) from measured S-parameters [25]. This work was in response to a need by the local RADAR industry to have a better first-pass design success for microwave amplifier designs. At the time, few good models were available from vendors, and designers had to rely on generic models, or measured data. The availability of a good circuit model offered significant design advantages in terms of noise matching, or gain optimisation over frequency.

The first step in this direction was a new procedure to calculate element values of a general small-signal FET circuit model which would fit a given set of small-signal S-parameters. This calls for a solution to the so-called *parameter extraction* problem, a very difficult process, as the standard FET-model shown in Fig. 2.6 has 13 circuit elements, while only four complex S-parameters, over a limited frequency range, are available to perform a fit.

The problem can be classified as an inversely ill-conditioned sensitivity problem, where a very small dependency of the S-parameters to some of the circuit elements translates into great difficulty in finding an accurate value for such an element from the S-parameters. Historically, it was approached using a single, global multivariate error function, with the error function consisting of a weighted sum of the differences between each of the four sets of predicted and measured S-parameters, in a 13-dimensional error landscape. This landscape is ill-conditioned, and exhibits large numbers of local minima with minimum values very close to that of the absolute minimum, and large variations in sensitivity to different variables. In the case of the FET-model, the extraction of element values for the resistive components is particularly difficult, and the

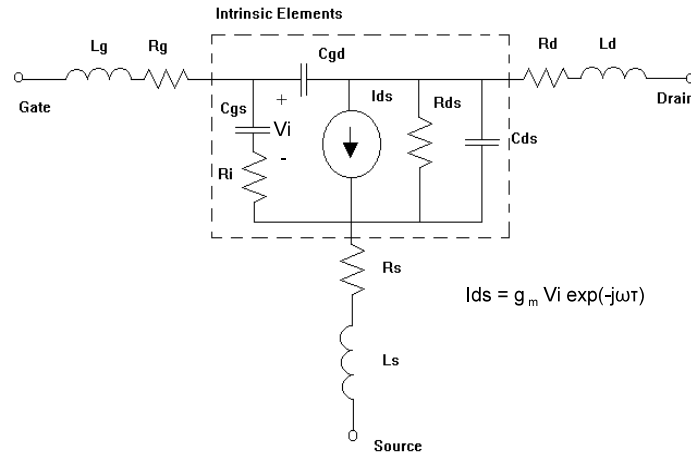


Figure 2.6: 13-Element small-signal FET-model (from [25])

state-of-the-art extraction techniques in 1996 produced very inaccurate results, with errors of up to a factor of 10, for these elements.

The proposed technique called for the separate, systematic minimisation of 13 univariate error functions - one for each circuit element - of the form

$$F_{(j,b)}(\bar{x}_i, z) = \sum_{k=1}^M |S_k(j, b)^{meas} - S_k(j, b)^{calc}(\bar{x}_i, z)|^2 \quad (2.4)$$

where \bar{x}_i represent 12 fixed elements, k the frequency point, (j, b) the S-parameter index, and z the element to be extracted using the i -th error function. As the value obtained for any such single extraction (or minimisation) is dependent on the values of the other 12 elements, the 13 minimisation steps have to be executed multiple times, until the values have converged to within a pre-set error band. Such convergence is by no means guaranteed, as the minimisation problem is extremely ill-natured. To solve this problem, a global error function was formed by adding the error functions for all the S-parameters before each set of 13 minimisation steps, and a principle components sensitivity analysis was performed on this function. This analysis uses the eigenvalues of a Jacobian matrix, formed from the global error function, to determine the sensitivity of the global error function at the point in the parameter space, to each parameter. In this case, the parameters (elements) can then be ordered in terms of decreasing sensitivity, and the 13 error functions then minimised in this order. After each full iteration of 13 functions, a new sensitivity analysis is performed, and the order updated. Such an *adaptive* ordering of the univariate minimisation problems had never been used for this type of extraction at that stage, and proved to be the key to the convergence of the procedure to a global minimum.

The procedure, denoted as *Decomposition-Based Parameter Extraction*, was a significant step forward, and reduced the errors in extraction by orders of magnitude, as can be seen from the table in Fig. 2.7, which compared the new procedure with the state-of-the-art at that time, for a few transistors [26].

TABLE 2 The Percentage Error Made by Two Different Parameter-Extraction Routines

Model Elements	FLR016XV		FSX51X		FLK052XV	
	a	b	a	b	a	b
R_{ds}	0.003	0.316	0.210	2.078	0.067	2.282
C_{ds}	0.002	0.038	0.039	0.353	0.014	0.494
C_{gs}	0.004	0.352	0.244	2.349	0.075	2.650
C_{dg}	0.010	0.724	0.242	2.427	0.129	4.546
R_s	0.099	8.669	3.003	28.042	0.928	31.787
g_m	0.004	0.314	0.221	2.119	0.066	2.331
R_d	0.030	3.111	2.497	23.895	0.752	26.005
L_d	0.002	0.019	0.007	0.090	0.004	0.119
R_g	9.780	884.725	23.756	228.038	12.149	438.795
R_i	0.317	28.641	3.828	36.435	2.699	96.369
L_g	0.001	0.118	0.048	0.388	0.012	0.295
L_s	0.010	0.399	0.034	0.299	0.008	0.193
τ	0.002	0.272	0.155	1.489	0.053	1.847

^a Results obtained with the new parameter-extraction procedure.

^b Results obtained with the 10-step parameter-extraction procedure of Leong et al. [2].

Figure 2.7: Comparison of extraction errors (from [26])

The proposed extraction algorithm was evaluated rigorously in 1997 in a follow-up paper [27]. This paper again used simulated S-parameters, and provided an in-depth look at the performance and accuracy of the technique. Fig. 2.8 for example shows the robustness of the minimisation, with the global error function climbing for more than 70 iterations before converging rapidly.

Of considerable interest was the significant variations in the univariate landscapes of each minimisation problem as a function of the iteration cycle, as is shown in Fig. 2.9 for the variable C_{gs} . This gave previously undocumented insight into the convergence characteristics of this type of extraction, and would lead in future work to much more refined minimisation algorithms.

Finally, the paper introduced an innovative way of evaluating the robustness of such a technique visually, by plotting the start and end values of a variable against the extraction number, for a hundred extractions, each starting with a different set of element values. For perfect robustness, each extraction, irrespective of the starting value, should give the same end value - the end values thus forming a straight line. Fig. 2.10 shows such a plot for two of the most difficult elements. It is immediately clear that the algorithm is very robust for element R_s , but much less so for element R_d .

For the last phase of this work with which I was involved, Dr Van Niekerk teamed up with Dr Dominik Schreier, a Ph.D. student at the University of Wisconsin-Rochester in Dallas, to expand the technique to multi-bias models [28], [29]. For this, each element is simply viewed as being bias-dependent, and

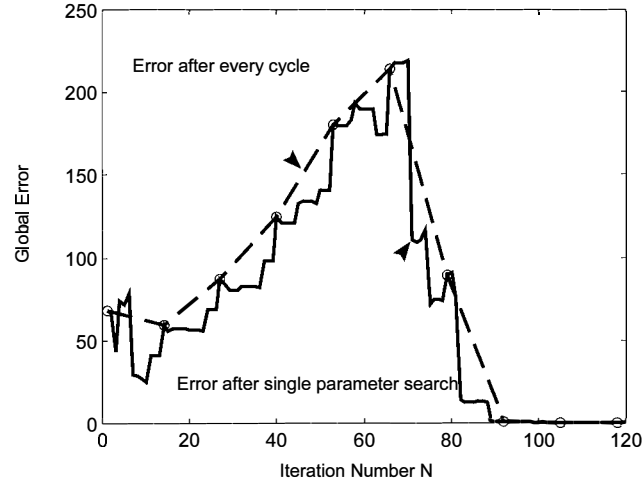


Figure 2.8: Global error function behaviour (from [27])

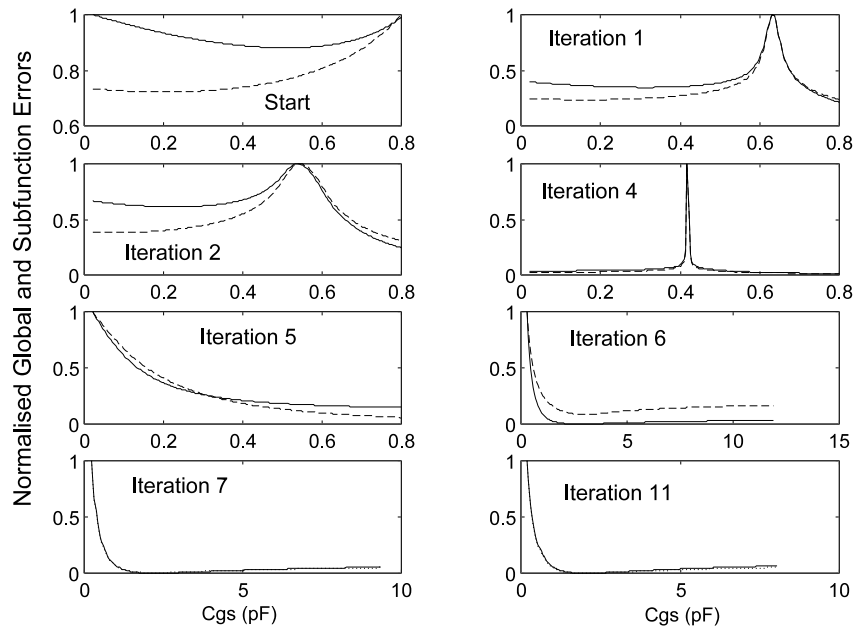


Figure 2.9: Global error function behaviour (from [27])

an extraction performed at each bias point. However, some elements are essentially bias independent, and taken together over all bias points, significant improvements can be obtained for these elements. The paper also introduced 'cold' measurements (or zero bias) into the pool of data, and improvements

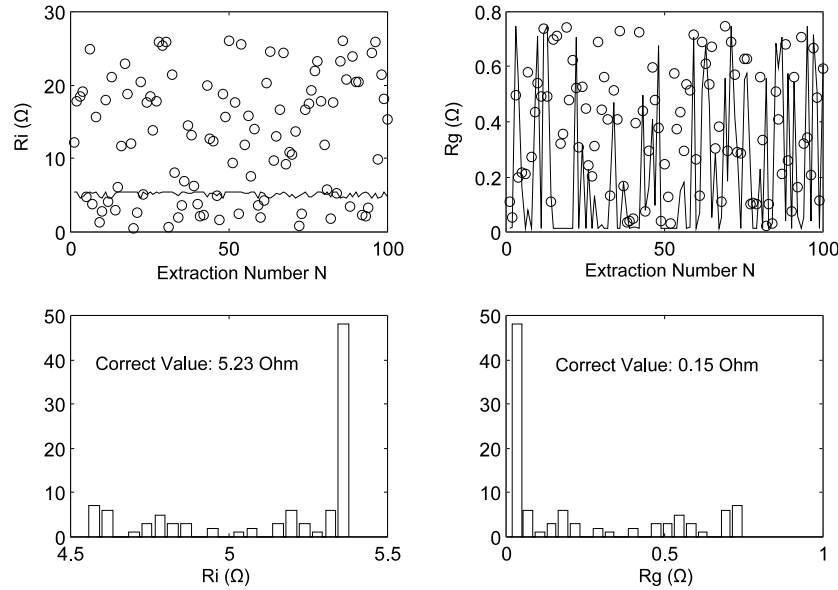


Figure 2.10: Robustness plots and histograms (from [27])

to handle measurement noise. Very accurate models could be obtained in this way, and fundamental insights into the circuit behaviour under different bias conditions.

The Decomposition-Based Extraction proved to have a number of significant advantages to other techniques at the time:

- It only made use of a single global error function for ordering the sub-problems, not for the optimisation itself, making it more immune to local minima and the ill-conditioned nature of the problem than other methods.
- It determined all the elements with optimisation and proved itself to be resistant to the effect of measurement errors.
- It required no assumptions concerning the bias dependencies of the intrinsic elements.
- It was suitable for modelling commercial devices about which very little additional information was known.

The work was my first effort as a PhD supervisor, and proved to be very successful and long-lasting. In total, this set of papers has been cited more than 80 times, with the latest citations in 2010, or two decades after publication. In the most recent citations, the minimisation algorithms have changed, but the basic principles introduced by Dr Van Niekerk and myself are still being

used. Dr Van Niekerk continued this work after completion of his PhD, and would make a distinct name for himself in the world of device modelling.

On a personal level, [27] became my first paper in the prestigious *IEEE Transactions on Microwave Theory and Techniques* - a very important milestone in my career.

2.6 Interpolation-Based Meta-Models of Microwave Components

2.6.1 Adaptively sampled interpolation models

For networks of which the internal structure is not known at all, circuit-based models are difficult to construct, and pure mathematical models, the so-called *meta-models*, offer a much more general set of models. These models use mathematical functions which describe one or more network outputs as a function of one or more variables, with a wide variety of mathematical functions having been proposed. In its most general sense, this forms part of the mature mathematical research area of *approximation functions*, but in the early 2000's, the application to microwave structures and electromagnetic analysis was quite new.

One of the most important goals for this class of applications, is to use the least possible amount of analysis points (or *support points*) in order to establish a model, as the generation of such points using computational electromagnetic analysis is very time-consuming. This problem is intimately connected to the exact type of mathematical function, as some functions naturally approximate typical passive network functions better than others.

In 1999, my PhD student Dr Robert Lehmensiek, myself, and Profs Tom Dhaene (then from Antwerp University, and since at Ghent University) and Annie Cuyt from Antwerp University, initiated a project on using rational interpolation functions to create meta-models for passive microwave structures [30]. Rational functions are particularly well-suited for this type of structure, as most passive structures can be modelled in terms of passive network functions, which are fundamentally of a rational polynomial nature. The project formed part of a larger activity of Prof Dhaene, who had for a number of years been active in the field.

The first phase of this project was the proposal of an algorithm to reduce the amount of support points for a single network function, dependent on one variable only, and to use it in the very popular *Space-Mapping* optimisation technique [31]. As approximation function, the rational polynomial in (2.5) was used, with both numerator and denominator in the form of the recursive partial fraction expansions in (2.6) and (2.7). Here, frequency (f) is the variable, and $R(f)$ represents a network function such as one S-parameter.

$$R(f) = \frac{\sum_{k=0}^{\zeta} p_k f^k}{\sum_{k=0}^{\nu} q_k f^k} = \frac{N_{\zeta}(f)}{D_{\nu}(f)} \quad (2.5)$$

where

$$\begin{aligned} N_k &= \psi(f_k, f_{k-1}, \dots, f_0) N_{k-1} + (f - f_{k-1}) N_{k-2} \\ D_k &= \psi(f_k, f_{k-1}, \dots, f_0) D_{k-1} + (f - f_{k-1}) D_{k-2} \end{aligned} \quad (2.6)$$

and

$$\psi_k(f_k, f_{k-1}, \dots, f_0) = \frac{f_i - f_{k-1}}{\psi_{k-1}(f_i, f_{k-1}, \dots, f_0) - \psi_{k-1}(f_{k-1}, f_{k-2}, \dots, f_0)} \quad (2.7)$$

For such a function, the order determines the number of support points, with the location of these points not specified. The order of the function is however unknown, as the network function can be of any complexity. In addition, the location of the support points has a dramatic effect on the accuracy of the final function. The algorithm in [31] proposed the generation of a set of functions of systematically increasing order. The recursive partial fraction expansion form is very well-suited to such an algorithm, as a very natural error function can be found by simply subtracting two successive functions. To increase the order by one, a new support point is then chosen at the point where the two functions of highest order differ the most in the range of interest. The process thus yields an *adaptive sampling technique* for establishing a meta-model. This process is shown for two orders in Fig. 2.11, together with the resulting error function. At each support point, the error function becomes zero. The algorithm continues until the error function is smaller than some arbitrary value over the range of interest. The combination of adaptive sampling and the recursive partial fraction form, requires an order of magnitude smaller number of support points for a certain accuracy, as all the support points are optimally positioned.

To illustrate the power of the procedure, it was used in the Space-Mapping optimisation algorithm to reduce the number of sampling points in the return-loss function of a microwave filter [31]. The result of such an optimisation is shown in Fig. 2.12, together with the actual support points. It is clear that only a few points are required to very accurately model the return loss function.

From my previous work, a very obvious application of the adaptively sampled meta-model technique, was as an intermediate step in the calculation of the poles and zeros of functions, and specifically in the calculation of the propagation constants of higher order modes in guided-wave structures [32],[33]. Such propagation constants are typically numerically calculated by finding the solution to the so-called *characteristic function*, of the form

$$g(\gamma) = \det[Y(\gamma)] = 0 \quad (2.8)$$

6	9.66	3.40	0.11534
7	8.82	0.13642	0.063557
8	8.88	1.5324	0.078406
9	3.2876		0.59799
10	0.89726		0.31784
11	8.42	50.271	0.54331
12	10.34	4.9408	0.0602
13	9.48	0.27409	0.048094
14	11.38	0.27793	0.017606
15	10.90	0.019483	0.0076628
16	8.22	0.038204	0.012795
17	8.54	0.032615	0.003645
18	8.10	0.018332	0.001104
19	10.68	0.0071846	3.4605e-5

CHAPTER 2. MODELLING

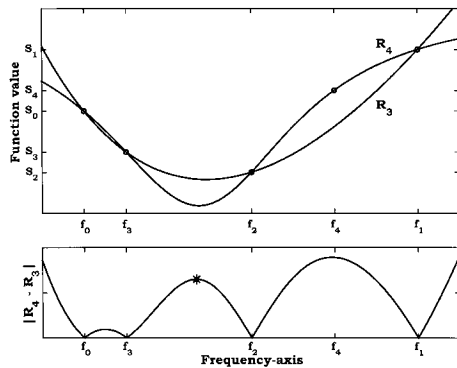


Figure 1 Illustration of the adaptive sampling technique. The interpolation functions $R_2(f)$, $R_3(f)$ and the residual $|R_2(f) - R_3(f)|$ are shown. The asterisk indicates the new sample point

Figure 2.11: Model responses of successive order (from [31])

IV. USING ADAPTIVE SAMPLING IN ASM
The ASM technique [12] minimizes the number of fine model simulations in the design optimization by performing optimization of a coarse model instead of the actual EM model, and iteratively establishes a mapping between the spaces of the design parameters of the two models. Define the vectors \mathbf{x}_c and \mathbf{x}_m as the design parameters of the coarse and the fine models, respectively, and \mathbf{R}_c and \mathbf{R}_m as the corresponding model responses. Parameter extraction is used to determine \mathbf{x}_m whose response matches the fine model response at \mathbf{x}_c . An even simpler iterative algorithm for applying the adaptive sampling algorithm, $\mathbf{R}_m(\mathbf{x}_{m,n})$ is replaced by the adaptively determined $\hat{\mathbf{R}}_m(f)$, where $\hat{\mathbf{R}}_m(f)$ is valid for a certain fine model input parameter vector \mathbf{x}_m over the entire frequency band for all of the scattering parameters. Note that the number of iterations of the adaptive sampling algorithm requires the convergence of three iterative processes, i.e., 1) the adaptive sampling algorithm determining $\hat{\mathbf{R}}_m(f)$, 2) the adaptive sampling algorithm determining \mathbf{x}_m , whose response matches \mathbf{R}_c and 3) finding \mathbf{f} that produces the optimal response according to design specifications (space mapping). The adaptive algorithm uses the minimum number of frequency sample points $\hat{\mathbf{R}}_m(f)$ to approximate $\mathbf{R}_m(f)$. Given $\hat{\mathbf{R}}_m(f)$, an arbitrary large number of frequency points can be chosen to ensure the nonfailure of the parameter extraction step. This is determined by the ASM iteration. The adaptive sampling algorithm can also be applied to the response of the coarse model \mathbf{R}_c .
The design of a rectangular waveguide filter with eight capacitive steps is considered. The design specifications for the filter is $|S_{11}| \leq -15$ dB in the passband and the stopband lies in the range [9 GHz, 11 GHz]. The design is for a standard WR90 rectangular waveguide. The capacitive step

lengths are all chosen 2 mm long. The filter is symmetric with eight optimization variables ($L_1, L_2, L_3, L_4, C_1, C_2, C_3, C_4$) as shown in Figure 2. The fine model is a mode-matching solution combined with the generalized scattering matrix [15]. With a TE_{10} mode incident on a capacitive step in a rectangular waveguide only, TE_{10} modes (with n even) are necessary for a complete description of the fields [16]. The number of even modes considered on both sides of a waveguide is 10. The complex propagation constant γ has no noticeable effect on the response of the filter. Because of the symmetry, the generalized scattering matrices of only the discoidal modes need to be calculated. In the mode matching algorithm, the coarse model is a transmission-line model as shown in Figure 2(a).

Most users will take \mathbf{x}_c and \mathbf{x}_m to describe the same physical parameters, which is not the case here. We can calculate the poles and zeros of the characteristic function using the mode-matching technique for several values of the gap opening. Interpolation of these values establishes a response $\hat{\mathbf{R}}_m(f)$ that is stable and smooth. The number of waveguide dimensions. Since the ASM technique compares $\mathbf{R}_c(\mathbf{x}_c)$ and $\mathbf{R}_m(\mathbf{x}_m)$, this mapping is incorporated into the design.

The parameter extraction optimizations are driven by a hybrid of a new search method of minimizing the L_1 norm objectives are used throughout the ASM algorithm. The input parameter \mathbf{x}_c is much less than the number of minimization objectives. The minimax optimization on the coarse model, also using the hybrid search method, is shown in Figure 2 (dotted line). The solid line shows the fine model response $\mathbf{R}_m(\mathbf{x}_m)$ with $\mathbf{x}_m^{(1)} = \mathbf{x}_c$, which was determined by the adaptive sampling algorithm with only 19 frequency samples (diamonds) and interpolating for a smooth response. The two responses differ significantly due to the evanescent modes

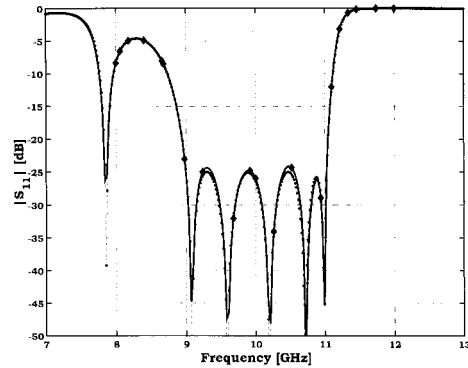


Figure 2.12: Optimised response showing support points (from [31])

MICROWAVE AND OPTICAL TECHNOLOGY LETTERS / Vol. 34, No. 1, January 5 2000 75

where γ is the complex propagation constant, and $\det[Y(\gamma)]$ the determinant of a matrix produced by the specific numerical technique. This function is non-linear, with an infinite number of solutions, interspersed with an infinite number of poles and zeros (sharp non-zero local minima). The function is also not known in closed form for most microwave structures, but only at discrete frequency points. A typical example is shown in Fig. 2.13. The parameter extraction optimizations are driven by a hybrid of a new search method of minimizing the L_1 norm objectives are used throughout the ASM algorithm. The input parameter \mathbf{x}_c is much less than the number of minimization objectives. The minimax optimization on the coarse model, also using the hybrid search method, is shown in Figure 2 (dotted line). The solid line shows the fine model response $\mathbf{R}_m(\mathbf{x}_m)$ with $\mathbf{x}_m^{(1)} = \mathbf{x}_c$, which was determined by the adaptive sampling algorithm with only 19 frequency samples (diamonds) and interpolating for a smooth response. The two responses differ significantly due to the evanescent modes
Fig. 2.14 showing the numerator and denominator polynomials. Once the latter functions are accurately approximated, it becomes a trivial task to obtain the zeros of the numerator.

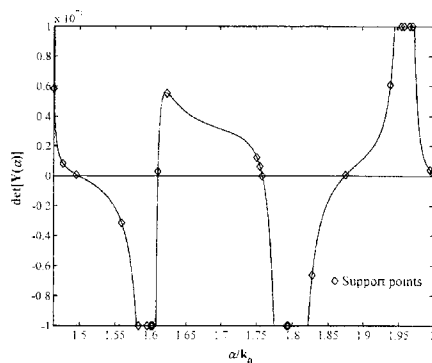


Figure 2.13: Typical characteristic function (from [32])

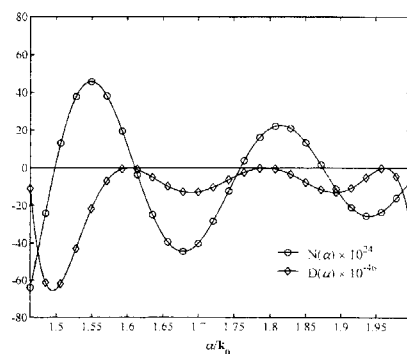


Figure 2.14: Characteristic function as numerator and denominator showing support points (from [32])

The propagation constants of two widely used structures were calculated

in this way - one the microstrip structure shown in Fig. 2.15, and one the finline structure in Fig. 2.16. For the microstrip example, a set of higher-order modes both below and above cut-off is shown in Fig. 2.17, while the finline example shows the propagation constant of the fundamental mode for different dimensions in Fig. 2.18. It should be noted that, even at the time of writing, it is a difficult task to obtain Fig. 2.17 without such an intermediate model.

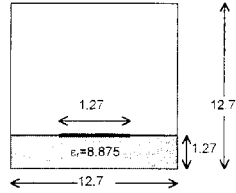


Figure 2.15: Microstrip line cross-section (from [32])

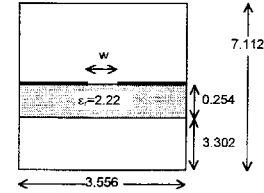


Figure 2.16: Finline cross-section (from [32])

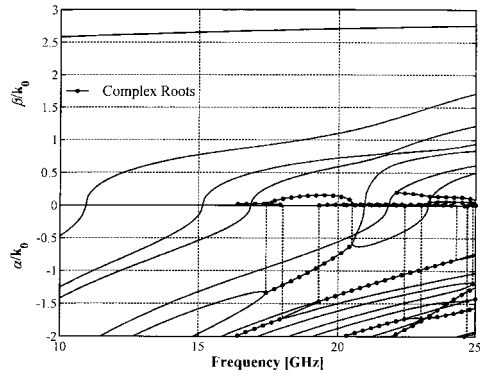


Figure 2.17: Microstrip modes (from [32])

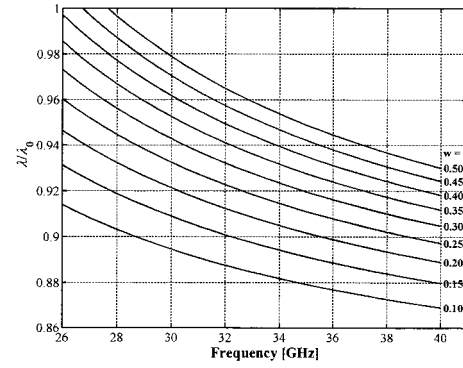


Figure 2.18: Finline modes (from [32])

The next phase of this project was to extend the algorithm to multi-variable and multiple output models. For the multi-variate case, each of the ψ -functions in (2.7) is replaced with a recursive set of functions, each recursion level containing one fewer variable. The mathematical equations for this are quite complex, and is not repeated here, but the reader is referred to [34], [35], and for even more detail, [30].

The adaptive sampling process also has to increase to an n-dimensional landscape, which calls for innovative sampling. In [34], samples were chosen in an increasing fashion along constant-valued lines in the n-dimensional variable space. Again, the reader is referred to the original texts.

TABLE I

CONVERGENCE OF $\Re(w/h, \epsilon_r)$ DETERMINED BY ASA1 AND ASA2 FOR THE STRIPLINE EXAMPLE

Number of support points	ASA1	
	Mean	Max
9	-29.3	-16.4
16	-40.4	-25.9
24	-42.4	-30.0
36	-74.5	-58.8

Fig. 4. Cross-sectional view of the stripline.

An example of a two-dimensional problem

models, they have to be evaluated on an independent evaluation data set, which is the validation problem applied to the two networks. In the following examples, the relative squared error E_m between the function and the model on a 30² equispaced grid for the bivariate cases and on a 30³ equispaced grid for the trivariate cases was calculated. In all cases, both the maximum and average errors in decibels are shown for models of varying size. None of these models were reduced in size after a fit was obtained, in contrast to techniques where the order of the interpolant is guessed beforehand, and the interpolation function (calculated by a high number of CEM analyses) is systematically reduced afterwards.

A. Stripline Characteristic Impedance—Two Variables

A bivariate model $\Re(w/h, \epsilon_r)$ was determined with the adaptive sampling algorithm for the characteristic impedance $Z_0(w/h, \epsilon_r)$ of a homogeneous symmetric stripline, as shown in Fig. 4. The ratio and the relative squared error $E_m(w/h, \epsilon_r)$ can be derived using the exact formula, which defines the chosen support points produce $\Re(w/h, \epsilon_r)$ with the maximum

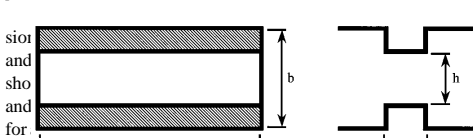
Fig. 5. ASA2: stripline example. Response of $\Re(w/h, \epsilon_r)$ with 29 support points.

Figure 2.19: Two-variable function landscape showing the convergence of the model using ASA1 and ASA2 for the number of support points.

landscapes show (from [34]). The rest with 29 support points squared error E_m is determined by the interpolation space.

The multi-variable model $\Re(w/h, \epsilon_r)$ was determined with the adaptive sampling algorithm for the characteristic impedance $Z_0(w/h, \epsilon_r)$ of a homogeneous symmetric stripline, as shown in Fig. 4. The ratio and the relative squared error $E_m(w/h, \epsilon_r)$ can be derived using the exact formula, which defines the chosen support points produce $\Re(w/h, \epsilon_r)$ with the maximum

Fig. 6. ASA2: stripline example. E_m points.



the generalized scattering matrix [37]. The models $\Re_{11}(f, h)$ and $\Re_{21}(f, h)$ are determined with $f \in [7 \text{ GHz}, 13 \text{ GHz}]$, $h \in [2 \text{ mm}, 8 \text{ mm}]$ and $l = 2 \text{ mm}$. Tables II and III show the convergence of the models using ASA1 and ASA2 as the number of support points increase. The models $\Re_{11}(f, l)$ and $\Re_{21}(f, l)$ are determined with $f \in [7 \text{ GHz}, 13 \text{ GHz}]$, $l \in [0.5 \text{ mm}, 5 \text{ mm}]$ and $h = 5 \text{ mm}$. Table IV shows the convergence of the models using ASA2 as the number of support points increase. With an equivalent number of support points, the errors of the model determined by ASA2 tend to be less by up to 10 dB compared to those determined by ASA1.

C. Inductive Posts in Rectangular Waveguide—Two Variables

Bivariate models $\Re_{11}(f, w)$ and $\Re_{21}(f, w)$ were determined for a waveguide with two perfectly conducting round posts centered in the plane of the rectangular waveguide, as shown in Fig. 8. The variables are frequency f and post-spacing w . The diameter of the posts d was set to 2 mm and the model was determined with $f \in [7 \text{ GHz}, 13 \text{ GHz}]$, $h \in [2 \text{ mm}, 8 \text{ mm}]$ and $l = 2 \text{ mm}$. Tables V and VI show the convergence of the models using ASA1 and ASA2 as the number of support points increase.

Fig. 8. The variables are frequency f and post-spacing w . The diameter of the posts d was set to 2 mm and the model was determined with $f \in [7 \text{ GHz}, 13 \text{ GHz}]$, $h \in [2 \text{ mm}, 8 \text{ mm}]$ and $l = 2 \text{ mm}$.

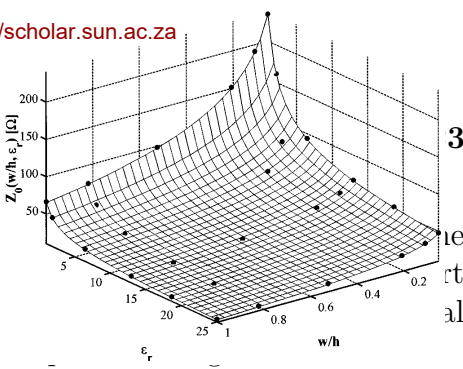


Fig. 5. ASA2: stripline example. Response of $\Re(w/h, \epsilon_r)$ with 29 support points.

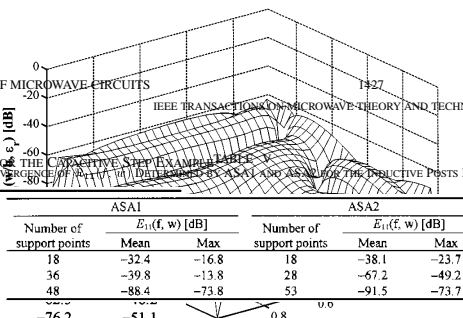


Fig. 6. ASA2: stripline example. E_m points.

TABLE II

CONVERGENCE OF $\Re_{11}(f, h)$ DETERMINED BY ASA1 AND ASA2 FOR THE STRIPLINE EXAMPLE

Number of support points	ASA1		Number of support points	ASA2	
	Mean	Max		Mean	Max
18	-32.4	-16.8	18	-38.1	-23.7
36	-39.8	-13.8	28	-67.2	-49.2
48	-88.4	-73.8	53	-91.5	-73.7
76.2	-51.1				
93.2	-82.3				

TABLE VI

CONVERGENCE OF $\Re_{21}(f, h)$ DETERMINED BY ASA1 AND ASA2 FOR THE STRIPLINE EXAMPLE

Number of support points	ASA1		Number of support points	ASA2	
	Mean	Max		Mean	Max
18	-38.1	-25.1	23	-59.1	-41.6
36	-39.6	-9.2	30	-52.1	-27.4
48	-89.8	-68.6	51	-76.8	-51.3
56	-90.4	-64.9	57	-87.9	-72.5
52.3	-44.8				
61.8	-51.9				

TABLE VIII

CONVERGENCE OF $\Re_{11}(f, l)$ DETERMINED BY ASA2 FOR THE CAPACITIVE STEP EXAMPLE

Number of support points	ASA1		Number of support points	ASA2	
	Mean	Max		Mean	Max
64	-65.1	-49.5	150	-56.6	-31.1
180	-82.2	-55.5	294	-62.0	-30.1
294	-85.3	-59.5	576	-59.3	-15.1
512	-100.8	-63.1	1300	-81.0	-32.1
832	-108.2	-76.6	1716	-83.2	-35.0
936	-109.3	-96.8	2730	-70.0	-26.7
56.7	-36.2				
65.6	-51.8				
89.3	-71.1				

TABLE VIII

CONVERGENCE OF $\Re_{11}(f, l)$ DETERMINED BY ASA2 FOR THE CAPACITIVE STEP EXAMPLE

Number of support points	ASA1		Number of support points	ASA2	
	Mean	Max		Mean	Max
115	-70.7	-21.9	343	-55.5	-15.3
164	-75.5	-46.7	593	-67.0	-31.4
300	-86.6	-57.8	737	-76.5	-40.0
379	-89.9	-75.8	871	-79.5	-47.0
496	-107.3	-86.0	1375	-91.7	-47.7
645	-108.3	-94.4	1758	-96.1	-54.7
917	-109.1	-97.5	2142	-97.2	-58.1

TABLE VIII

CONVERGENCE OF $\Re_{11}(f, l)$ DETERMINED BY ASA2 FOR THE CAPACITIVE STEP EXAMPLE

Number of support points	ASA1		Number of support points	ASA2	
	Mean	Max		Mean	Max
115	-70.7	-21.9	343	-55.5	-15.3
164	-75.5	-46.7	593	-67.0	-31.4
300	-86.6	-57.8	737	-76.5	-40.0
379	-89.9	-75.8	871	-79.5	-47.0
496	-107.3	-86.0	1375	-91.7	-47.7
645	-108.3	-94.4	1758	-96.1	-54.7
917	-109.1	-97.5	2142	-97.2	-58.1

TABLE VIII

CONVERGENCE OF $\Re_{11}(f, l)$ DETERMINED BY ASA2 FOR THE CAPACITIVE STEP EXAMPLE

Number of support points	ASA1		Number of support points	ASA2	
	Mean	Max		Mean	Max
115	-70.7	-21.9	343	-55.5	-15.3
164	-75.5	-46.7	593	-67.0	-31.4
300	-86.6	-57.8	737	-76.5	-40.0
379	-89.9	-75.8	871	-79.5	-47.0
496	-107.3	-86.0	1375	-91.7	-47.7
645	-108.3	-94.4	1758	-96.1	-54.7
917	-109.1	-97.5	2142	-97.2	-58.1

TABLE VIII

CONVERGENCE OF $\Re_{11}(f, l)$ DETERMINED BY ASA2 FOR THE CAPACITIVE STEP EXAMPLE

Number of support points	ASA1		Number of support points	ASA2	
	Mean	Max		Mean	Max
115	-70.7	-21.9	343	-55.5	-15.3
164	-75.5	-46.7	593	-67.0	-31.4
300	-86.6	-57.8	737	-76.5	-40.0
379	-89.9	-75.8	871	-79.5	-47.0
496	-107.3	-86.0	1375	-91.7	-47.7
645	-108.3	-94.4	1758	-96.1	-54.7
917	-109.1	-97.5	2142	-97.2	-58.1

TABLE VIII

CONVERGENCE OF $\Re_{11}(f, l)$ DETERMINED BY ASA2 FOR THE CAPACITIVE STEP EXAMPLE

Number of support points	ASA1		Number of support points	ASA2	
	Mean	Max		Mean	Max
115	-70.7	-21.9	343	-55.5	-15.3
164	-75.5	-46.7	593	-67.0	-31.4
300	-86.6	-57.8	737	-76.5	-40.0
379	-89.9	-75.8	871	-79.5	-47.0
496	-107.3	-86.0	1375	-91.7	-47.7
645	-108.3	-94.4	1758	-96.1	-54.7
917	-109.1	-97.5	2142	-97.2	-58.1

TABLE VIII

CONVERGENCE OF $\Re_{11}(f, l)$ DETERMINED BY ASA2 FOR THE CAPACITIVE STEP EXAMPLE

Number of support points	ASA1		Number of support points	ASA2	
	Mean	Max		Mean	Max
115	-70.7	-21.9	343	-55.5	-15.3
164	-75.5	-46.7	593	-67.0	-31.4
300	-86.6	-57.8	737	-76.5	-40.0
379	-89.9	-75.8	871	-79.5	-47.0
496	-107.3	-86.0	1375	-91.7	-47.7
645	-108.3	-94.4	1758	-96.1	-54.7
917	-109.1	-97.5	2142	-97.2	-58.1

TABLE VIII

CONVERGENCE OF $\Re_{11}(f, l)$ DETERMINED BY ASA2 FOR THE CAPACITIVE STEP EXAMPLE

many benefits due to its partial fraction nature. The paper in the *IEEE Transactions on Microwave Theory and Techniques* has turned out to be the most cited paper from my group, and is still cited every year a number of times. It provided a benchmark of sampled interpolation models for at least a decade, and is even today still a method to which new algorithms are compared.

2.6.2 Extended meta-models

Dr Lehmensiek's work was continued by another PhD student, Dr Marlize Schoeman, again in cooperation with Prof Dhaene and Prof Cuyt. For the follow-up work, we focused on the application of meta-models to microwave resonators [37]. The analysis of high-Q resonators is quite challenging, as most resonators exhibit multiple resonance modes, and the Q-factor of each of these modes, as well as their centre frequencies, are often of interest. The Q-factors are of special importance, as they determine the performance of any device which utilises a resonator, such as filters, oscillators, etc. Typical computational analysis of Q-values performs a loss-less eigenmode analysis to obtain the resonance frequencies and the field distributions at each frequency, and then uses the loss-less surface currents to calculate loss, and the loss-less fields to calculate stored energy. From these two values, the Q is obtained as a simple ratio. This approximated technique is used because the eigen-solution of a structure is much more difficult if lossy boundaries (or complex impedance boundaries) are included in the basic analysis.

For structures containing bulk loss mechanisms, such as dielectric, and radiation or surface-wave losses, such as open microstrip, the approximate technique does however not work, as loss has to be included in the basic formulation. This also means that eigenmode analysis is mostly not possible, except under very specific conditions. Instead, the calculation of resonant frequency and Q are typically done by analysing a structure which consists of a port, or two ports, coupling lightly to the resonator, and calculating the Q from an $|S_{21}|$ or $|S_{11}|$ sweep against frequency, as shown in Fig. 2.29. In principle, the resonance frequencies are simply read off from such a sweep, as the points of maximum transmission or minimum reflection, and the Q is calculated by the ratio of the magnitude at that point and the 3dB-bandwidth.

CHAPTER 4—CALCULATION OF RESONANT FREQUENCIES

43

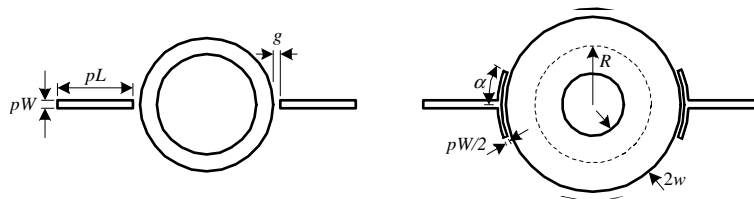


Fig. 4.7. Excitation used to construct ring resonators of normalised ring width $w/R = 0.1$ and $w/R = 0.6$.

Figure 2.29: Input and output coupled ring resonators (from [38])

and Vector Fitting) are compared with respect to their ability to predict the resonance frequencies of a loaded microwave ring resonator. The prediction of both fundamental and higher-order resonances are investigated and results are verified against predictions obtained from commercial software and measurement. In addition, a new algorithm for the extraction of the resonant frequencies from the rational approximation of the scattering parameter magnitude plot is proposed. The second study investigates the correctness of the interpolation function, by focusing on asymmetries in the discretisation causing unwanted mode splitting.

4.2.1 Study 1—Investigation of the Accuracy of Different Model Predictions

When a loaded microstrip ring resonator is loosely coupled to its feed lines, the coupling gap capacitances do not greatly affect the intrinsic resonant frequencies of the ring. Using this model

For high-Q resonators, this is however very difficult, as the calculation depend very strongly on both the exact position and the exact magnitude of a very sharp peak in either $|S_{21}|$ or $|S_{11}|$. To find this position and magnitude accurately, the frequency sweep should include this exact point, within parts of one percent - however, this point is not known beforehand. Most commercial solvers therefore struggle to do this. This problem is even worse in measurements, as a measurement is always limited to fixed frequency points set up at the start of the measurement, during calibration, and to position a point at the exact resonance frequency is impossible.

In [37], the basic principle applied was to first approximate an $|S_{21}|$ or $|S_{11}|$ curve, using adaptive sampling and a meta-model, and then find the resonance point from the curve. In this way, the CEM analysis (or measurement sweep) need not include the exact point. The Q-value is then determined from the skirts of the curves in the vicinity of this point, and not from the exact value at the resonance point.

The first attempts at this exploited some of the characteristics of the Method-of-Moments (MoM) to fit models to computed data points for ring resonators specifically, across a frequency range which includes a number of resonance points [38],[39]. The advantage of this approach is clear in Fig. 2.30, where a interpolation-based curve is compared to one using equally spaced frequency points. It is evident that, in the case of discrete points, the accuracy of the resonant point will be completely determined by the frequency spacing, which quickly become prohibitive if accuracies better than 0.1% are required. In addition, some resonant points are inevitably completely invisible. The interpolated curve, on the other hand, naturally predicts this extremely accurately, using a small number of points.

CHAPTER 4 – CALCULATION OF RESONANT FREQUENCIES

44

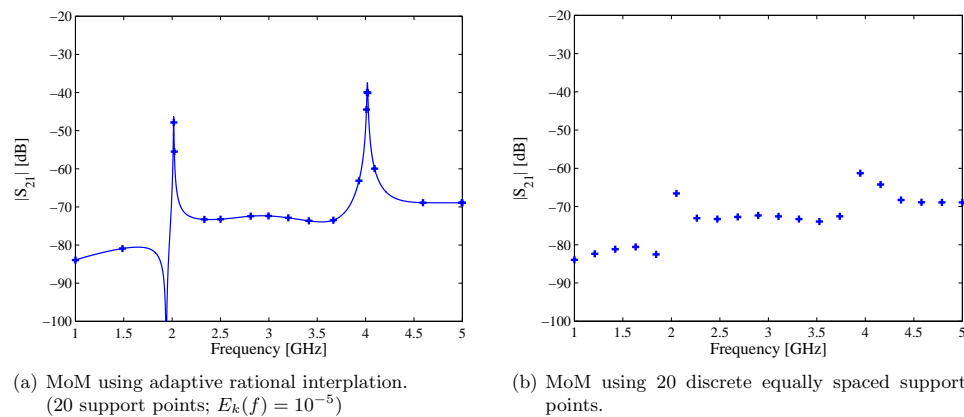


Fig. 4.8. Comparison of S_{21} magnitude responses obtained using an equal number of samples for the adaptive rational interpolation and the discrete frequency points.

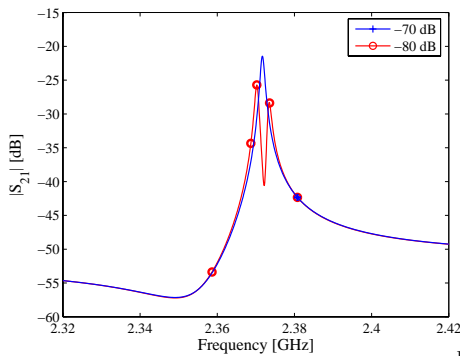
Figure 2.30: Fit of interpolation model (from [39])

To obtain the resonant frequencies numerically from the interpolant of the S-parameters, use is made of the fact that the interpolant can be evaluated at any frequency point with little extra cost. An initial estimate of f_0 is taken from the S-parameter plot. The interpolant is then evaluated at a large number of equally spaced points (e.g. 100 Hz apart) around f_0 . The frequency associated with the maximum magnitude then becomes the new resonant frequency. If this frequency falls on the first or last point in the evaluated interval, the S-parameter slope is either decreasing or increasing and the process is repeated. Otherwise, the interval includes the correct resonance value and the spacing is decreased to 10% of the previous interval spacing, i.e. 10 Hz. The process then repeats itself and the algorithm terminates when the frequency spacing reaches the user defined accuracy of e.g. 0.1 Hz.

Table 4.4 shows the results of this experiment for Ring #1, while Table 4.5 lists the results for Ring #2. The maximum discretisation size L was set to $\lambda/35$ at the maximum frequency in

Fig. 4.10(a) shows the S-parameter response around the TM₁₁₀ resonant frequency for a -70 dB and a -80 dB error in the interpolant. For the -80 dB error case, an unexpected mode splitting is observed, in this case traceable to a slightly asymmetric MoM solution. However, this phenomenon is absent from the -70 dB error case, where the accuracy of the fit is only slightly

phenomenon of *mode splitting*, where one resonance is split into two apparent resonances due to the convergence error limit being set at too small a value, as shown in Fig. 2.31. The other is *masked modes*, where the close proximity of two adjacent modes causes one to become 'hidden' by the other, as shown in Fig. 2.32. The surface current magnitudes at first resonance were analysed and plotted along symmetrical lines around the ring. The currents, as shown in Fig. 4.10(b), are anti-metrical around the ring. Upon mirroring one set of data around the zero position, it was found that the currents indeed



(a) Unwanted mode splitting visible at the first resonant mode, TM₁₁₀.

Figure 2.31: Split modes (from [39])

Fig. 4.10. Mode splitting caused by

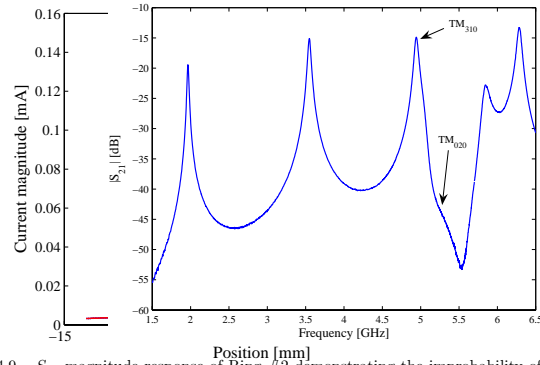


Fig. 4.9. S_{21} magnitude response of Ring #2 demonstrating the improbability of correctly identifying the TM₀₂₀ mode from the magnitude response alone.

Figure 2.32: Masked modes (from [30])
extracted from the S-parameter response as the TM₃₁₀ and the TM₀₂₀ modes were too closely spaced in frequency. This is shown in Fig. 4.9 where the TM₀₂₀ mode disappears below the skirts of the more strongly coupled TM₃₁₀ mode.

For multiple modes on one structure, the identification of modes become important in addition to their resonance frequencies. To automatically recognise modes from field patterns requires a correlation between an 'ideal' field and the calculated field, at the exact resonant frequency. In the case of open ring resonators, the 'ideal' fields are calculated using magnetic wall boundaries on the outer circumference of the ring. Two sets of results are shown in Figs. 2.33 and 2.34, one set for a thin ring, and one for a thick ring. The result in Fig. 2.34 was particularly satisfactory, as both the CEM analysis and the meta-model have to be almost exact to achieve reliable recognition of higher order modes on thick rings.

Figs. 2.35 and 2.36 show the resonance frequencies for thin and thick rings as functions of ring diameter. Again, the algorithm could create these complete graphs in a fully automated way.

The next step was to calculate the Q-factors using the interpolated curves. By a first order partial fraction expansion, it is simple to show that the form of any of the scattering parameters in the vicinity of a resonant peak, can be approximated as

$$S_{ij} = \frac{a_i t + a_2}{a_3 t + 1} \quad t = \frac{2(f - f_L)}{f_L} \quad (2.9)$$

where f_L is the support point closest to the resonance point. In what is known as the *TQMF* method, the constants a_1 to a_3 are found using a least-squares fit of the analysis data in the vicinity of the resonant point to (2.9), from which the Q can be simply found as the imaginary part of a_3 .

Resonant Mode	f_0 [GHz]	% Cross-Correlation	Band of Variance	2 nd Highest % Cross-Correlation	Band of Variance
TM ₁₁₀	2.0537	92.50	0.0235	83.83	0.0020
TM ₂₁₀	4.0986	98.61	0.0237	83.94	0.0015
TM ₃₁₀	6.1475	96.41	0.0224	81.28	0.0007
TM ₄₁₀	8.1851	99.08	0.0229	84.08	0.0011
TM ₅₁₀	10.2157	99.01	0.0219	81.06	0.0013

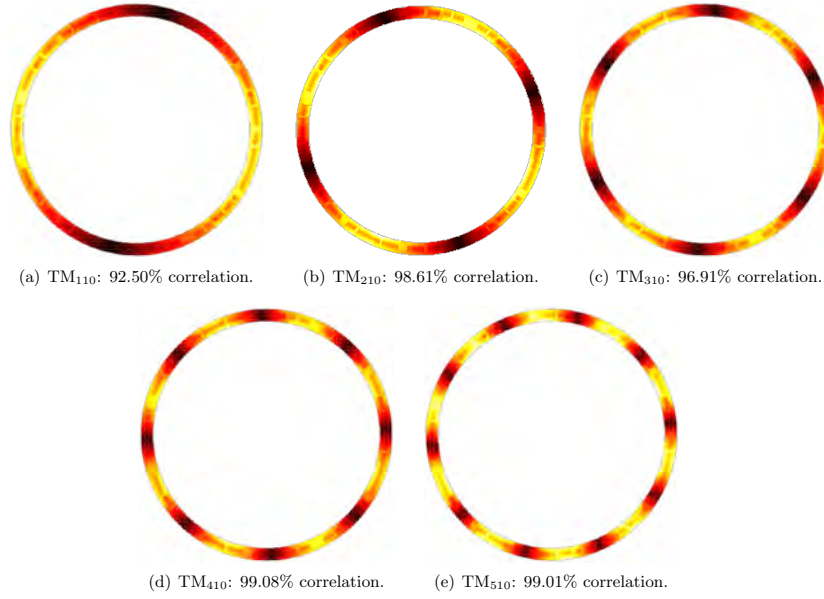


Fig. 6.9. Resonant modes identified using cross-correlation and variance parameters. (Ring parameters: $R = 16.9$ mm, $w/R = 0.05$)

Figure 2.33: Identification of modes for thin ring (from [38])

percentage quite low (78.15%), but it is also worse than some of the other mode correlations achieved. Since none of these correlations are very good either (maximum of 89.30%), it was suggested to use the band of variance instead, which indeed identified the correct resonant mode.

Referring to the formulation in the previous section [30], the full one-dimensional approximation function can be simplified in the vicinity of a resonant point [38],[39], to

It was mentioned previously that the proposed technique is limited to the availability of an analytical field analysis model from which the ideal mode patterns can be computed. An example is the square or meander ring resonator. In fact, so far only the annular ring resonator has the field theory derivation for its frequency modes [74]. For square ring resonators, it is difficult

$$R(f) = S_0 + \frac{f - f_0}{\psi_1(f_1, f_0) + \theta_N(f_L)} \quad (2.10)$$

where f_L is the support point closest to the resonance point, S_0 and S_1 the two other closest points, and $\theta(f_L)$ is the approximation function evaluated at f_L . It is clear that this form is the same as that of (2.9), and that the Q can therefore be obtained by simply equating the coefficients. No least-squares fit is however required, and the same interpolation function can be used for each resonant point. An example of this is shown in Fig. 2.37.

The results of an example ring resonator is shown in Fig. 2.38, where the interpolation-based method is compared to the TQMF method. Of note is the small number of support points required for good accuracy.

At this stage, another interpolation method known as *Vector-Fitting* became popular for microwave meta-models. In [40] and [41], this method was shown to compare very favourably to the rational function approach, especially for one variable, and for the modelling of resonance frequencies and Q -values. Extended procedures to accommodate noisy data, such as obtained from measurement, were also developed [42] and [43]. The use of Vector-Fitting was also shown to be applicable to the extraction of Spice models [44].

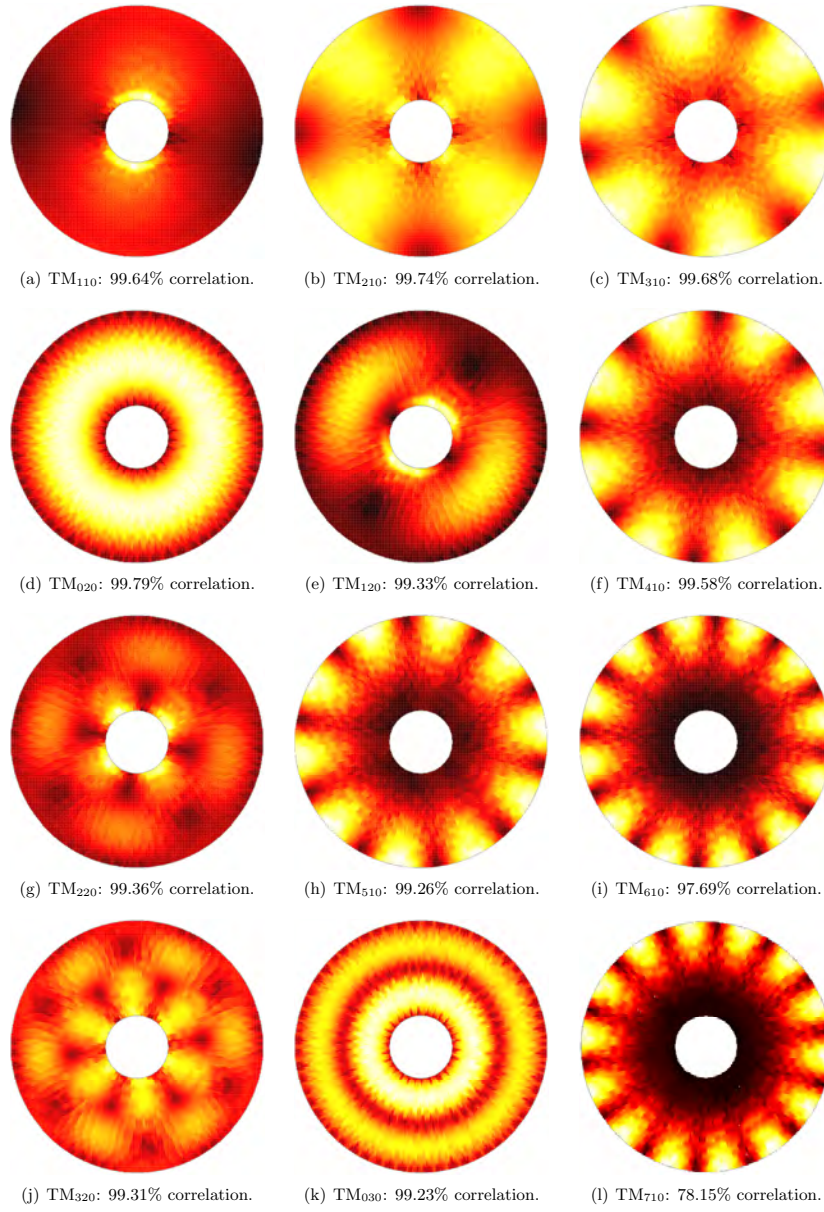


Fig. 6.10. Resonant modes identified using correlation and variance parameters. (Ring parameters: $R_o = 18.75 \text{ mm}$, $R_i = 18 \text{ mm}$, $R = 0.6$)

Figure 2.34: Identification of modes for thick ring (from [38])

As a final step, multi-variate models for resonance frequencies and Q-values were developed using the expanded multi-variate rational interpolation technique [37]. As before, this work is mathematically dense, and beyond the scope of this dissertation. The reader is referred to [37].

This follow-up work on meta-modelling was very valuable in terms of cementing the basic algorithms. To some extent, the capabilities of commercial EM-solvers have made parts of the work obsolete, but it is still used in-house

between my group and that of Profs Dhaene and Cuyt.

2.7 Conclusion

My work on modelling has constituted a significant part of my career, and has led to strong research cooperation with international groups. The principles involved in computational electromagnetic modelling, circuit model parameter extraction and meta-models also occur in a wide range of related fields, especially that of the design of passive circuits. All the methods discussed in this chapter represented state-of-the-art solutions at the time they were published, and together they served to establish my group internationally in the area of modelling.

The work has continued through the activities of my graduated students, both in academia and industry. In particular, Dr Lehmensiek (in his role at the company EMSS Antennas) and Prof de Villiers have applied these techniques to the design of the reflector array dishes of the Square-Kilometre-Array antenna in South Africa, the biggest electronic engineering and science project in the history of South Africa. Currently, Prof de Villiers has a large research programme in this field, with myself restarting efforts in this field - now in the area of statistical modelling as applied to manufacturing yield of microwave devices.

Chapter 3

Microwave Filters

3.1 Introduction

The design of microwave filters has been the most constant activity throughout my research and professional consulting career. From my very first research project, up to the writing of this dissertation, filters of varying form, frequency and type have permeated my work.

3.2 Bandpass filters utilising higher-order modes

The Mode-Matching codes developed in the first years of my research career naturally led me to filter structures which in some way utilised, or suffered from, higher order mode effects. While multiple modes exist on all guiding structures, dimensions for structures are normally chosen in such a way that all except one of these modes are below cut-off, as most design algorithms are based on single-mode transmission line models. A number of applications where multiple propagating modes were not only allowed, but used to good effect, have however been proposed through the years. Examples of this include the use of dual- and triple-mode cavities to reduce the size of waveguide filters, the improvement of aperture distributions in antenna feeds for reflector type antennas, and the shaping of power distributions in waveguides for spatial amplifier applications. Multiple propagating modes have also been utilised effectively to implement complicated designs elegantly, such as cross-coupled filters.

The design of devices utilising multiple propagating modes are complicated by a few problems. In general, a typical discontinuity separating two waveguides A and B is represented by an $n \times m$ scattering matrix, for which the equivalent circuit in Fig. 3.1 was proposed in [45]. Here, $W(n, m)$ represents a transformer ratio directly linked to the mode-matching method, and $Z_A(n)$

the design of waveguide devices using multiple propagating modes

CHAPTER 3. MICROWAVE FILTERS

33

Petrie Meyer¹, Christopher A Vale¹, Werner Steyn¹

and $Z_B(m)$ the impedance of modes n and m in waveguides A and B respectively. In the case of single-mode propagation, only two of the terminating impedances are replaced by ports, resulting in a standard two-port network. The other impedances are imaginary, and can be lumped together in one frequency dependent reactive element. For design purposes however, models that contain elements with non-linear frequency dependencies are virtually useless. In practice, the model is approximated for a specific structure and frequency range, by a few ideal elements like inductors, capacitors and sections of transmission line. This approach is inherently narrowband and approximate, although excellent models do exist.

guide, modes, bandstop filter, monopulse feed

I. INTRODUCTION

les exist on all guiding structures, but normally chosen in such a way that all except modes are below cut-off, as most design based on single-mode transmission line ber of applications where multiple propagating t only allowed, but used to good effect, have proposed through the years. Examples of this of dual and triple mode cavities to reduce the de filters [1,2,3], the improvement of aperture antenna feeds for reflector type antennas [4,5], ntly, the shaping of power distributions in spatial amplifier applications [6,7]. Multiple modes have also been utilized effectively to plicated designs elegantly, such as cross-Finally, the dimensions of a given problem are er the control of the designer, forcing him to modes.

f devices utilizing multiple propagating modes d by a few problems. In general, a typical separating two waveguides A and B is an $n \times m$ port scattering matrix, which can be s the equivalent circuit shown in Fig. 1 [8]. represents a transformer ratio directly linked to ching method, and $Z_A(n)$ and $Z_B(m)$ the modes n and m in waveguides A and B the case of single-mode propagation, only two ng impedances are replaced by ports, resulting vo-port network. All the other impedances are

can be lumped together in one frequency tive element. For design purposes however, ontain elements with non-linear frequency re virtually useless. In practice, the model in imated for a specific structure and frequency e ideal elements like inductors, capacitors and nsmission line. This approach is inherently

with the Department of Electrical and Electronic versity of Stellenbosch, Private Bag X9, Matieland ea, Email: pmeyer@sun.ac.za

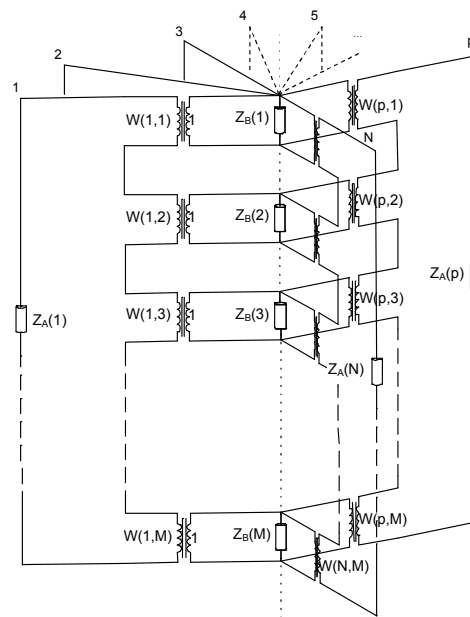


Figure 3.1: Circuit model for a multi-mode discontinuity (from [45])

This paper will present a number of techniques that have been developed by the authors over the past few years to approach the design problem of devices with multiple propagating modes. The techniques are mostly a combination of synthesis and intelligent optimisation, and rely on the careful choice of representations for one block and all the ports linked together through a complicated circuit. With the exception of the even- and odd-mode analysis which can be used for the two-mode case, no formal synthesis techniques exist for cascaded N -ports. Under the control of the designer, and as the wrong choices result in building blocks which are just too complicated to use.

My first project focusing on devices which utilise higher order modes, was on improving the design of classical multi-mode coupled waveguide cavity filters, which had been used especially in space applications since the 1970's, but which were at the time still mostly designed using equivalent models from as far back as the 1940's, or experimentation.

The history of coupled waveguide cavity filters dates from 1948, when the description and implementation of a direct-coupled cavity filter by Fano and Lawson, consisting of a number of waveguide cavities separated by thin inductive irises, was proposed. The irises were designed using the small aperture theory derived by Bethe in 1944 and the measured polarisability data presented by Cohn in 1952. The possibilities of reducing filter size by allowing more than one mode to be resonant in the same cavity, were soon realised, and in 1951 Lin demonstrated a fifth order filter realised in a single cylindrical cavity. At this time prototypes were deemed to be impractical, since the authors could not achieve independent control of the wanted degenerate modes, as well as suppression of unwanted modes.

This was the state of coupled cavity filter design until the launch of the first commercial satellite communications systems in the late 1960s. New technology calling for reduction in filter size and weight was required, sparking new interest in the use of multi-mode coupled cavity filters. The first dual-mode cavity filter was developed by Atia and Williams at Comsat Laboratories in 1970 and showed that multi-mode cavity filters were indeed commercially viable, and could reduce the number of physical cavities (and thereby the size and weight) of standard coupled cavity filters by a factor of two. Another significant advantage of multi-mode cavities is that the structure allows coupling to non-adjacent resonators. This can be achieved by using cross-shaped irises or coupling screws. This cross-coupling between resonators results in transfer function zeros along the real or imaginary axis, thereby permitting the realisation of elliptical and linear phase filter functions. It was therefore possible to improve filter performance without increasing the physical dimensions, at the cost of increased design complexity. After dual-mode filters, the obvious step towards the design of triple-mode filters and even quad-mode filters was taken. For such filters, three or four inter-cavity coupling coefficients must be controlled uniquely and simultaneously by an iris containing more than one aperture.

At the time, numerical electromagnetic techniques had been introduced, but were still only viable for very simple structures. In 1999, myself and a PhD student Dr Werner Steyn, proposed a combination of the numerical Mode-Matching technique for cylindrical waveguides, adaptively sampled rational interpolation models, and the so-called *Space-Mapping* optimisation technique for the design of multi-mode waveguide filters [45],[46],[47].

The Mode-Matching analysis of cylindrical waveguides with off-centre irises coupling two cavities is very intensive, firstly due to the evaluation of Bessel functions for the calculation of the two-dimensional field distributions in each guide, and secondly as off-centre positioning requires the use of a high number of modes. It was therefore of high importance to reduce the number of EM-analysis steps as much as possible.

To solve the coupling factors for a coupled cavity system, the basic structure in Fig. 3.2 is modelled as shown in Fig. 3.3 for the case of a single mode in each

CHAPTER 3. MICROWAVE FILTERS

This is the standard method for the calculation of coupling coefficients from the natural resonant frequencies of the structure. Very little information is available in literature on how resonant frequencies are linked to propagating modes. Accatino [76] uses symmetry properties of the iris structures to isolate coupling and natural

cavity. Following equations developed by Collin, the coupling coefficient can be extracted from the two eigen-frequencies of the circuit when both ports are shorted. In terms of scattering parameters, the natural resonant frequencies are determined by the multi-mode case, each mode is represented by a separate port as shown in Fig. 3.5, and the eigen-frequencies must be solved from a characteristic equation of the full S-matrix. As numerical root-finding is also a numerical intensive process, the combination of this with the Mode Matching procedure proved to be almost intractable.

The derivation of the standard procedure follows from the analysis of the equivalent circuit of two identical coupled cavities as shown in figure 6.1.

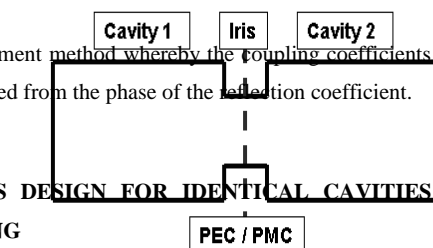


Figure 6.1: Equivalent circuit of two coupled cavities

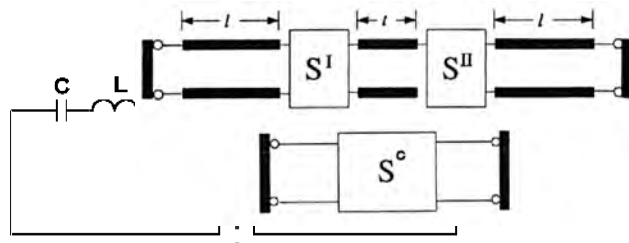


Figure 6.3: Mode matching model of complete coupled cavity structure

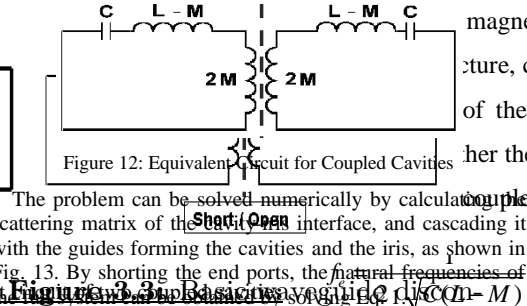


Figure 12: Equivalent circuit for coupled cavities

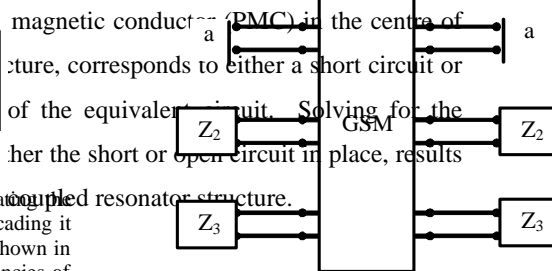


Figure 14: Reducing the Scattering Matrix

The problem can be solved numerically by calculating the scattering matrix of the iris interface, and cascading it with the guides forming the cavities and the iris, as shown in Fig. 13. By shorting the end ports, the natural frequencies of the circuit can be determined by solving Eq. 1.

The first step in solving this problem was to reduce the S-matrix by an algorithm which identified uncoupled modes from the characteristic equation of the ideal two-dimensional field distributions.

Instead of shorting all equivalent ports of the network, non-coupled ports can be shorted individually, which reduced the number of zeros in the characteristic equation substantially. This reduced the number of roots and the coupling coefficient.

These three techniques combine to give excellent results, as shown in Fig. 15 for the design of a triple mode coupling iris structure. The optimisation of the structure is performed by small aperture theory, and the full EM analysis the fine model.

Figure 13: S-matrix Model of Coupled Cavities

Figure 13: S-matrix Model of Coupled Cavities

Figure 13: S-matrix Model of Coupled Cavities

Figure 13: S-matrix Model of Coupled Cavities

Figure 13: S-matrix Model of Coupled Cavities

Figure 13: S-matrix Model of Coupled Cavities

Figure 13: S-matrix Model of Coupled Cavities

Figure 13: S-matrix Model of Coupled Cavities

Figure 13: S-matrix Model of Coupled Cavities

Figure 13: S-matrix Model of Coupled Cavities

Figure 13: S-matrix Model of Coupled Cavities

Figure 13: S-matrix Model of Coupled Cavities

Figure 13: S-matrix Model of Coupled Cavities

Figure 13: S-matrix Model of Coupled Cavities

Figure 13: S-matrix Model of Coupled Cavities

Figure 13: S-matrix Model of Coupled Cavities

Figure 13: S-matrix Model of Coupled Cavities

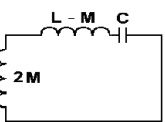
Figure 13: S-matrix Model of Coupled Cavities

Figure 13: S-matrix Model of Coupled Cavities

Figure 13: S-matrix Model of Coupled Cavities

Figure 13: S-matrix Model of Coupled Cavities

Filters dates from



reduced parasitism
possibilities of

one interface, and cascading it

ies, and in 1951

ies and the iris, as shown in

the natural frequencies of

coupling blocks were made possible for the first time on a PC [47].

one or two frequencies with at the most four modes per the

side. This has the effect of reducing the number of analysis steps is shown for

coupling two sections of cylindrical waveguide, shown in Fig.

10.

commercially viable,

ities (and thereby

reduction filters by

en by Eq. 2, with f_c and f_m the

s very standard and has been

de cavities is that

coupling coefficients.

resonators. This

ises or coupling

ators results in

imaginary axis,

onant modes, the numerical

become difficult and time

and linear phase

waveguide cavity together,

filter performance is very close

that many EM evaluations of

of the roots of

ling value analysis has been

wards the design

of filter structures which requires

value analysis steps. For one

f EM analysis points quickly

techniques are combined, i.e. (a)

ring matrix (GSM) [11], (b)

[18] and (c) Aggressive Space

between modes exists, i.e.

can be isolated by adding short

ating the remaining modes in

es as is shown in Fig. 14 for a

accuracy of coupling coefficients determined by small aperture theory and the mode-matching method for simple geometries where only one coupling mode is evaluated, errors of up to 10% on the part of the small aperture theory was found, clearly illustrating the importance of numerical methods for iris design.

Today, most designers follow a two-step procedure to design coupled cavity filters. In the first stage, the iris dimensions are determined by using either small aperture theory, or by calculating the two natural resonant frequencies of each mode coupled by the iris naturally in the function stage, the full filter is optimised with a numerical code.

B. Choice of functional blocks
In narrow band filter applications, the functional blocks are chosen to couple specific modes on both sides of the block to Space-Mapping technique [46]. The problem is made a little clearer by the partitioning of the coupling block is embedded on both sides in resonant sections of waveguide. Figure 10 shows the effect of the Space-Mapping was shown to be quite dramatic.

Figure 10: Typical Coupling Iris

Figure 11: Typical cylindrical iris

Figure 12: Typical cylindrical iris

Figure 13: Typical cylindrical iris

Figure 14: Typical cylindrical iris

Figure 15: Typical cylindrical iris

Figure 16: Typical cylindrical iris

Figure 17: Typical cylindrical iris

Figure 18: Typical cylindrical iris

Figure 19: Typical cylindrical iris

Figure 20: Typical cylindrical iris

Figure 21: Typical cylindrical iris

Figure 22: Typical cylindrical iris

Figure 23: Typical cylindrical iris

Figure 24: Typical cylindrical iris

Figure 25: Typical cylindrical iris

Figure 26: Typical cylindrical iris

Figure 27: Typical cylindrical iris

Figure 28: Typical cylindrical iris

Figure 29: Typical cylindrical iris

Figure 30: Typical cylindrical iris

Figure 31: Typical cylindrical iris

Figure 32: Typical cylindrical iris

Figure 33: Typical cylindrical iris

Figure 34: Typical cylindrical iris

Figure 35: Typical cylindrical iris

Figure 36: Typical cylindrical iris

Figure 37: Typical cylindrical iris

Figure 38: Typical cylindrical iris

advantage that the roots of the rational function can be calculated almost directly due to the nature of the function [33].

use only part of the design cycle. To obtain filter

must be optimised to produce the correct coupling

a very difficult multi-parameter, multi-objective

implemented using the (then recently developed)

The problem

includes numerical design of irises for multi-mode

for the first time on a PC [47]. An example for a

number of analysis steps is shown for

coupling two sections of cylindrical waveguide, shown in Fig.

Figure 10: Typical Coupling Iris

Figure 11: Typical cylindrical iris

Figure 12: Typical cylindrical iris

Figure 13: Typical cylindrical iris

Figure 14: Typical cylindrical iris

Figure 15: Typical cylindrical iris

Figure 16: Typical cylindrical iris

Figure 17: Typical cylindrical iris

Figure 18: Typical cylindrical iris

Figure 19: Typical cylindrical iris

Figure 20: Typical cylindrical iris

Figure 21: Typical cylindrical iris

Figure 22: Typical cylindrical iris

Figure 23: Typical cylindrical iris

Figure 24: Typical cylindrical iris

Figure 25: Typical cylindrical iris

Figure 26: Typical cylindrical iris

Figure 27: Typical cylindrical iris

Figure 28: Typical cylindrical iris

Figure 29: Typical cylindrical iris

Figure 30: Typical cylindrical iris

Figure 31: Typical cylindrical iris

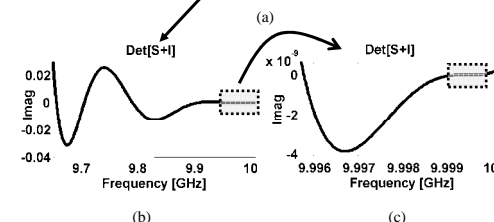
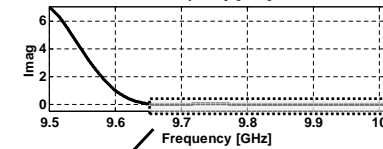
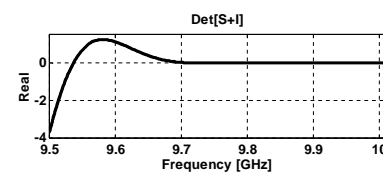


Figure 6.5 (a): Typical $\text{Det}[S+I]$ of triple-mode iris in frequency band of interest.

Figure 3.8: Typical characteristic polynomial (from [46])

Once the natural resonant frequencies have been determined, the specific mode that is at resonance must be identified using the procedure introduced above. This requires a single EM-evaluation of the coupled cavity structure at each of the natural frequencies. Table 6.1 summarises the calculated coupling coefficients and resonant frequencies.

Figure 3.7: Performance of Space-Mapping optimisation (from [46])

Figure 3.7: Performance of Space-Mapping optimisation (from [46])

Figure 3.7: Performance of Space-Mapping optimisation (from [46])

Figure 3.7: Performance of Space-Mapping optimisation (from [46])

Figure 3.7: Performance of Space-Mapping optimisation (from [46])

Figure 3.7: Performance of Space-Mapping optimisation (from [46])

Figure 3.7: Performance of Space-Mapping optimisation (from [46])

Figure 3.7: Performance of Space-Mapping optimisation (from [46])

Figure 3.7: Performance of Space-Mapping optimisation (from [46])

Figure 3.7: Performance of Space-Mapping optimisation (from [46])

Figure 3.7: Performance of Space-Mapping optimisation (from [46])

Figure 3.7: Performance of Space-Mapping optimisation (from [46])

Figure 3.7: Performance of Space-Mapping optimisation (from [46])

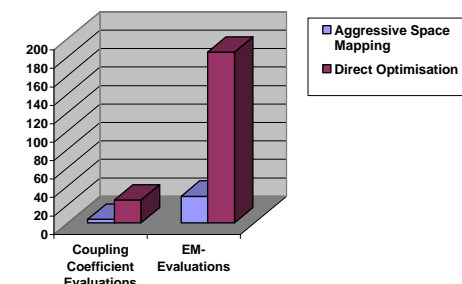


Figure 15: Reduction in EM Evaluations

Figure 3.7: Performance of Space-Mapping optimisation (from [46])

Figure 3.7: Performance of Space-Mapping optimisation (from [46])

Figure 3.7: Performance of Space-Mapping optimisation (from [46])

Figure 3.7: Performance of Space-Mapping optimisation (from [46])

Figure 3.7: Performance of Space-Mapping optimisation (from [46])

Figure 3.7: Performance of Space-Mapping optimisation (from [46])

Figure 3.7: Performance of Space-Mapping optimisation (from [46])

Figure 3.7: Performance of Space-Mapping optimisation (from [46])

Figure 3.7: Performance of Space-Mapping optimisation (from [46])

Figure 3.7: Performance of Space-Mapping optimisation (from [46])

Figure 3.7: Performance of Space-Mapping optimisation (from [46])

Figure 3.7: Performance of Space-Mapping optimisation (from [46])

Figure 3.7: Performance of Space-Mapping optimisation (from [46])

Figure 3.7: Performance of Space-Mapping optimisation (from [46])

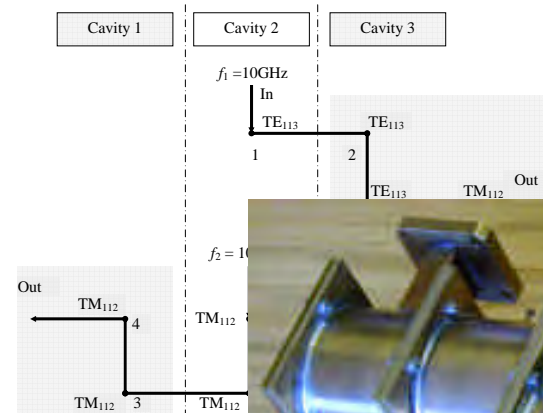


Figure 7.3: Basic coupling structure

Figure 3.9: Quad-mode diplexer (from [46])
 modes (from [46])
 relative bandwidth of 0.8% at 10GHz
 reflection loss the coupling matrix re

return loss. This
 waveguide structure ever published, and validated the design procedure very
 well.

A simulated transmission and reflection response of the diplexer is given in figure 7.4 where channel isolation of more than 70dB can be observed at the channel centre frequencies. The simulation structure presented in figure 7.4 allows 1 channel. The remaining

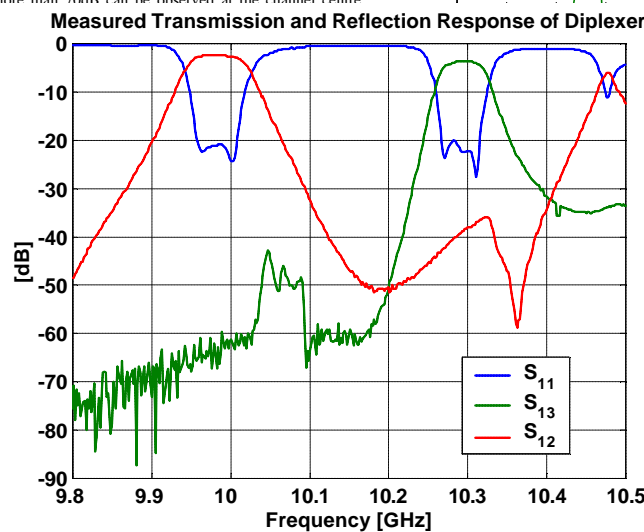


Figure 17: Measured results for Diplexer
Figure 3.11: Quad-mode diplexer results (from [46])

IV. MULTIMODE WAVEGUIDE ANTENNA FEED FOR MONOPULSE APPLICATION

A second example of the integrated design technique, was a dual-mode cylindrical waveguide filter, using 90 degree spatially rotated rectangular cavities at both endpoints of a cylindrical resonator, as shown in Fig.3.12 [48]. Up to this point, cross-coupling between the two degenerate modes of a cylindrical waveguide was typically implemented using tuning screws at a 45 degree inclination to the electric field of both modes. This was typically not designed,

In 1961, P.W. Hannan presented design objectives for optimum antenna feed systems for reflector type antennas in monopulse applications. The implementation of these ideas were found to be best achieved with multimode antenna feeds where, typically, a number of waveguide feeds are first combined into one overmoded waveguide, which terminates in the radiating aperture [20,5]. The basic problem is shown in Fig. 18. By exciting the four input waveguides in three different ways, three antenna patterns are obtained, called the plus, elevation and azimuth channels.

One of the problems with these types of feed, is the

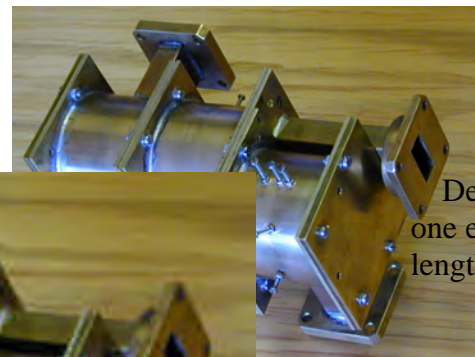
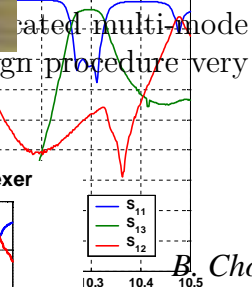


Figure 16: Multimodal Diplexer

of constructed diplexer
 quad-mode diplexer
 are cavity is denoted as port one with the
 ports two and three respectively. The
 device were measured and the results
 7.1.

Reflection Response of Diplexer



Designing a quarter wave
 one excitation, can therefore
 length for another mode.

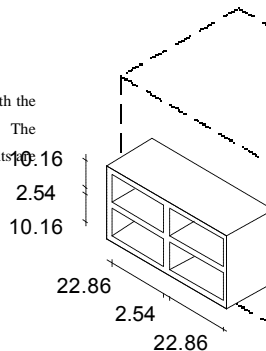
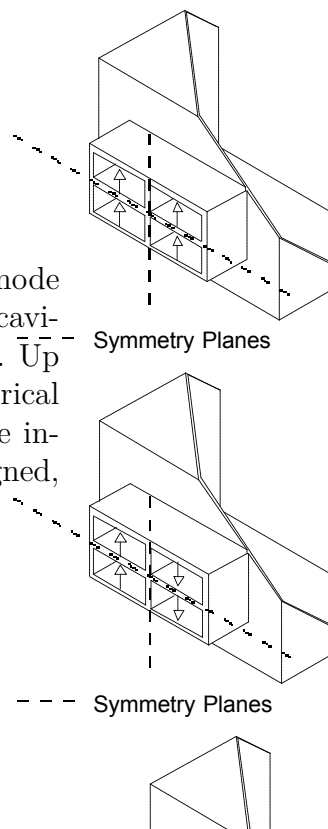


Figure 18: Multimodal Diplexer

B. Choice of functional block

In this type of problem
 determined by first using s
 into three different problem
 and odd mode symmetries
 as coupled lines. The symm
 are shown in Fig. 19, wi
 conductor and 'h' a perfect



but simply tuned by hand after construction. In [48], thin, shallow, offset rectangular cavities called *shorted-stub couplings* are coupled to the main resonator on both endpoints, creating a controllable coupling between the two degenerate modes. The advantages of this were in the ability to accurately analyse and design these cavities, and the ability to realize a filter with no post-manufacturing tuning.

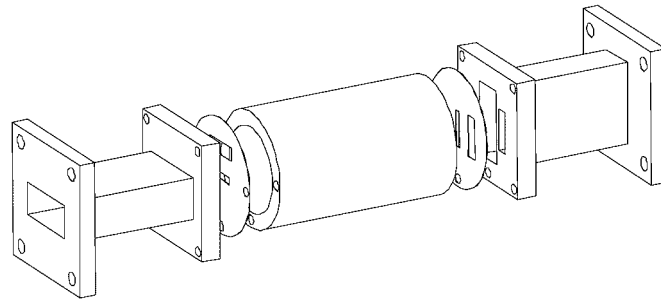


Fig. 7. Triple-mode single-cavity filter.

Figure 3.12: Shorted-stub filter (from [48])

Fig.3.13 shows the way the shorted stub is coupled to the main cavity. The bandwidth of the filter is very narrow (1%) and the integrated design is shown.

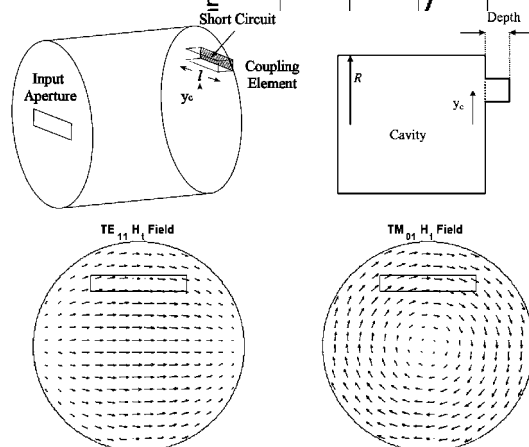


Fig. 3. Basic coupling element for triple-mode cavities.

Figure 3.13: Shorted-stub coupling (from [48])

of traditional triple-mode cavity filters. The coupling element was the use of a cylindrical ridge waveguide, shown in Fig. 2(c), where the coupling element is a shorted stub. The coordinates, Fig. 2(d) placed the coupling screws, and the waveguide sections [24, 17, 18] and off-center circular waveguide sections [9] to control the coupling between the orthogonal degenerate modes in a dual-mode cavity. The elliptical waveguide allows the control of both the coupling coefficient and the resonant frequencies of the degenerate modes. An advantage of the last three cases presented is that they can be analyzed very efficiently for implementation in narrow-band filters.

In most of these designs, coupling is achieved by means of cavity perturbation at positions of strong electric-field distribution along the length of the cavity. However, the same effect can be obtained by perturbing the cavity using perturbation modes in the cavity. You can achieve coupling between degenerate modes via grooves in the outer cylindrical wall of the waveguide, but do not include measured results.

This paper presents a new fixed coupling structure using magnetic-field coupling. In a triple-mode cavity, since this is in the cylindrical wall of the cavity, the coupling element is a shorted rectangular waveguide stub placed in the end

STEYN AND MEYER: SHORTED WAVEGUIDE-STUB COUPLING MECHANISM FOR NARROW-BAND MULTIMODE COUPLED RESONATOR

STEYN AND MEYER: SHORTED WAVEGUIDE-STUB COUPLING MECHANISM FOR NARROW-BAND MULTIMODE COUPLED RESONATOR

STEYN AND MEYER: SHORTED WAVEGUIDE-STUB COUPLING MECHANISM FOR NARROW-BAND MULTIMODE COUPLED RESONATOR

STEYN AND MEYER: SHORTED WAVEGUIDE-STUB COUPLING MECHANISM FOR NARROW-BAND MULTIMODE COUPLED RESONATOR

STEYN AND MEYER: SHORTED WAVEGUIDE-STUB COUPLING MECHANISM FOR NARROW-BAND MULTIMODE COUPLED RESONATOR

STEYN AND MEYER: SHORTED WAVEGUIDE-STUB COUPLING MECHANISM FOR NARROW-BAND MULTIMODE COUPLED RESONATOR

STEYN AND MEYER: SHORTED WAVEGUIDE-STUB COUPLING MECHANISM FOR NARROW-BAND MULTIMODE COUPLED RESONATOR

STEYN AND MEYER: SHORTED WAVEGUIDE-STUB COUPLING MECHANISM FOR NARROW-BAND MULTIMODE COUPLED RESONATOR

STEYN AND MEYER: SHORTED WAVEGUIDE-STUB COUPLING MECHANISM FOR NARROW-BAND MULTIMODE COUPLED RESONATOR

STEYN AND MEYER: SHORTED WAVEGUIDE-STUB COUPLING MECHANISM FOR NARROW-BAND MULTIMODE COUPLED RESONATOR

STEYN AND MEYER: SHORTED WAVEGUIDE-STUB COUPLING MECHANISM FOR NARROW-BAND MULTIMODE COUPLED RESONATOR

STEYN AND MEYER: SHORTED WAVEGUIDE-STUB COUPLING MECHANISM FOR NARROW-BAND MULTIMODE COUPLED RESONATOR

STEYN AND MEYER: SHORTED WAVEGUIDE-STUB COUPLING MECHANISM FOR NARROW-BAND MULTIMODE COUPLED RESONATOR

STEYN AND MEYER: SHORTED WAVEGUIDE-STUB COUPLING MECHANISM FOR NARROW-BAND MULTIMODE COUPLED RESONATOR

STEYN AND MEYER: SHORTED WAVEGUIDE-STUB COUPLING MECHANISM FOR NARROW-BAND MULTIMODE COUPLED RESONATOR

STEYN AND MEYER: SHORTED WAVEGUIDE-STUB COUPLING MECHANISM FOR NARROW-BAND MULTIMODE COUPLED RESONATOR

STEYN AND MEYER: SHORTED WAVEGUIDE-STUB COUPLING MECHANISM FOR NARROW-BAND MULTIMODE COUPLED RESONATOR

STEYN AND MEYER: SHORTED WAVEGUIDE-STUB COUPLING MECHANISM FOR NARROW-BAND MULTIMODE COUPLED RESONATOR

STEYN AND MEYER: SHORTED WAVEGUIDE-STUB COUPLING MECHANISM FOR NARROW-BAND MULTIMODE COUPLED RESONATOR

STEYN AND MEYER: SHORTED WAVEGUIDE-STUB COUPLING MECHANISM FOR NARROW-BAND MULTIMODE COUPLED RESONATOR

STEYN AND MEYER: SHORTED WAVEGUIDE-STUB COUPLING MECHANISM FOR NARROW-BAND MULTIMODE COUPLED RESONATOR

STEYN AND MEYER: SHORTED WAVEGUIDE-STUB COUPLING MECHANISM FOR NARROW-BAND MULTIMODE COUPLED RESONATOR

STEYN AND MEYER: SHORTED WAVEGUIDE-STUB COUPLING MECHANISM FOR NARROW-BAND MULTIMODE COUPLED RESONATOR

STEYN AND MEYER: SHORTED WAVEGUIDE-STUB COUPLING MECHANISM FOR NARROW-BAND MULTIMODE COUPLED RESONATOR

STEYN AND MEYER: SHORTED WAVEGUIDE-STUB COUPLING MECHANISM FOR NARROW-BAND MULTIMODE COUPLED RESONATOR

STEYN AND MEYER: SHORTED WAVEGUIDE-STUB COUPLING MECHANISM FOR NARROW-BAND MULTIMODE COUPLED RESONATOR

STEYN AND MEYER: SHORTED WAVEGUIDE-STUB COUPLING MECHANISM FOR NARROW-BAND MULTIMODE COUPLED RESONATOR

STEYN AND MEYER: SHORTED WAVEGUIDE-STUB COUPLING MECHANISM FOR NARROW-BAND MULTIMODE COUPLED RESONATOR

STEYN AND MEYER: SHORTED WAVEGUIDE-STUB COUPLING MECHANISM FOR NARROW-BAND MULTIMODE COUPLED RESONATOR

STEYN AND MEYER: SHORTED WAVEGUIDE-STUB COUPLING MECHANISM FOR NARROW-BAND MULTIMODE COUPLED RESONATOR

STEYN AND MEYER: SHORTED WAVEGUIDE-STUB COUPLING MECHANISM FOR NARROW-BAND MULTIMODE COUPLED RESONATOR

STEYN AND MEYER: SHORTED WAVEGUIDE-STUB COUPLING MECHANISM FOR NARROW-BAND MULTIMODE COUPLED RESONATOR

STEYN AND MEYER: SHORTED WAVEGUIDE-STUB COUPLING MECHANISM FOR NARROW-BAND MULTIMODE COUPLED RESONATOR

STEYN AND MEYER: SHORTED WAVEGUIDE-STUB COUPLING MECHANISM FOR NARROW-BAND MULTIMODE COUPLED RESONATOR

STEYN AND MEYER: SHORTED WAVEGUIDE-STUB COUPLING MECHANISM FOR NARROW-BAND MULTIMODE COUPLED RESONATOR

STEYN AND MEYER: SHORTED WAVEGUIDE-STUB COUPLING MECHANISM FOR NARROW-BAND MULTIMODE COUPLED RESONATOR

STEYN AND MEYER: SHORTED WAVEGUIDE-STUB COUPLING MECHANISM FOR NARROW-BAND MULTIMODE COUPLED RESONATOR

STEYN AND MEYER: SHORTED WAVEGUIDE-STUB COUPLING MECHANISM FOR NARROW-BAND MULTIMODE COUPLED RESONATOR

STEYN AND MEYER: SHORTED WAVEGUIDE-STUB COUPLING MECHANISM FOR NARROW-BAND MULTIMODE COUPLED RESONATOR

STEYN AND MEYER: SHORTED WAVEGUIDE-STUB COUPLING MECHANISM FOR NARROW-BAND MULTIMODE COUPLED RESONATOR

STEYN AND MEYER: SHORTED WAVEGUIDE-STUB COUPLING MECHANISM FOR NARROW-BAND MULTIMODE COUPLED RESONATOR

STEYN AND MEYER: SHORTED WAVEGUIDE-STUB COUPLING MECHANISM FOR NARROW-BAND MULTIMODE COUPLED RESONATOR

STEYN AND MEYER: SHORTED WAVEGUIDE-STUB COUPLING MECHANISM FOR NARROW-BAND MULTIMODE COUPLED RESONATOR

STEYN AND MEYER: SHORTED WAVEGUIDE-STUB COUPLING MECHANISM FOR NARROW-BAND MULTIMODE COUPLED RESONATOR

STEYN AND MEYER: SHORTED WAVEGUIDE-STUB COUPLING MECHANISM FOR NARROW-BAND MULTIMODE COUPLED RESONATOR

STEYN AND MEYER: SHORTED WAVEGUIDE-STUB COUPLING MECHANISM FOR NARROW-BAND MULTIMODE COUPLED RESONATOR

STEYN AND MEYER: SHORTED WAVEGUIDE-STUB COUPLING MECHANISM FOR NARROW-BAND MULTIMODE COUPLED RESONATOR

STEYN AND MEYER: SHORTED WAVEGUIDE-STUB COUPLING MECHANISM FOR NARROW-BAND MULTIMODE COUPLED RESONATOR

STEYN AND MEYER: SHORTED WAVEGUIDE-STUB COUPLING MECHANISM FOR NARROW-BAND MULTIMODE COUPLED RESONATOR

STEYN AND MEYER: SHORTED WAVEGUIDE-STUB COUPLING MECHANISM FOR NARROW-BAND MULTIMODE COUPLED RESONATOR

STEYN AND MEYER: SHORTED WAVEGUIDE-STUB COUPLING MECHANISM FOR NARROW-BAND MULTIMODE COUPLED RESONATOR

STEYN AND MEYER: SHORTED WAVEGUIDE-STUB COUPLING MECHANISM FOR NARROW-BAND MULTIMODE COUPLED RESONATOR

STEYN AND MEYER: SHORTED WAVEGUIDE-STUB COUPLING MECHANISM FOR NARROW-BAND MULTIMODE COUPLED RESONATOR

STEYN AND MEYER: SHORTED WAVEGUIDE-STUB COUPLING MECHANISM FOR NARROW-BAND MULTIMODE COUPLED RESONATOR

STEYN AND MEYER: SHORTED WAVEGUIDE-STUB COUPLING MECHANISM FOR NARROW-BAND MULTIMODE COUPLED RESONATOR

STEYN AND MEYER: SHORTED WAVEGUIDE-STUB COUPLING MECHANISM FOR NARROW-BAND MULTIMODE COUPLED RESONATOR

STEYN AND MEYER: SHORTED WAVEGUIDE-STUB COUPLING MECHANISM FOR NARROW-BAND MULTIMODE COUPLED RESONATOR

STEYN AND MEYER: SHORTED WAVEGUIDE-STUB COUPLING MECHANISM FOR NARROW-BAND MULTIMODE COUPLED RESONATOR

STEYN AND MEYER: SHORTED WAVEGUIDE-STUB COUPLING MECHANISM FOR NARROW-BAND MULTIMODE COUPLED RESONATOR

STEYN AND MEYER: SHORTED WAVEGUIDE-STUB COUPLING MECHANISM FOR NARROW-BAND MULTIMODE COUPLED RESONATOR

STEYN AND MEYER: SHORTED WAVEGUIDE-STUB COUPLING MECHANISM FOR NARROW-BAND MULTIMODE COUPLED RESONATOR

STEYN AND MEYER: SHORTED WAVEGUIDE-STUB COUPLING MECHANISM FOR NARROW-BAND MULTIMODE COUPLED RESONATOR

STEYN AND MEYER: SHORTED WAVEGUIDE-STUB COUPLING MECHANISM FOR NARROW-BAND MULTIMODE COUPLED RESONATOR

STEYN AND MEYER: SHORTED WAVEGUIDE-STUB COUPLING MECHANISM FOR NARROW-BAND MULTIMODE COUPLED RESONATOR

STEYN AND MEYER: SHORTED WAVEGUIDE-STUB COUPLING MECHANISM FOR NARROW-BAND MULTIMODE COUPLED RESONATOR

STEYN AND MEYER: SHORTED WAVEGUIDE-STUB COUPLING MECHANISM FOR NARROW-BAND MULTIMODE COUPLED RESONATOR

can be when applied to multi-modal waveguide filters. Most of these techniques have since been implemented into commercial software, and are used by designers without even realising. At the time, it served as the only way for us to design a number of these filters for local industry, using fully in-house software.

3.3 Bandstop filters for microwave heating applications

In parallel with the work on bandpass filters which use higher order waveguide modes, my PhD student Dr Chris Vale and myself in 1999 embarked on a project to design bandstop waveguide filters for multiple propagating modes [49]. This work stemmed from the research activity of colleagues Profs. Johann de Swardt and Howard Reader, on microwave dielectric heating.

The problem at the time was that many microwave heating facilities required conveyor belts passing through a microwave heating cavity, enforcing permanent large openings in the cavity sidewalls through which dangerous levels of microwave energy can escape if not filtered.

A solution to this problem is the placement of bandstop filters (or chokes) on either side of the cavity to reflect and/or absorb any energy before it can do harm to people or equipment outside. These chokes must allow the free movement of product through the facility. The size of the problem is in general large enough to allow the propagation of multiple waveguide modes. A bandstop filter, able to reflect a number of modes over a specified band was therefore required. This is a difficult problem for which no standard design techniques exist, and it is the free movement of product through the facility.

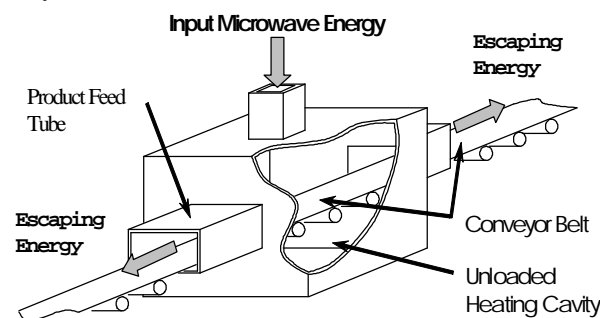


Figure 2: Microwave Heating Cavity with Conveyor Belt Feed
Figure 3.15: Dielectric heating oven (from [45])

The preferred choke design solution is a reactive choke. This typically reflects the escaping energy back into the cavity using equivalent reactive elements, such as stub lines, in a similar fashion as would be used in a conventional bandstop filter design. Because the conveyor-belt channel cannot be blocked in

functional blocks [50], [51]. Because of the complex nature of the microwave design problem, however, standard reactive choke designs typically enforce limitations on the aperture geometry, so as to apply single mode equivalent approaches. When such limited aperture geometries conflict with the physical requirements for aperture size set by the size of the product feed tube, the designer must resort to other solutions such as tunnels with absorbing walls, special arrangements of doors timed to open and close to admit product or ‘maze openings’ that force the product to ‘meander through a folder corridor lined with absorbing walls’ [10]. These approaches have many drawbacks, specifically since the use of absorbing materials requires bulky cooling and imposes power limitations, and the

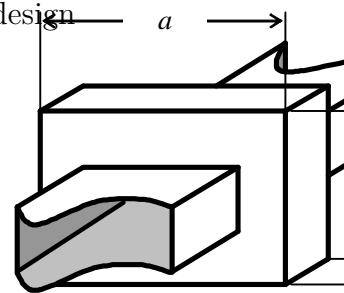


Figure 3: Functional Block

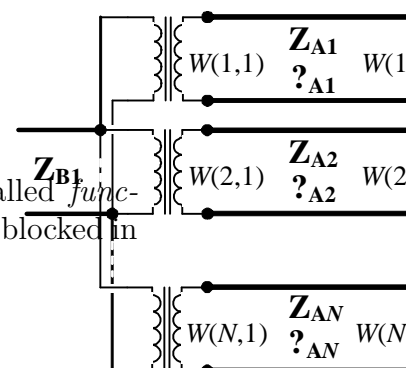
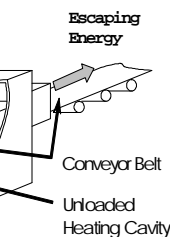


Figure 4: Functional Block Equivalent

The fundamental field activity in the cavity is not understood. In geometries which exhibit multiple modes, the energy in the small guide is found to be shared between two modes of different propa-

ilities, conveyor belts creating cavity enforce cavity sidewalls, through which energy can escape if not in Fig. 2. The solution to 'chokes' on either side of the cavity before it can do so. These chokes must at least prevent the flow of product through the



with Conveyor Belt Feed

on is a reactive choke. Energy back into the cavity such as stub lines, in a conventional bandstop nature of the microwave reactive choke designs aperture geometry, so as to chokes. When such limited the physical requirements the product feed tube, the ns such as tunnels with of doors timed to open openings' that force the order corridor lined with approaches have many e of absorbing materials power limitations, and the ed by obstacles such as empirical designs have the geometries and require uation.

power flow at specific functional blocks used for at least one mode are that blocks do not cause cross-coupling stop filter under such, as a functional block

which creates a number of modes that will excite a number of other modes at the same frequency. Analysis indicates that, in any way, the blocks are only allowed larger than a certain size. With limited cross-coupling can be achieved by functional blocks consisting of back-to-back π and $\pi/2$ couplers separated by lengths of uniform guide, as shown in Figs. 3 and 4. If the steps go from small to large to small again, and the size of the small waveguide is the same as the product feed tubes discussed above, then such functional blocks in cascade would fulfill the requirements of a reactive choke structure in terms of geometric limitations.

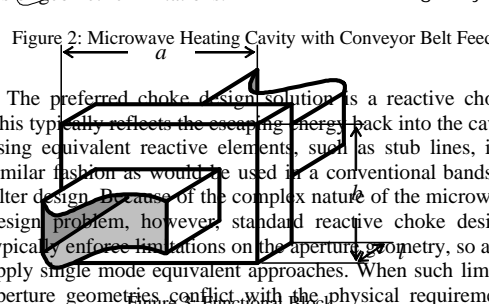


Figure 3: Functional Block

Figure 3.19 illustrates the limitations of the design function. For aperture sizes set by the diameter of the product feed tube, the designer must resort to other solutions such as tunnels with absorbing walls (figure 3.19a), the use of doors timed to open and close to admit product or 'maze openings' that force the product to 'meander' through a wider corridor lined with absorbing walls' [10]. These approaches have many drawbacks, specifically since the use of absorbing materials requires bulky cooling and supports power limitations, and the free flow of product may be impeded by obstacles such as doors, the machine, with one particular major space drawback of being limited to specific geometries and requiring a redesign from scratch for each new situation. Possible

yield a block which would create a single *B*. Choice of *N* functional blocks, $W(N,1)$ mode. A typical parameter space is shown in Figure 3. Functional block Equivalency Circuits for frequencies for specific modes, the functional blocks used should create a multi transmission for a vector of modal

[illegible]

1. Loop over all available blocks ($k = 1, \dots, N$).
 - 1a. Find required cascading length of block k from current structure according to cascading criteria.
 - 1b. If required length is too short or long, or if there are seriously conflicting requirements from different modes, skip to next available block (Step 2).
 - 1c. Otherwise place block at the required cascading length to create a new (partial) final structure.
 - 1d. If $N = 1$ (the last block has been placed), save new structure as a candidate for next iteration.
 - 1e. Otherwise, call a subroutine of the algorithm with the new structure, and mark it removed from the available block list.
2. Move on to next available block—return to step 1.

The algorithm above executes extremely quickly as it does not have to do any intense numerical work or work with all the permutations of possible block configurations. It builds up vi-

Figure 3.18: Functional block partitioning. One of the simpler uses of the map is to identify blocks that are the simplest possible configurations. These are then optimized and can save more than one order of magnitude in execution time, number of blocks and the size of filter greatly. This can be accomplished by superimposing two maps over each other and selecting geometries where the two maps overlap or come close to each other. All the designs presented here use some blocks that exhibit the property of geometric alignment that complicates the cascading process somewhat, as two such blocks can seldom be placed on top of each other in a good configuration. Block structures are an ideal challenge for an evolutionary approach. The main reason for this is the ability for the complexity of the mem-

bers of the sample population to be increased by adding more blocks to certain individuals. If the genetic algorithm itself is allowed to do this, it will further increase complexity at the cost

lower the cost of this behavior increasing complexity and resource usage. This method is designed to be used in the early stages of length, providing performance is enhanced. Furthermore, the above can be used to derive a more elegant alternative method of determining the critical path and to provide a more efficient way of designing the block structures. This method is based on defining reproduction and competition in a meaningful way, is relatively easy to use and only solves this problem. The primary wayguide should split roughly evenly between only two modes in the since the performance of a specific configuration is dependent on the number of modes and the number of blocks.

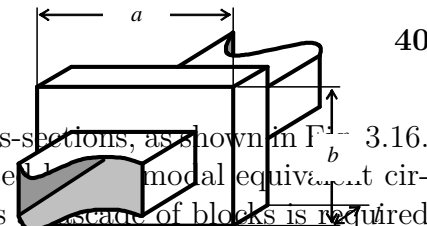


Figure 3: Functional Block

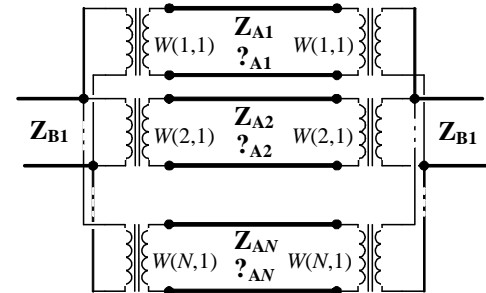
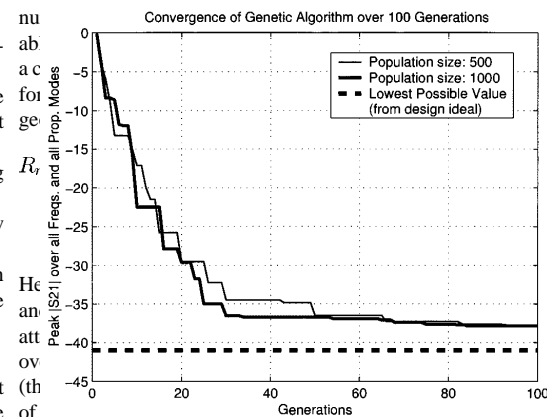


Figure 4: Functional Block Equivalent Circuit

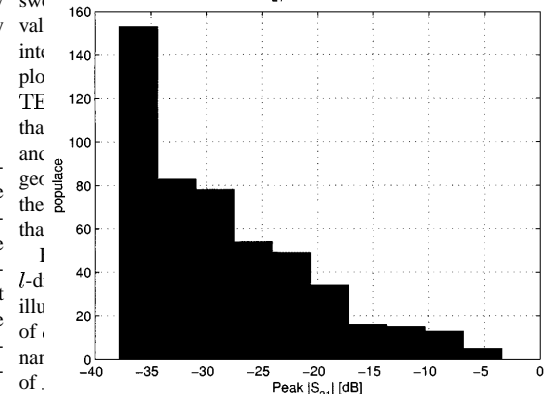
Figure 3.17: Functional block

The equivalent field action from [45] block can easily be understood. In geometries which exhibit resonance, incident energy in the small guide is found to split relatively evenly between two modes of different propagation constant in the large overmode. The virtual plane of the space guide is different for the two modes, and, if chosen correctly, can induce destructive recombination of the energy in the two modes at the opposing end, leading to a null in propagation at a specific frequency. Since the dimensions of the waveguide step determine both how the energy is split between the two carriers, and what their propagation constants are, and the length of the enlarged guide sets the path length that the C mode must travel, which adds another stage to the performance, of the block depends on a rather complex relationship between dimensions. In fact, a whole host of variable geometries can form a pass band frequency, as shown in Fig. 9. The designer must choose from these, according to the next step in the design, i.e. the cascading procedure.



effect of nonpropagating modes that would not have a strong influence over the lensing of the guide. Note that modes with the

Figure 3.19: Bandstop filter convergence



that the coupling matrix method works over a rather large band of frequencies, implying that block structures for a particular

A prototype, scaled in frequency, was designed and measured. The measurement in itself is non-trivial, and required a completely new system making use of very lightly coupled probed-fed waveguides [49]. The filter is shown in Fig.3.20, with the measured results for a number of modes in Figs.3.21 to 3.23.

VALE *et al.*: DESIGN PROCEDURE FOR BANDSTOP FILTERS IN WAVEGUIDES SUPI

2502

IEEE TRANSACTIONS ON MICROWAVE THEORY AND TECHNIQUES, VOL. 48, NO. 12, DECEMBER 2000

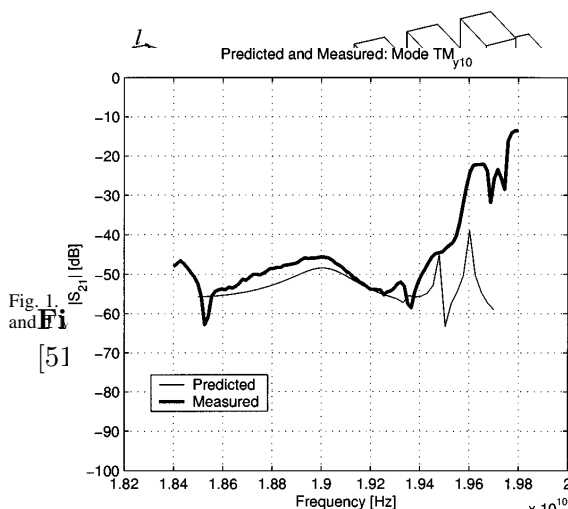


Fig. 1
and Fig. 11

Fig. 12. $|S_{21}|$ -mode TM_{y10} —measured. $z=15\Omega$, $L=15^\circ$, $z=50\Omega$, $L=15^\circ$, $z=50\Omega$.

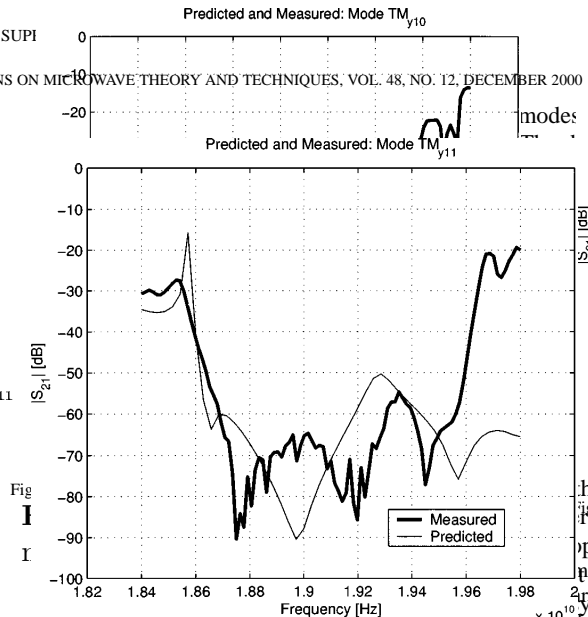


Fig. 11

Fig. 14. $|S_{21}|$ -mode TM_{y11} —measured.

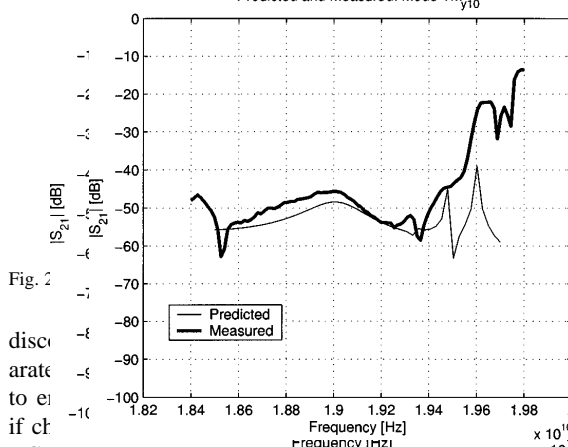


Fig. 2

Fig. 12. $|S_{21}|$ -mode TM_{y10} —measured. $z=15\Omega$, $L=15^\circ$, $z=50\Omega$, $L=15^\circ$, $z=50\Omega$.

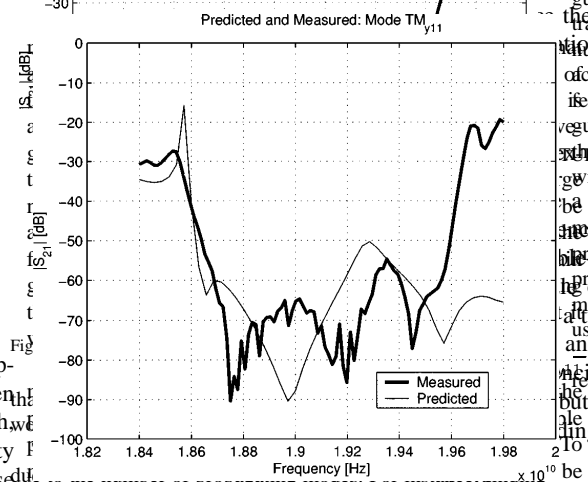


Fig. 14

Fig. 12. $|S_{21}|$ -mode TM_{y10} —measured. $z=15\Omega$, $L=15^\circ$, $z=50\Omega$, $L=15^\circ$, $z=50\Omega$.

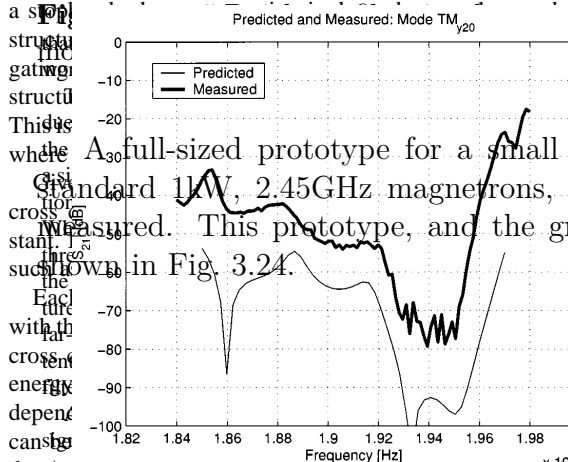


Fig. 12. $|S_{21}|$ -mode TM_{y20} —measured. $z=15\Omega$, $L=15^\circ$, $z=50\Omega$, $L=15^\circ$, $z=50\Omega$.

Fig. 12. $|S_{21}|$ -mode TM_{y20} —measured. $z=15\Omega$, $L=15^\circ$, $z=50\Omega$, $L=15^\circ$, $z=50\Omega$.

Fig. 12. $|S_{21}|$ -mode TM_{y20} —measured. $z=15\Omega$, $L=15^\circ$, $z=50\Omega$, $L=15^\circ$, $z=50\Omega$.

Fig. 14. $|S_{21}|$ -mode TM_{y11} —measured.

-Filters-

5-mode bandstop filter



Figure 5.27 Photograph of the choke and its creators.
Figure 3.24: Dielectric heating oven (from [45])

This work, even though it focused on a niche application, represented the first practical solution to the problem of multi-mode waveguide bandstop filters. It also presented the first tested solution for microwave heating applications requiring conveyor belts. The design approach using functional blocks was used in the group for a number of designs, and was the only solution available until the built-in optimisation capabilities of commercial software became so advanced as to render this work of mostly historical significance. The microwave heating system which was developed also served for many years as test bed for materials research.

3.4 Waffle-iron filters

An important part of high-power transmitter systems is the output filtering, which ensures that no signal harmonics are radiated. In waveguide systems, the standard solution for this filtering function has for almost seventy years been the so-called *waffle-iron* filter. In waveguide, due to the existence of higher order modes which have different field distributions and propagation constants at higher frequencies, filters with wide stopbands are difficult to design. Harmonic filters typically require stopbands of up to 1:6, and therefore need to provide an attenuation for up to 10 or 20 higher order modes in the upper stopband. The waffle-iron filter is a periodic structure with a periodicity of much less than a wavelength. From Floquet's work, it is known that such a structure exhibits periodic stopbands (or band-gaps). A classical waffle-iron filter is shown in Fig. 3.25, where the periodic structure is terminated at both ends with stepped transformers which reduce the waveguide height so as to

suppress all modes with variation in the vertical direction.

CHAPTER 3 – NON-UNIFORM AND OBLIQUE WAFFLE-IRON FILTERS

27

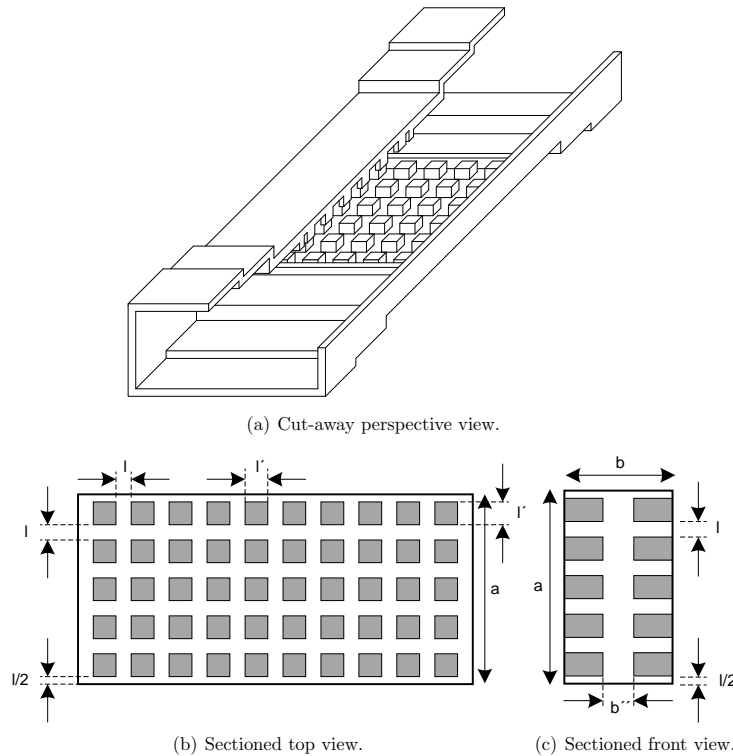


Figure 3.1: Classical waffle-iron filter (from [52])

CAD solutions have been developed in recent years [45, 46, 47]. The waffle iron structure is modeled by a series of general scattering problems, or solved utilising hybrid mode matching (HMM) / finite element method (FEM), which allows transverse grooves to be

In addition to the wide stopband requirement, waffle iron filters typically have to be able to handle very high power levels as they are often used on Radar transmitters. The design of these filters stretches back to the early 1940's, to a method by Marcuvitz which relies on the basic model of a corrugated waveguide. This method is essentially only concerned with the filter passband, relying on rule-of-thumb dimensions for the lowest stopband cut-off, and the periodicity for the stopband width. No exact synthesis technique has ever been developed for these filters and, even the most recent work simply makes use of very intensive multi-parameter full-wave optimisation.

In 2010, due to a requirement from a local Radar company, my PhD student Dr Tinus Stander and myself started work on improved waffle-iron filter design [52]. In its standard form, the waffle-iron filter has a uniform spacing in both longitudinal and transverse dimensions, as the design approach by Marcuvitz is based on image parameter design, which essentially is the cascade of similar unit cells. Dr Stander proposed a variety of design approaches which allowed for non-uniform patterns, as well as uniform and non-uniform oblique patterns, as shown in Fig. 3.26 and Fig. 3.27. For the non-uniform rectangular and both

oblique cases, the Marcuvitz model was adapted, and a circuit model was developed to enable the use of non-identical unit cells. In contrast to the state-of-the-art solutions of the time, which consisted of full-wave electromagnetic optimisation, the proposed technique only used circuit-level optimisation, which is several orders of magnitude faster. The proposed technique only used circuit-level optimisation, which is several orders of magnitude faster. The proposed technique only used circuit-level optimisation, which is several orders of magnitude faster.

Table 3.13:

Dimensions of four initial waffle-iron designs with $b'' \approx 2$ mm and $l_t \approx 2 \times a$.				
	Corrugated	Marcuvitz	Non-uniform	Oblique
a	21.58	22.30	22.86	22.31
b	7.96	8.30	7.72	8.72
b_T	4.67	2.42	2.97	2.80
b''	1.79	1.92	2	1.79
l or l_t	2.78	2.10	2.34, 2.34, 2.09	1.95, 1.87, 1.87, 1.95

Figure 3.26: Waffle-iron filter with oblique pattern 1 (from [53])

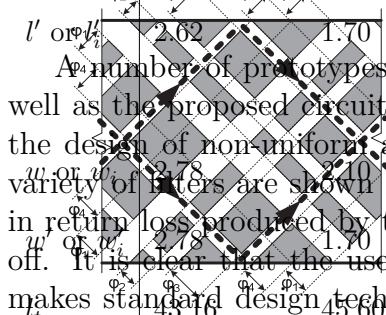
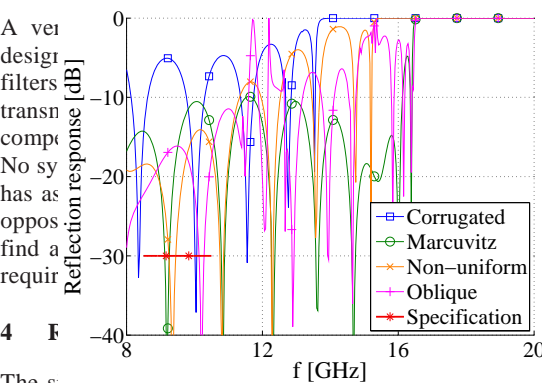


Figure 3.27: Waffle-iron filter with oblique pattern 2 (from [53])

3 DESIGN



The simulated results using the circuit model, a full-wave model directly calculated from the circuit model, and a tuned full-wave model for an oblique waffle-iron filter is shown in Fig. 6. Although some fine tuning is necessary for the full-wave model, it is established much faster than a model optimized in a full-wave solver. In addition, the filter can be shown to be more compact than normal waffle-iron filters. Doubling the length of each filter, as is done in the second set, increases the roll-off and the maximum stop-band attenuation. This aspect has to be evaluated with some scrutiny in any design.

data and oblique design) are increased in length by replicating existing dimensions. In the

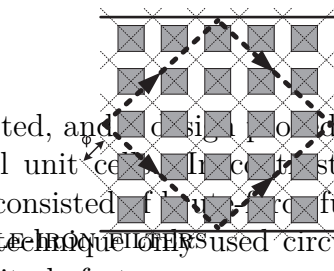


Figure 3.29: TEM phase path perturbation by uniform boss pattern with oblique angle of incidence.

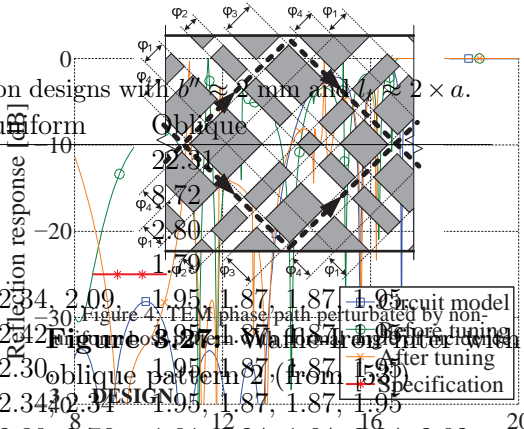


Figure 3.30: Waffle-iron filter with oblique pattern 3 (from [53])

design of these filters. As they are essentially TEM filters, the Marcuvitz model for shorted stub-loaded resonators is directly applicable. The circuit model for compensation of the simulated results using the circuit model, a full-wave model directly calculated from the circuit model, and a tuned full-wave model for an oblique waffle-iron filter is shown in Fig. 6. Although some fine tuning is necessary for the full-wave model, it is established much faster than a model optimized in a full-wave solver. In addition, the filter can be shown to be more compact than normal waffle-iron filters. Doubling the length of each filter, as is done in the second set, increases the roll-off and the maximum stop-band attenuation. This aspect has to be evaluated with some scrutiny in any design.

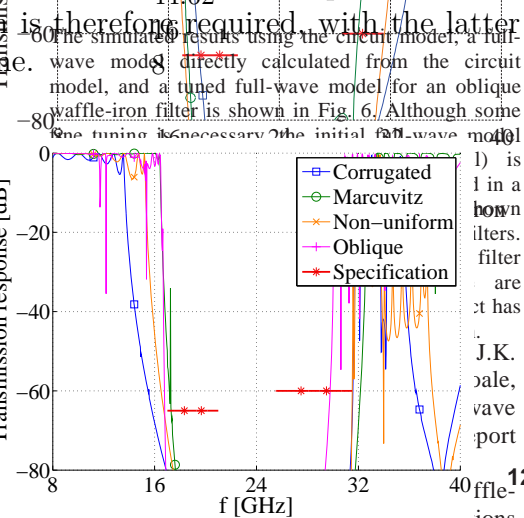


Figure 3.31: Waffle-iron filter with oblique pattern 4 (from [53])

non-linear (correspondence), IEEE Transactions on Microwave Theory and Techniques, vol. 11, no. 6, pp. 555 – 557, November 1963.

[3] G. L. Matthaei, L. Young, and E. M. T. Jones, "Direct EM based optimization of advanced waffle-iron and rectangular combline filters," in IEEE MTT-S International Microwave Symposium Digest, 2002.

(Cohn's corrugated data, Marcuvitz

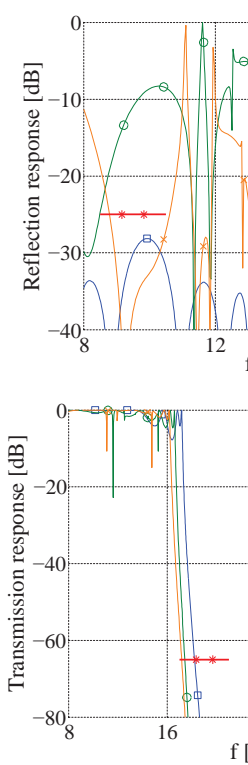


Figure 6: Simulated responses of the waffle-iron filters.

References

- [1] S.B. Cohn, E. M.T. Shimizu, B.M. Schi, "Research on design filters," Stanford Research – SRI Project 1331, June 1963.
- [2] L. Young, "Postscript on Microwave Theory," no. 6, pp. 555 – 557, November 1963.
- [3] G. L. Matthaei, L. Young, "Microwave Filters, Networks, and Coupling Structures," McGraw-Hill Book Co, 1964.
- [4] F. Arndt and J. Brandt, "Direct EM based optimization of advanced waffle-iron and rectangular combline filters," in IEEE MTT-S International Microwave Symposium Digest, 2002.

CHAPTER 3. MICROWAVE FILTERS

Using the proposed technique, a prototype iron filter was designed and tested, with the stopband attenuation shown in Fig. 3.29 and low return loss in the X-band, and good atte

CHAPTER 3. NON-UNIFORM AND ORAGONAL WAFFLE-IRON FILTERS

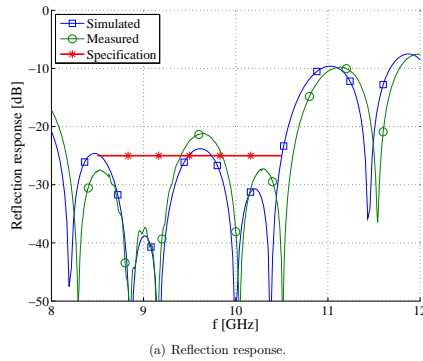


Figure 3.29: Waffle-Iron filter measured results S11 (from [52])

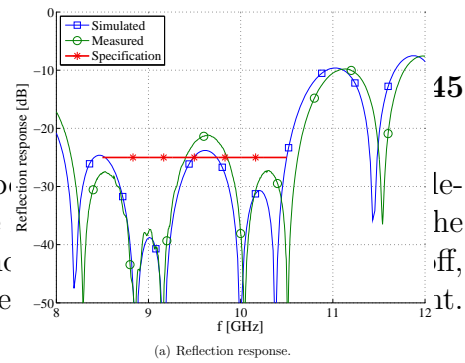


Figure 3.30: Waffle-Iron filter measured results S21 (from [52])

Waffle-iron filters are traditionally all-metal filters, and especially for non-uniform patterns, the manufacturing is quite expensive. Recently, my PhD student Mrs Susan Maas and myself proposed the manufacturing of these filters in the medium of multi-layered circuit boards, using the so-called *Surface Integrated Waveguide (SIW)* structure as basis. Using substrate instead of air reduces the power handling capability of the filters substantially, but yields significant reductions in size, weight, and cost. Especially the size and weight are of enormous importance in the very fast developing area of cube-sats, i.e. satellites not measuring larger than 10x10x10cm.

Manufacturing waffle-iron filters in this way poses significant challenges, as the inherent uncertainty in the etching and laminating processes of soft substrates is much higher than what can be achieved in high-quality milling. This causes for instance the posts in the filter to all have slightly different dimensions and spacings, as they are implemented using standard PC-board vias. The complexity of the structure mostly manifests in the multi-layer stackup, an example of which is shown in Fig. 3.33.

Two of these filters have been designed and manufactured - a shorter one covering a limited bandwidth shown in Fig. 3.31, and a longer one which includes multiple sections for improved stopband width, shown in Fig. 3.32.

Fig. 3.34 shows a few typical problems that arise in the manufacturing process, such as vias not perfectly aligned, not with the correct depth, and not making contact with the inner conductors. Despite this, the two filters were manufactured and tested, with the measured transmission results shown in Fig. 3.35 and Fig. 3.36. The good stopband performance, and the difference in stopband width between the two filters, are evident.

Filter B: Long Filter

Figure 3.32: Planar waffle-iron filter 2 (from [54])

Figure 3.33: Planar waffle-iron stackup (from [54])

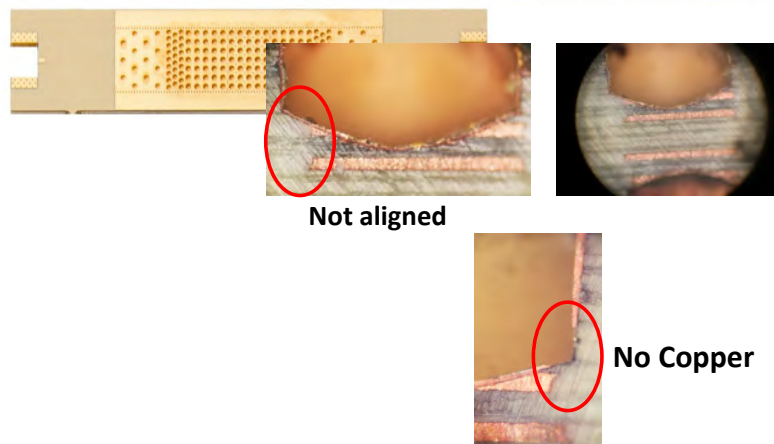


Figure 3.34: Typical planar manufacturing problems(from [54])

At the time of writing, these results are still unpublished and preliminary, but are included to give a complete picture of my work. The possibility to manufacture waffle-iron filters using standard PC-board techniques will be a completely new approach to the manufacturing of these filters, and will allow much more complicate patterns to be implemented. It will also open the door for the application of these very useful filters to small systems in which weight and size are overriding factors.

3.5 Absorbing filters

While by far the most microwave filters perform their filtering action by frequency selective reflection of energy, a small but important group selectively absorb energy in the stopband. The application of these filters is in any sys-

Short Filter #1

Filter A: Short Filter #1

Filter B: Long Filter #2

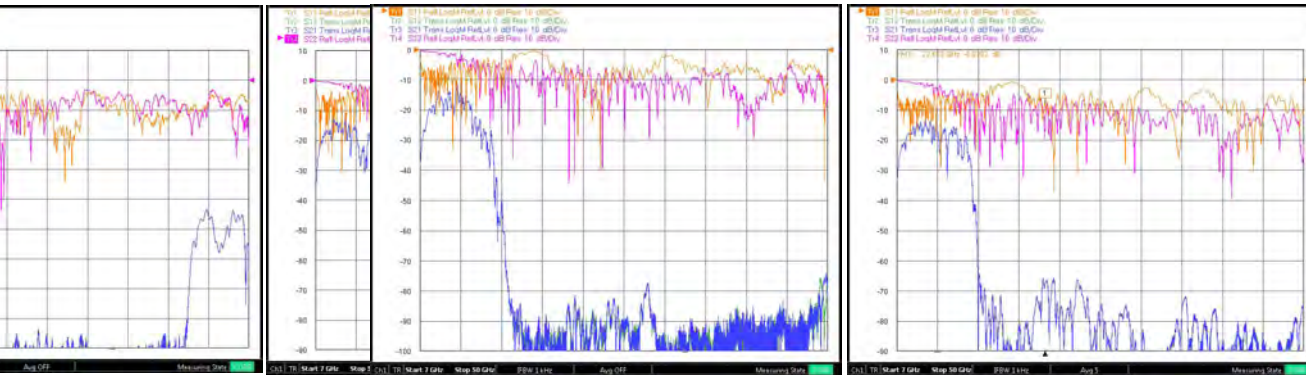


Figure 3.35: Planar waffle-iron filter 1 measurement (from [54])

Figure 3.36: Planar waffle-iron filter 2 measurement (from [54])

tem where reflected energy can become problematic, such as on the output of mixers, or high-power amplifiers. In the first, the reflection of spurious mixing products back into the mixer can lead to increased intermodulation problems, whereas in the latter, the power handling capability of the amplifiers can be exceeded.

For a filter to be absorbing, it has to have significant loss in the stopbands. Classical filter synthesis techniques however rely fundamentally on the network being exactly loss-less, and no design techniques have yet been developed for absorbing filters (note that some techniques, such as pre-distortion, do exist for low-loss filters, but these work on perturbation of the loss-less theory, and are not valid for high-loss filters).

In conjunction with the work on waffle-iron filters, the PhD of Dr Tinus Stander also focused on absorbing filters, especially on combining waffle-iron filters with absorbing structures [52]. A first attempt to implement such a filter was based on design techniques for slotted-waveguide array antennas, with each slot then replaced by an absorbing circuit [55]. The advantages to this are manifold, as slotted waveguide array theory is a mature field of research, with a solid body of design techniques, theory, and application examples.

For the equivalent 'absorbing slot', an etched ring resonator was proposed, as shown in Fig. 3.37. The ring is etched on a thin substrate, interrupted by small surface-mount resistors at two points, and placed transversely in a waveguide at the point where a slot would have been placed in a slotted-waveguide antenna. The length of the ring sets the resonance frequency of the absorber, while the resistors supply the loading.

To illustrate the procedure, a matched load was designed for the X-band, using three etched rings in an X-band waveguide. The measured return loss results are shown in Fig. 3.38, where the three resonant frequencies are clearly visible, as well as the low return loss from 9-12GHz.

While the etched-ring concept is a very useful design approach, the use of surface-mount resistors on a dielectric substrate places a significant limit on the

ABSORBING R BASED ON A GUIDE ANTENNA

University of Stellenbosch, Private
Africa; Corresponding author:

ely loaded etched rings in waveguide is
balanced FMCW reflected power canceller
array antenna. A synthesis technique
is presented and tested. © 2008
Opt Technol Lett 50: 977-981, 2008;
Science (www.interscience.wiley.com).

ed waveguide antenna; reflected
ator; circuit model

power handling capabilities of the filter, as the thermal resistance from the resistor to ambient is very high. To allow for higher power levels, physically larger resistors are required, in some way thermally connected to a heat-dissipating structure. At high frequencies, this leads to space problems. For high-power applications of high frequencies, the only solutions are to extract the power in the stopband with a wideband and reflective filter, such as a waffle-iron filter, and then selectively absorb the reflected signal in absorbers tuned to the harmonic frequencies [56]. This principle is illustrated in Fig. 3.39.

IN WAVEGUIDE

impedance element loaded etched ring
Mias originally proposed a double
the reflection from such a discontinuity
than that obtained from a typical
reduce the structure's reflection co-
placed here by a single ring.
loaded resonator is shown in Figure 2.
led in [5], where it is applied to split
waveguide. The model has been
mentation by replacing the series

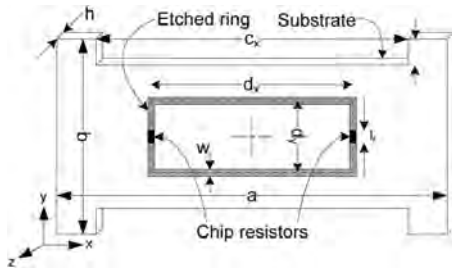


Figure 1 Loaded etched ring resonator with basic dimensions. Not indicated in the diagram is the etched ring thickness t and the chip resistor's value R .

(from [55])

coupling in [5] with shunt coupling, simplifying the model by replacing the mutually coupled inductors with an ideal transformer, adding a shunt capacitor to model the substrate in waveguide [6], and adding resistance to the resonant ring. The shunt admittance of the ring itself (including the transmission lines and shunt capacitor C_p) is expressed as

$$y(\omega) = g(\omega) + jb(\omega)$$

To calculate element values for the equivalent circuit, the ring structure is simulated in a numerical EM solver. In this case, CST Microwave Studio. Using the simulated values of peak conductance and the suggested value of the center frequency f_0 , choosing R_p to be the physical resistance in the structure $2r$ (where r is the radius of each of the two physical resistors), values for C_p and n can easily be derived. Applying this method to the structure shown in Figure 3, the results are compared from the column (a), close correspondence in electrical characteristics between the circuit model and the ring structure is observed, as shown in Figure 3.

Dr. Stander proposed a very novel approach to the problem, namely to reflect the energy in the stopband with a wideband and reflective filter, such as a waffle-iron filter, and then selectively absorb the reflected signal in absorbers tuned to the harmonic frequencies [56]. This principle is illustrated in Fig. 3.39.

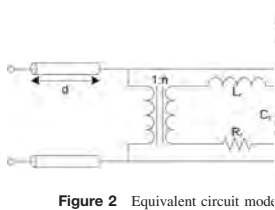


Figure 2 Equivalent circuit model

Figure 3.39: Principle of absorbing filter (from [52])

Solid lines show S_{21} and dotted lines S_{11}

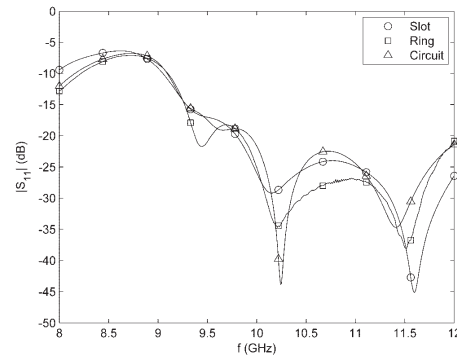


Figure 9 Input reflection of simulated slot array, optimized circuit model, and measured loaded resonator structure.

Figure 3.38: Etched ring filter results (from [55])

to match the value of $\partial b/\partial \omega|_{\omega=f_0}$ accurately between the loaded resonator and the circuit, it is necessary to change the value of the SMD resistor in the EM simulation slightly so that $R_p \neq 2r$.

Following this design procedure, the dimensions of loaded resonators 1, 2, and 3 were obtained as indicated in Table 3. Columns (b), (c), and (d). Not indicated in the table is the optimized waveguide length between resonators 1 and 2 (l_{12}) of 17.34 mm, and between resonators 2 and 3 (l_{23}) of 26.03 mm.

5. MEASUREMENT RESULTS

Through-hole technology was used to construct the filter on a substrate and 0402 size thin film resistors. The measured reflection responses are compared with the simulations in Figure 10.1. A reflection match of -15 dB is achieved across the entire X-band.

6. CONCLUSIONS

This article presents a technique to design an accurate matched load to a longitudinally slotted waveguide antenna array by cas-

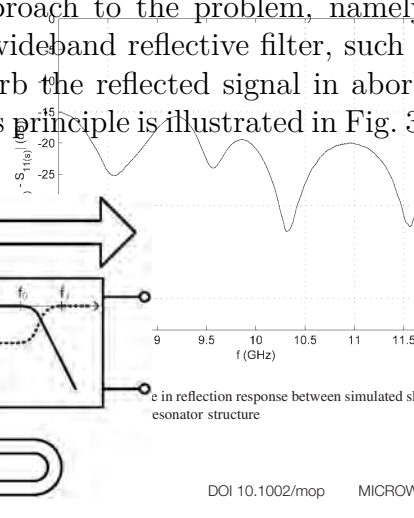


Fig. 2 Transversal broadwall slot pair with

reduce the overall length of the component as much as possible. To avoid excitation of higher order modes, the slots are placed in the H -plane symmetry are preferred.

A topology that satisfies all the above requirements is the transversal broadwall slot [15], which can achieve coupling values of up to -20 dB with a bandwidth of 17% [16]. If a symmetric non-inclined slots is placed as shown in Figure 3, the E -plane and H -plane symmetries are preserved. The cut-off frequency of the auxiliary guide can be reduced below the cut-off frequency of the main guide frequency band. This creates a filtering effect which inhibits energy from entering the guide below this frequency. To absorb the energy in the auxiliary guide, the broadwall of this guide is terminated at both ends with matched

CHAPTER 3. MICROWAVE FILTERS

which couples through these slots, is transferred to two waveguides which are both loaded with absorbing material, thus absorbing the harmonic signal. The

Figure of one slot is shown in Fig. 3.41. The equivalent circuit, and its associated physical dimensions

Table 1. Slot resonant circuit parameters and associated physical dimensions

Slot #	f , GHz	L , fH	C , pF	T
1	22.49	260	193	2.39
2	18.15	487	158	2.13
3	20.35	351	174	2.23
4	21.00	306	188	2.30
5	22.11	286	181	2.35

Figure 3.41: Absorbing slot equivalent circuit model. The circuit model of a single transversal broadwall slot pair

Figure 3.42: Absorbing slot filter (from [52])

Figure 3.43: Absorbing slot filter (from [52])

Figure 3.44: Absorbing slot filter (from [52])

Figure 3.45: Absorbing slot filter (from [52])

Figure 3.46: Absorbing slot filter (from [52])

Figure 3.47: Absorbing slot filter (from [52])

Figure 3.48: Absorbing slot filter (from [52])

Figure 3.49: Absorbing slot filter (from [52])

Figure 3.50: Absorbing slot filter (from [52])

Figure 3.51: Absorbing slot filter (from [52])

Figure 3.52: Absorbing slot filter (from [52])

Figure 3.53: Absorbing slot filter (from [52])

Figure 3.54: Absorbing slot filter (from [52])

Figure 3.55: Absorbing slot filter (from [52])

Figure 3.56: Absorbing slot filter (from [52])

Figure 3.57: Absorbing slot filter (from [52])

Figure 3.58: Absorbing slot filter (from [52])

Figure 3.59: Absorbing slot filter (from [52])

Figure 3.60: Absorbing slot filter (from [52])

Figure 3.61: Absorbing slot filter (from [52])

Figure 3.62: Absorbing slot filter (from [52])

Figure 3.63: Absorbing slot filter (from [52])

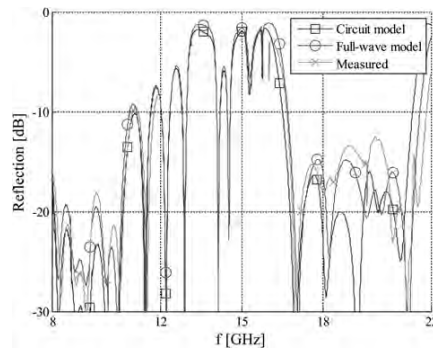


Fig. 10 Measured and simulated reflection response

Figure 3.43: Absorbing filter S11

IET Microw. Antennas Propag., 2014, Vol. 8, Iss. 9, pp. 673–678
doi:10.1049/iet-map.2013.0431

This work presented a very novel approach for the design of absorbing harmonic filters, and produced a filter significantly smaller than the traditional leaky-wave filters. It was immediately adopted by the industry partner at the time, and has been used in successive systems since. As this is a niche field of research, virtually no other solutions have emerged since this work, and it still represents the state-of-the-art in terms of a compromise between size and performance a decade later.

3.6 Tunable and Planar Filters

Planar filters, constructed using standard IC-board processes, have become increasingly popular over the last few decades as the quality and ability of the processes have developed. Especially the last decade has seen a huge surge in the development of multi-layer microwave circuits using substrates such as RT-Duroid. At the same time, increases in affordable computing power, and in the capabilities of commercial full-wave electromagnetic analysis software, have removed most of the modelling restrictions on structures. Designers can now propose filter structures of almost arbitrary complexity, and solve it very accurately on machines as small as office laptops. This has lead to an explosion in filter topologies, resonating structures, coupling structures, and the incorporation of tuning elements into planar structures.

Over the last decade, my own filter work also shifted from mostly waveguide work, to mostly planar work. This was mainly driven by the needs of local industry, who in turn was reacting to a market which changed virtually overnight from almost completely defence orientated to almost completely commercially orientated.

determined by finding the maximum E-field strength E_{\max} , and the maximum E-field strength E_B . From simulation, the maximum E-field occurs at resonance across the slot aperture. At 19 GHz, the simulation indicates $E_{\max} = 36996$ V/m RMS for 1 W RMS incident power, which translates to a peak incident power $P_{\max} = 1.086$ kW if the value of $E_{\max} = 12.1$ kV/cm RMS is chosen to avoid sparking across the aperture of the slot. Away from slot resonance, the slot exhibits maximum power handling capabilities comparable with the waveguide itself, since there is no concentration of E-field in or at

6 Manufacture

The harmonic filter (Fig. 9), using the opposing absorptive elements implemented, make the load compact. The flanges include existing non-measured S-parameters was performed cover the transition was completed, followed by a TRL waveguide

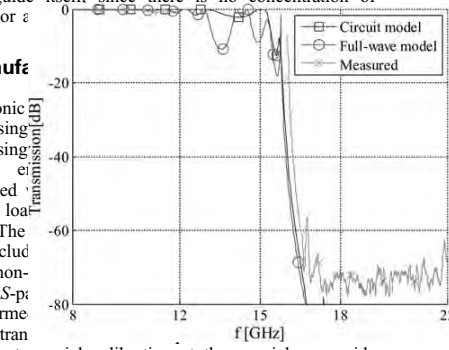


Fig. 11 Measured and simulated transmission response, wideband

Figure 3.44: Absorbing filter S21 (from [52])

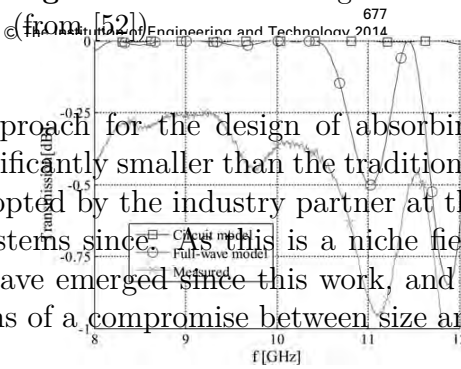


Fig. 12 Measured and simulated transmission response, narrowband

calibration for, respectively, the two bands of interest. For the TRL calibrations, the line standards were implemented using short sections of WR90 waveguide between the transitions. The combined processes have become increasingly popular over the last few decades as the quality and ability of the processes have developed. Especially the last decade has seen a huge surge in the development of multi-layer microwave circuits using substrates such as RT-Duroid. At the same time, increases in affordable computing power, and in the capabilities of commercial full-wave electromagnetic analysis software, have removed most of the modelling restrictions on structures. Designers can now propose filter structures of almost arbitrary complexity, and solve it very accurately on machines as small as office laptops. This has lead to an explosion in filter topologies, resonating structures, coupling structures, and the incorporation of tuning elements into planar structures.

7 Conclusion

This paper presents an approach for the design of compact harmonic pads using rectangular waveguide couplers. Good first-iteration synthesis in a band 17–21 GHz, producing a bandwidth to below –12.5 dB.

8 Acknowledgments

The authors wish to thank Reut for financial support of this project. The work was performed at CST Microwave Studio and AWR Microwave Office.

9 References

- 1 Stander, T.: 'High-power broadband waveguide', University of Stellenbosch, 2014, <https://scholar.sun.ac.za/handle/10019/1/10019>
- 2 Rhodes, J.D.: 'Microwave reflective resonators having progressively smaller dimensions', *IEEE Trans. Microw. Theory Tech.*, 1998, 46, pp. 1315–1318
- 3 Torgow, E.N.: 'Hybrid junction-coupled waveguide filters', *IEEE Trans. Microw. Theory Tech.*, 1959, 7, pp. 1315–1318
- 4 Jachowski, D.R.: 'Passive enhanced notch filters', *IEEE MTT-S Int. Microw. Symp.*, 1998, pp. 1164–1167
- 5 Djordjevic, A.R., Zajic, A.G.: 'Low-loss waveguide filters', *IEEE Trans. Microw. Theory Tech.*, 1998, 46, pp. 1164–1167
- 6 Conning, S.: 'High-power harmonic filters', *IEEE Trans. Microw. Theory Tech.*, 1998, 46, pp. 1164–1167
- 7 Met, V.O.: 'Absorptive filters for waveguide', *IRE Trans. Microw. Theory Tech.*, 1959, 47, pp. 1762–1769
- 8 ME Corporation: 'Waveguide harmonic filters', 2005
- 9 Minakova, L.B., Rud, L.A.: 'Resonant waveguide filters', *Technol. Lett.*, 2003, 36, pp. 122–124
- 10 Minakova, L.B., Rud, L.A.: 'Synthesis of narrow-band waveguide filters', *European Microwave Conf.*, 2002, pp. 122–124
- 11 Tantawi, S.G., Vlieks, A.E.: 'Compassionate stainless steel', *Proc. 1998 IEEE Int. Symp. on Antennas and Propag.*, 1998, vol. 4, pp. 2132–2134
- 12 Young, L.: 'Waveguide 0-dB and 1-dB couplers', *Microw. J.*, 1964, 7, pp. 79–81
- 13 Young, L., Schiffman, B.M.: 'Crisp suppression of spurious frequencies', *IEEE Trans. Microw. Theory Tech.*, 1964, vol. 12, pp. 79–81
- 14 Young, L.: 'The design of branch-line couplers', *IEEE Trans. Microw. Theory Tech.*, 1962, vol. 10, pp. 79–81
- 15 Eshrah, I.A., Kishk, A.A., Yakovlev, V.V.: 'Equivalent circuit model for waveguide couplers', *Prog. Electromagn. Res.*, 2005, 17, pp. 1–11
- 16 Datta, A., Rajeev, A.M., Chakrabarti, S.: 'Broad band coupler between dissimilar waveguides', *Trans. Circuit Theory*, 1995, 43, pp. 1–11
- 17 Oliner, A.A.: 'The impedance properties of rectangular waveguide', *Propag.*, 1957, 5, pp. 4–11
- 18 du Toit, L.J.: 'Advances in the design of waveguide filters', *IEEE APS Int. Symp.*, 1990, vol. 1, pp. 1–11

3.6.1 Triple-mode filters

One of the areas in filter design which received significant international attention, was that of multi-frequency resonators. As a general goal, the emphasis on planar resonators has been on miniaturisation, and the possibility to achieve multiple resonances using a resonator with roughly the same footprint as a singly resonant circuit, was very attractive.

In cooperation with Prof Branka Jokanovic from Belgrade, and with a colleague Dr Riana Geschke, our first efforts in this direction was a triple-mode etched split-ring resonator [57] and [58]. This consisted of three very tightly coupled, concentric, split-ring resonators such as shown in Fig. 3.45. Having the three resonators so tightly coupled, reduces the total footprint by a huge margin, but makes the design quite complicated, as is quite clear from the complicated circuit model shown in Fig. 3.46. This especially becomes a problem when the resonator is to be used in a larger filter structure.

GESCHKE *et al.*: FILTER PARAMETER EXTRACTION FOR TRIPLE-BAND COMPOSITE SRRs AND FILTERS

1501

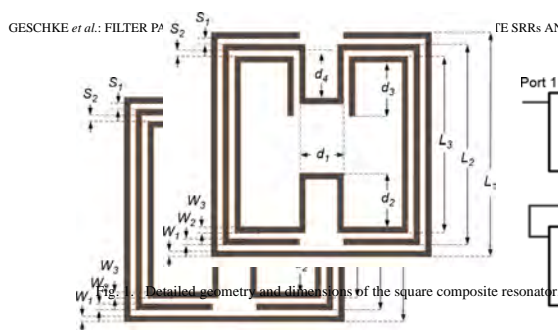


Fig. 1. Detailed geometry and dimer

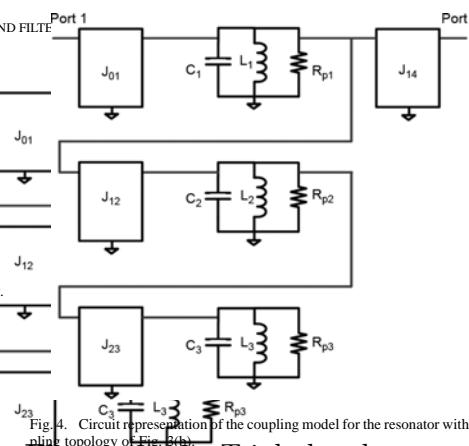


Fig. 4. Circuit representation of the coupling model for the resonator with coupling topology of Fig. 3(b).

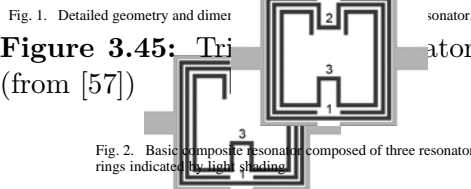
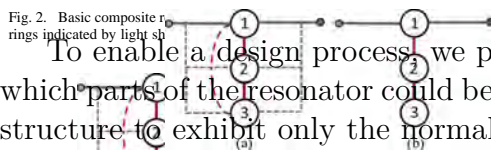


Fig. 2. Basic composite rings indicated by light shades.



resonator system. From these two, t

[illegible]

The characteristic admittance of the frequency independent filter with three passbands, consisting of two coupled triple-mode resonators, was used in the design of a sixth order self-resonator frequencies to meet filter specifications.

B. Circuit Model for a Single Composite Resonator

A coupling mechanism within the composite resonator can be developed by coupling the input feeds for the triune and output feeds, as shown in Fig. 2, and using the S -parameters over the whole bandwidth of interests. 2 and 3 are rejection resonators that position

Two coupling models for the case of Fig. 2 are presented in Fig. 3. Resonator 1 and coupling resonator are both feedings. Resonance 1 and 2 are coupled transmission resonances. The transmission resonances in the filter resonators may be modeled by a single lumped-element model, as presented in Fig. 4. While a tightly coupled combination of two (or multiple) opening half-wavelength resonators may be modeled by a single *LC* resonant tank circuit [13], [14], it only predicts a single resonant

Reconfigurable Multi-State Composite

Split-Ring Resonators

Instead of tuning is an excellent option, and if designed correctly, can yield a set of transfer functions which also satisfy multi-band requirements.

mic, Branka Jokanovic, Member, IEEE, and Petrie Meyer, Member, IEEE

versions of the reconfigurable com-
posers (C3SRRs). Reconfigurability is
tuning technique that enables ob-
single-band composite resonators
r. Five different configurations are
y: one triple-band, two dual-band
The second topology provides seven
triple-band, three dual-band and
IN diodes are used as switching
the vertical branches of split-ring
ertion loss does not increase. Mea-
compared and excellent agreement

lit-ring resonator, de-tuning, multi-
diode, resonant frequency.

RODUCTION

ems require the design of multi-
can be adapted to multiple bands at
bands adjusting in real time. In
pact devices, reconfigurable and
are of great importance and a lot
design nowadays.

o design tunable filters with con-
ch tunable single-band filter with
the central passband frequency
y range (from 1.7 to 2.7GHz), is
n loss is rather high, between 3.9
s a single-band filter [2] with vari-
central passband frequency from
transmission zeroes. On the other
filters with discrete adjustment of
N diodes, as shown in [3] (single-
configurations, three of them are
are wideband configurations). All
in microstrip technology, due to
imple dc biasing of the diodes.

o topologies of the reconfigurable
c split-ring resonators (SRRs) [4]

6, 2015; revised December 22, 2015;
publication March 16, 2016; date of current
as supported by the Serbian Ministry of
al Development through the projects TR

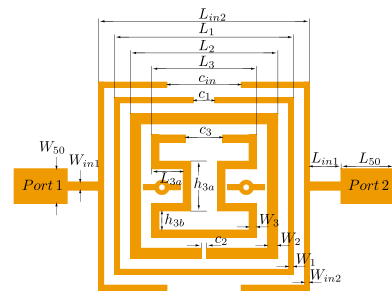
with the Institute of Physics, University of
e-mail: marko.ninic@ipb.ac.rs; brankaj@

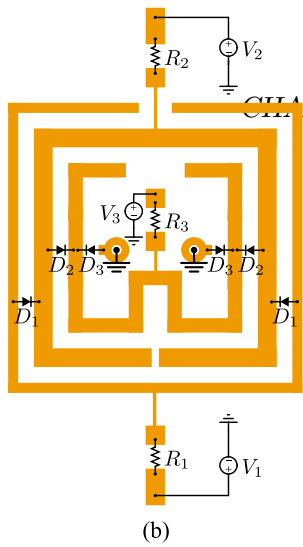
of Electrical and Electronic Engineering,
osch, South Africa (e-mail: pmeyer@sun.

the figures in this letter are available online

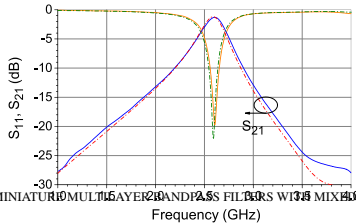
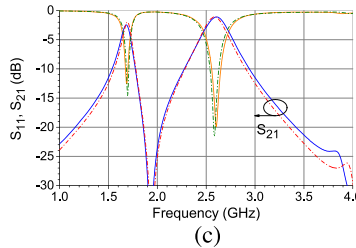
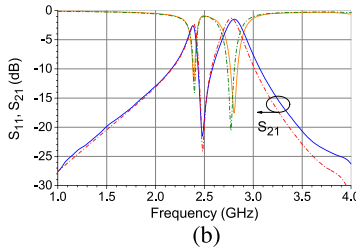
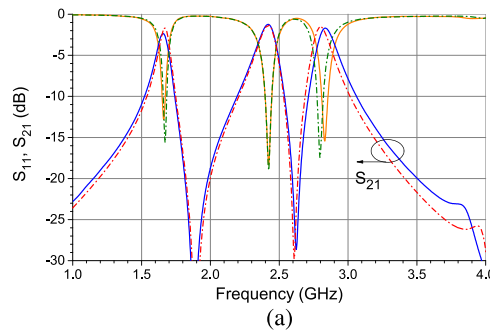
LMWC.2016.2537790

© 2016 IEEE. Personal use is permitted, but republication/redistribution requires IEEE permission.
http://www.ieee.org/publications_standards/publications/rights/index.html for more information.





CHAPTER 3. MICROWAVE FILTERS
Fig. 3.1: Microwave composite lumping resonators: (a) five-state topology, (b) seven-state topology. Overall dimensions are $0.37 \lambda_g \times 0.35 \lambda_g$ at 2.4 GHz.



QIAN et al.: DESIGN OF MINIATURIZED MULTILAYERED PASS FILTERS WITH STRONG COUPLINGS 4073

TABLE 3.5: COUPLING MATRIX T_k FOR THE FIVE-STATE TOPOLOGY

	0 (S)	1	2	3	4	5	6 (L)
0 (S)	m_{00}	0	0	0	0	0	m_{06}
1	-	m_{11}	m_{12}	0	0	m_{15}	m_{16}
2	-	-	m_{22}	m_{23}	m_{24}	m_{25}	0
3	-	-	-	m_{33}	m_{34}	0	0
4	-	-	-	-	m_{44}	m_{45}	0
5	-	-	-	-	-	m_{55}	m_{56}
6 (L)	-	-	-	-	-	-	m_{66}

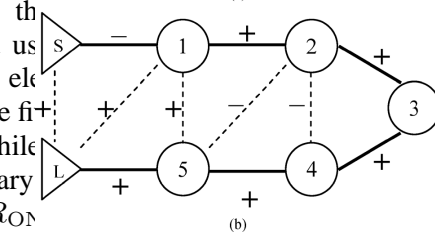


Fig. 3.3: New coupling diagram after applying the similarity transformation. (a) All diodes D_1, D_2, D_3 are ON. (b) Diodes D_1, D_2 are ON, D_3 is OFF. (c) Diodes D_1, D_3 are ON, D_2 is OFF. (d) Diodes D_2, D_3 are ON, D_1 is OFF. (e) All diodes D_1, D_2, D_3 are OFF.

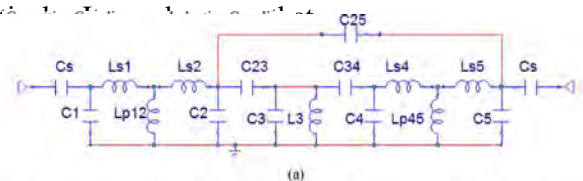


Figure 3.55: Mixed coupling circuit

	C1	C2	C3	C4	C5	C23	C24	C25
Calculated	20.721pF	22.717pF	19.795pF	22.942pF	19.567pF	3.148pF	4.077pF	10.989pF
After optimization	19.61pF	22.29pF	20.96pF	22.30pF	18.67pF	3.104pF	4.016pF	9.937pF
	Ls1	Ls2	Ls3	Ls4	Ls5	Lp12	Lp45	C25
Calculated	12.833nH	12.833nH	15nH	12.893nH	12.893nH	2.608nH	2.518nH	1.154pF
After optimization	13.061nH	13.061pH	15nH	13.09nH	13.09nH	2.494nH	2.42nH	1.076pF

Due to the vertical integration, the footprint of the filters is exceedingly small at these frequency ranges, while still giving excellent results.

Due to the vertical integration, the footprint of the filters is exceedingly small at these frequency ranges, while still giving excellent results.

Due to the vertical integration, the footprint of the filters is exceedingly small at these frequency ranges, while still giving excellent results.

Due to the vertical integration, the footprint of the filters is exceedingly small at these frequency ranges, while still giving excellent results.

Due to the vertical integration, the footprint of the filters is exceedingly small at these frequency ranges, while still giving excellent results.

Due to the vertical integration, the footprint of the filters is exceedingly small at these frequency ranges, while still giving excellent results.

Due to the vertical integration, the footprint of the filters is exceedingly small at these frequency ranges, while still giving excellent results.

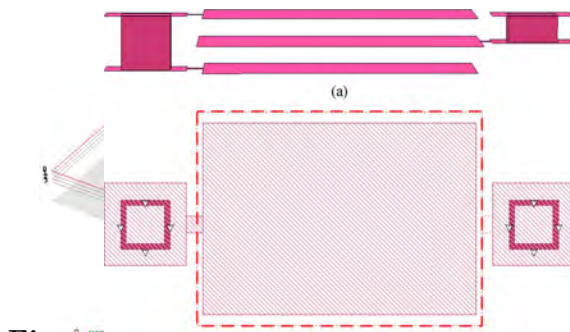
Due to the vertical integration, the footprint of the filters is exceedingly small at these frequency ranges, while still giving excellent results.

Due to the vertical integration, the footprint of the filters is exceedingly small at these frequency ranges, while still giving excellent results.

Due to the vertical integration, the footprint of the filters is exceedingly small at these frequency ranges, while still giving excellent results.

CHAPTE

Fig. 12. (a) 3-D structure of the proposed filter and (b) simulated response.
QIAN *et al.*: DESIGN OF MINIATURE MULTILAYER BANDPASS FILTERS WITH MIXED COUPLINGS



Figure

layout (from [60]) (a) Modified three-layer capacitor and (b) its planar structure (dashed lines are for the middle layer).

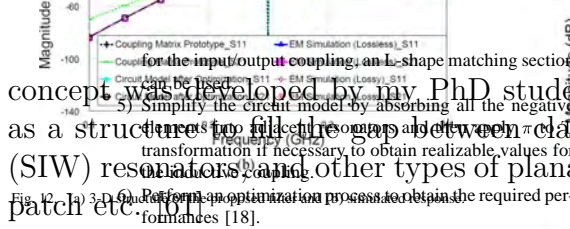


Fig. 13. (a) Modified three-layer capacitor and (b) its planar structure (dashed lines are for the middle layer).

SIW has become very popular over the last decade, as it is a very cost efficient way of constructing dielectric filled waveguides. In SIW, the vertical 'walls' of the waveguide is implemented using closely spaced vias, running between the upper and lower ground planes of a double-sided microwave substrate. SIW resonators have higher Q-factors than other planar resonators, but due to the reduced height of the waveguide, and the introduction of a dielectric, typically an order of magnitude lower Q-values than standard metal waveguide. They are of course significantly smaller, as the height is set by the dielectric thickness, and the transverse dimensions by the permittivity of the dielectric.

Fig. 13. (a) Modified three-layer capacitor and (b) its planar structure (dashed lines are for the middle layer).

As with a normal waveguide, SIW suffers from the problem of spurious resonances due to the propagation of higher order modes. In standard waveguide, this problem is solved by the use of ridged waveguide, which increases the spacing between the cut-off frequencies of the first two modes by a factor of up to five or six. The pedestal resonator proposed in [62] can be viewed as a doubly loaded ridge waveguide resonator as implemented in SIW, and retains to a certain extent the good modal separation of ridged waveguide. It can also be viewed as a loaded SIW resonator, with full control over the extent of loading.

As in all waveguide, higher loading incurs smaller size and lower Q-values, but in the pedestal resonator, this compromise between Q-value, size and spurious resonance separation, can be chosen by the designer.

The pedestal resonator is constructed by a patch situated between the two ground planes of an SIW resonator, connected to the one ground plane through a via, or a set of vias. Two basic shapes are shown in Fig. 3.58.

The main characteristics of the pedestal resonator are shown in Fig. 3.59(a), which shows the resonance frequency of the second resonance as a function of the first resonance, for a set of typical resonators, and Fig. 3.59(b), which

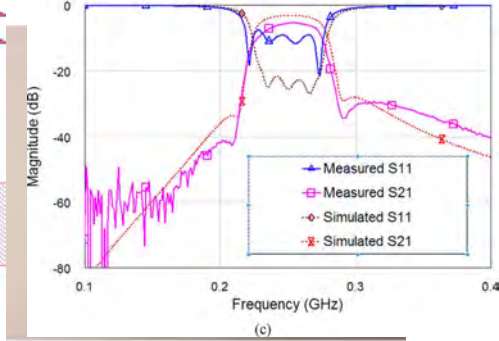


Figure 3.57: Mixed coupling filter (a) photograph of the fabricated filter with two transmission zeros, (b) its measured wideband response and (c) narrowband response.

IV. FABRICATION AND MEASUREMENT

The above filter example is fabricated using the multilayer LCP fabrication process from [12]. From Fig. 11(b), it can be seen that the differences between the values before and after optimization are very small. This also suggests that the fabrication errors should be well controlled to ensure the fabricated samples have the designed performances. For this reason, all the multilayer capacitors appeared in the design are implemented in a way as shown in Fig. 13. For a three-layer capacitor, the middle layer patch is designed to be slightly larger than the first and second layers.

Fig. 14. (a) Photograph of the fabricated filter with two transmission zeros. (b) Its measured wideband response and (c) narrowband response.

IV. FABRICATION AND MEASUREMENT

The above filter example is fabricated using the multilayer LCP fabrication process from [12]. From Fig. 11(b), it can be seen that the differences between the values before and after optimization are very small. This also suggests that the fabrication errors should be well controlled to ensure the fabricated samples have the designed performances. For this reason, all the multilayer capacitors appeared in the design are implemented in a way as shown in Fig. 13. For a three-layer capacitor, the middle layer patch is designed to be slightly larger than the first and second layers.

As in all waveguide, higher loading incurs smaller size and lower Q-values, but in the pedestal resonator, this compromise between Q-value, size and spurious resonance separation, can be chosen by the designer.

The pedestal resonator is constructed by a patch situated between the two ground planes of an SIW resonator, connected to the one ground plane through a via, or a set of vias. Two basic shapes are shown in Fig. 3.58.

The main characteristics of the pedestal resonator are shown in Fig. 3.59(a), which shows the resonance frequency of the second resonance as a function of the first resonance, for a set of typical resonators, and Fig. 3.59(b), which

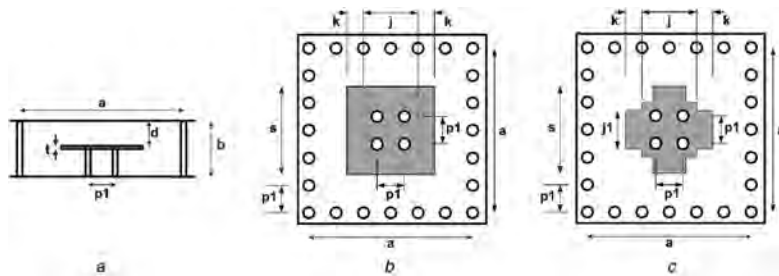


Fig. 3 Side view and top view of SIW pedestal resonator

Q6 (a) Side view of rectangular SIW pedestal resonator. (b) Top view of rectangular SIW pedestal resonator. (c) Top view of cross-shaped SIW pedestal resonator

Figure 3.58: Pedestal resonator structure (from [62])

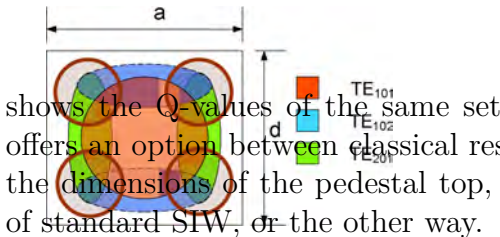
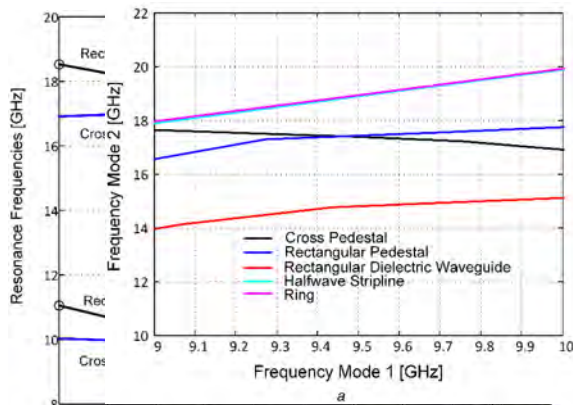


Fig. 4 Areas of high electric field intensity for the first three resonant modes of a square pedestal resonator



Q7 **Fig. 6** Two frequencies of mode 1 and mode 2 are plotted against each other (a) Resonant frequency of mode 1 versus frequency. (b) Q-factor of mode 1 versus frequency

Fig. 5 Resonant frequencies of modes 1 and 2 versus k roughness is included. Fig. 6b shows the results of the set of analyses.

approach, it does not offer much insight into the advantages of the structure and the design is then optimisation only. In comparison, the development of a pedestal resonator with a rectangular top, a much more direct correlation with the resonant frequencies of the different resonators, but also of the standard SIW resonators, is shown. That the difference between the line-based resonators and the waveguide-based resonators is not as large as it might seem, was also proposed in [60]. This structure is then used as a basis for the proposed SIW resonator.

Q1 It is found that the resonant frequencies of the pedestal resonator are very close to those of the standard SIW resonators. Two additional modes are observed, which are not present in the standard SIW resonators. These modes are identified as the modes of the pedestal resonator. The resonant frequencies of the pedestal resonator are shown in Figure 3.59. The resonant frequencies of the pedestal resonator are shown in Figure 3.59. The resonant frequencies of the pedestal resonator are shown in Figure 3.59.

Q2 It is clear that the pedestal resonators achieve a good compromise between size, Q-factor, and the ratio of the first two resonant frequencies. Figure 4 shows a top view of a square resonator, with the areas of high electric field intensity for the first three resonant modes calculated and shown in Figure 4. The resonant frequencies of the pedestal resonator are shown in Figure 3.59.

4. A band filter using proposed resonator. A standard inline coupled-resonator design is obtained from tables for a 0.01 dB ripple Chebyshev prototype, and the bandwidth scaled to yield the following k - and q -values: $q_1 = 0.0217$, $q_2 = 0.0217$, and $k = 0.0217$. The inline configuration is implemented in a square layout of four resonators with no cross-couplings. The second filter, filter B, uses the same outer dimensions, but increased resonator loading through the use of the square pedestal, to implement a filter with a centre frequency of 7 GHz and a 20 dB equi-ripple return loss bandwidth of 200 MHz (or 2.9%). This filter also utilises a square layout of resonators, but with one negative cross-coupling between resonators 1 and 4, for increased stopband roll-off. Again following classical coupled-resonator design for this filter, but allowing for one negative cross-coupling, and with an additional specification of a high-end attenuation of better than 48

changing the structure in those areas will affect all the modes in the same way, i.e. reduce the total stored electric field and therefore the resonance frequency. If however the corner sections are removed, the fundamental mode will suffer a bigger disturbance than the higher-order modes, increasing the Q-factor. The resulting shape is a cross-shaped pedestal, the SIW implementation of which is shown in Fig. 3c. Following, can be moved towards the resonator is compared in terms of the resonant frequencies and the unloaded quality factors attainable by each cavity, using the eigenmode solver of CST Microwave Studio. Note that in both cases, the structure is allowed to become rectangular. The parameter k influences the length of the top of each resonator, while s denotes

for mode 1 in size. For both with a height of less of 0.017 frequency). The $b = 1$ mm, $t = 5$ mm, and $j = 1$ below). Note can the cross-t frequencies. both resonators. It is clear that change in the reduces quite here the two s performance

into perspective, the ratios of the first two resonant frequencies for

a number of standard resonators are also shown in the figure, resonator and a rectangular dielectric-filled waveguide, (equivalent to standard SIW) and Q -values are obtained as $Q_1 = Q_2 = 35.5$, $k_{12} = 0.34$, $k_{23} = 0.16$, and $k_{34} = 0.16$. As expected, the standard dielectric-filled waveguide shows the same response separation in terms of the accurate coupling of the two modes, while both the half-wave stripline and ring resonators show a ratio of the two modes of 1.2. The two filters were chosen to illustrate the flexibility offered by this topology separation in terms of the accurate coupling of the two modes, while both the half-wave stripline and ring resonators show a ratio of the two modes of 1.2. The two filters were chosen to illustrate the flexibility offered by this topology separation in terms of the accurate coupling of the two modes, while both the half-wave stripline and ring resonators show a ratio of the two modes of 1.2.

Q-factor Mode 1 Frequency Mode 1 [GHz]

Frequency Mode 1 [GHz]

Frequency Mode 1 [GHz]

Frequency Mode 1 [GHz]

Frequency Mode 1 [GHz]

Frequency Mode 1 [GHz]

Frequency Mode 1 [GHz]

Frequency Mode 1 [GHz]

Frequency Mode 1 [GHz]

Frequency Mode 1 [GHz]

Frequency Mode 1 [GHz]

Frequency Mode 1 [GHz]

Frequency Mode 1 [GHz]

Frequency Mode 1 [GHz]

Frequency Mode 1 [GHz]

Frequency Mode 1 [GHz]

Frequency Mode 1 [GHz]

Frequency Mode 1 [GHz]

Frequency Mode 1 [GHz]

Frequency Mode 1 [GHz]

Frequency Mode 1 [GHz]

Frequency Mode 1 [GHz]

Frequency Mode 1 [GHz]

Frequency Mode 1 [GHz]

Frequency Mode 1 [GHz]

Frequency Mode 1 [GHz]

Frequency Mode 1 [GHz]

Frequency Mode 1 [GHz]

Frequency Mode 1 [GHz]

Frequency Mode 1 [GHz]

Frequency Mode 1 [GHz]

Frequency Mode 1 [GHz]

Frequency Mode 1 [GHz]

Frequency Mode 1 [GHz]

Frequency Mode 1 [GHz]

Frequency Mode 1 [GHz]

Frequency Mode 1 [GHz]

Frequency Mode 1 [GHz]

Frequency Mode 1 [GHz]

Frequency Mode 1 [GHz]

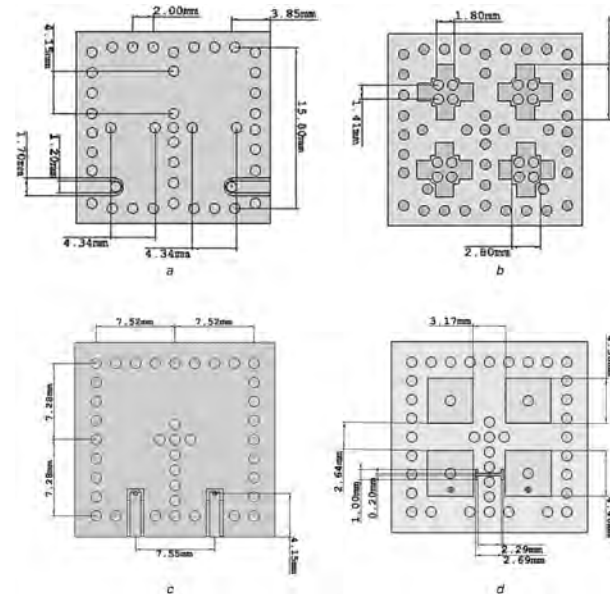


Fig. 7 Two-layer implementation of the final structure of filter A
(a) Filter A top layer, (b) Filter A internal layer, (c) Filter B top layer, (d) Filter B internal layer

Figure 3.60: Pedestal resonator filters (from [62])

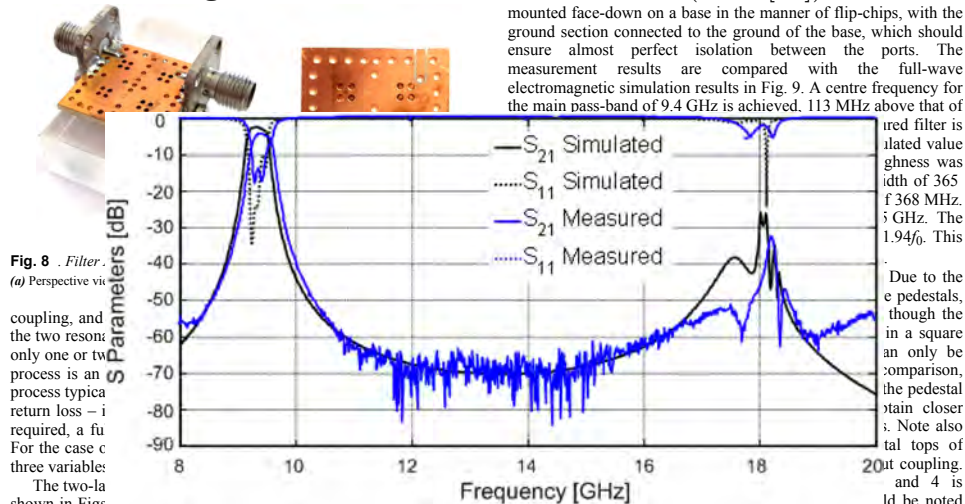


Fig. 8 . Filter A
(a) Perspective view

Fig. 9 Broadband measurement results for filter A

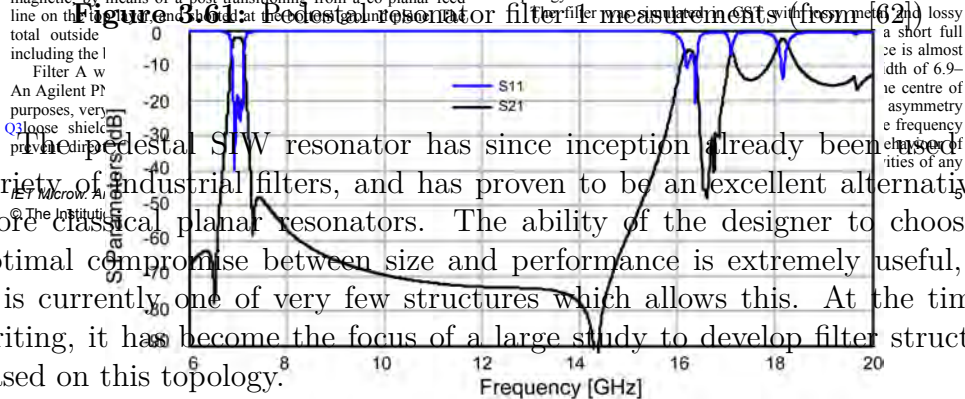


Fig. 10 Broadband simulation results for filter B

technology. A better than 40 dB spurious-free attenuation is predicted from 7.2 to 15.5 GHz, with the main second pass-band centred at 16.24 GHz, or $2.32f_0$.

The results of the two filters can be compared with existing solutions. In [2], full-sized microstrip and coplanar waveguide resonators are loaded with complementary split ring resonators (CSRRs). Two third-order filters, one at $f_0 = 1.8$ GHz and one at $f_0 = 2.4$ GHz, both with 10% relative bandwidth, achieve stopbands of better than 20 dB over, respectively, 5 and 8 GHz. In [20], a so-called ‘butterfly resonator’ is used in a single resonator low-pass filter with a cut-off of 1 GHz. This resonator achieved a very small size of 0.1 of a wavelength, and attenuation of 17 dB from 2.37 to 18 GHz. The author also provided a useful table of other planar resonators and their performance. While the stopbands of these filters are all very wide, they are all non-waveguide solutions, with

mounted face-down on a base in the manner of flip-chips, with the ground section connected to the ground of the base, which should ensure almost perfect isolation between the ports. The measurement results are compared with the full-wave electromagnetic simulation results in Fig. 9. A centre frequency for the main pass-band of 9.4 GHz is achieved, 113 MHz above that of the simulated filter. The measured value of the insertion loss is 3.65 dB, which is 0.1 dB above the simulated value of 3.68 MHz. The measured 3 dB bandwidth is 365 MHz, which is 0.1% above the simulated value of 368 MHz. The measured return loss is 1.94 dB, which is 0.1 dB above the simulated value of 1.94 dB. This is due to the fact that the pedestals, though the in a square, can only be compared, the pedestal return loss is closer to the simulated value. Note also that the total tops of the pedestals are not perfectly aligned, and 4 is noted that the simplicity of such a coupling is a distinct advantage of this topology.

filter and measurement results (from [62])

The pedestal SIW resonator has since inception already been used in a variety of industrial filters, and has proven to be an excellent alternative to more classical planar resonators. The ability of the designer to choose an optimal compromise between size and performance is extremely useful, and it is currently one of very few structures which allows this. At the time of writing, it has become the focus of a large study to develop filter structures based on this topology.

× 20 mm, with $f_0 = 5$ GHz, a 3 dB bandwidth of 320 MHz, insertion loss of 3.9 dB, and an attenuation of better than 40 dB from 5.5 to 6.5 GHz, and a filter with transverse dimensions of 45 × 12 mm, with $f_0 = 5.45$ GHz, a 3 dB bandwidth of 187 MHz, insertion loss of 5.8 dB, and an attenuation of better than 45 dB to up to 9 GHz. It should be clear that the proposed filters offer smaller footprints, similar insertion loss, and a wider stopband.

5 Conclusions

Pedestal SIW resonators are proposed which utilise the mode separation characteristics of ridge surface integrated waveguide, specifically T-ridge SIW guide. Two shapes of the pedestal resonator are compared with standard resonators, and are shown to offer a good compromise between size, Q -factor, and mode

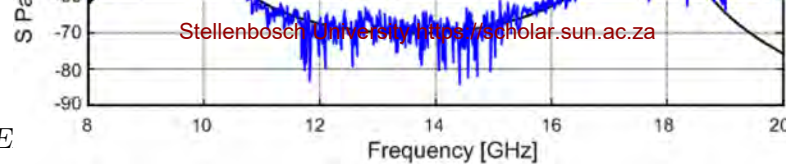


Fig. 9 Broadband measurement results for filter A

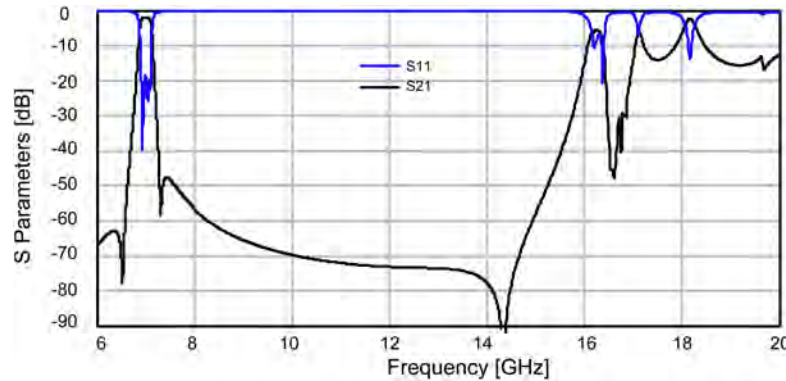


Fig. 10 Broadband simulation results for filter B

Figure 3.62: Pedestal resonator filter 2 measurements (from [62])

technology. A better than 40 dB spurious-free attenuation is predicted from 7.2 to 15.5 GHz, with the main second pass-band centred at 16.24 GHz, and 0.32 GHz.

The results of the two filters can be compared with existing solutions. In [21], full-sized microstrip and coplanar waveguide resonators are loaded with complementary split ring resonators (CSRRs). Two third-order filters, one at $f_0 = 1.8$ GHz and one at $f_0 = 2.4$ GHz, both with a bandwidth of 30 MHz, have been proposed.

Tunable planar filters have become a huge research field in the last few years. This effort is primarily driven by the per-

formance of better than 40 dB spurious-free attenuation is predicted from 7.2 to 15.5 GHz, with the main second pass-band centred at 16.24 GHz, and 0.32 GHz. The results of the two filters can be compared with existing solutions. In [21], full-sized microstrip and coplanar waveguide resonators are loaded with complementary split ring resonators (CSRRs). Two third-order filters, one at $f_0 = 1.8$ GHz and one at $f_0 = 2.4$ GHz, both with a bandwidth of 30 MHz, have been proposed. Tunable planar filters have become a huge research field in the last few years. This effort is primarily driven by the per-

formance of better than 40 dB spurious-free attenuation is predicted from 7.2 to 15.5 GHz, with the main second pass-band centred at 16.24 GHz, and 0.32 GHz. The results of the two filters can be compared with existing solutions. In [21], full-sized microstrip and coplanar waveguide resonators are loaded with complementary split ring resonators (CSRRs). Two third-order filters, one at $f_0 = 1.8$ GHz and one at $f_0 = 2.4$ GHz, both with a bandwidth of 30 MHz, have been proposed. Tunable planar filters have become a huge research field in the last few years. This effort is primarily driven by the per-

performance of better than 40 dB spurious-free attenuation is predicted from 7.2 to 15.5 GHz, with the main second pass-band centred at 16.24 GHz, and 0.32 GHz. The results of the two filters can be compared with existing solutions. In [21], full-sized microstrip and coplanar waveguide resonators are loaded with complementary split ring resonators (CSRRs). Two third-order filters, one at $f_0 = 1.8$ GHz and one at $f_0 = 2.4$ GHz, both with a bandwidth of 30 MHz, have been proposed. Tunable planar filters have become a huge research field in the last few years. This effort is primarily driven by the per-

performance of better than 40 dB spurious-free attenuation is predicted from 7.2 to 15.5 GHz, with the main second pass-band centred at 16.24 GHz, and 0.32 GHz. The results of the two filters can be compared with existing solutions. In [21], full-sized microstrip and coplanar waveguide resonators are loaded with complementary split ring resonators (CSRRs). Two third-order filters, one at $f_0 = 1.8$ GHz and one at $f_0 = 2.4$ GHz, both with a bandwidth of 30 MHz, have been proposed. Tunable planar filters have become a huge research field in the last few years. This effort is primarily driven by the per-

performance of better than 40 dB spurious-free attenuation is predicted from 7.2 to 15.5 GHz, with the main second pass-band centred at 16.24 GHz, and 0.32 GHz. The results of the two filters can be compared with existing solutions. In [21], full-sized microstrip and coplanar waveguide resonators are loaded with complementary split ring resonators (CSRRs). Two third-order filters, one at $f_0 = 1.8$ GHz and one at $f_0 = 2.4$ GHz, both with a bandwidth of 30 MHz, have been proposed. Tunable planar filters have become a huge research field in the last few years. This effort is primarily driven by the per-

5. Conclusions

Pedestal S/W resonators are proposed which utilise the mode separation characteristics of ridge surface integrated waveguide, various frequency bands. Two shapes of the pedestal resonator are compared with standard resonators, and are shown to offer a good compromise between size, Q -factor, and mode separation. Two fourth-order filters are designed, i.e. in PCB multilayered technology and performance verified, by both simulation and measurement. The results show improved performance over published filters employing similar miniaturisation techniques.

6. Acknowledgments

The authors thank Reutech Radar Systems (Pty) Ltd for financial support of this project, and CST GmbH for the use of CST Microwave Studio.

7. References

- [1] Nassar, S., Meyer, P., Van der Walt, P.W.: An S-band combline filter with reduced size and increased pass-band flatness. 14th Conf. on Microwave Techniques (COMITE 2015), Pardubice, 2015.
- [2] Garcia-Palacios, J., Mariani, J., Fallone, E. et al.: Microwave filters with improved stopband based on sub-wavelength resonators. *IEEE Trans. Microw. Theory Tech.* 63, 1104-1113 (2015).
- [3] Djerani, T., Aubert, H., Wu, K.: Ridge substrate integrated waveguide (RSIW) dual-band hybrid ring couplers. *IEEE J. Microv. Mag. Compon. Lett.*, 2012, 22, pp. 70-72.

CS1 Microwave Studio. For tight couplings, such a simulation should show a resonant point in the reflection coefficient at the resonant frequency of the resonator. Figs. 3c and d, respectively, show the simulated reflection coefficient for different pin diameters for the case where the pin is placed between the roof of the enclosure and the resonator, and between the bottom of the enclosure and the resonator. It is clear that for a resonator with line length 7.2 mm and line width 1.2 mm, a pin radius of

port. The figure shows the transmission coefficient from the excitation port to this port, where any transmission indicates energy which leaks out of the enclosure due to the biasing pin. By varying the radius of the dielectric (teflon) cylinder between the pin and the enclosure, and keeping the pin radius constant at 0.25 mm, a set of curves representing leakage can be obtained, as shown in the figure. It is clear that even for fairly large exit holes, the leakage is still small.

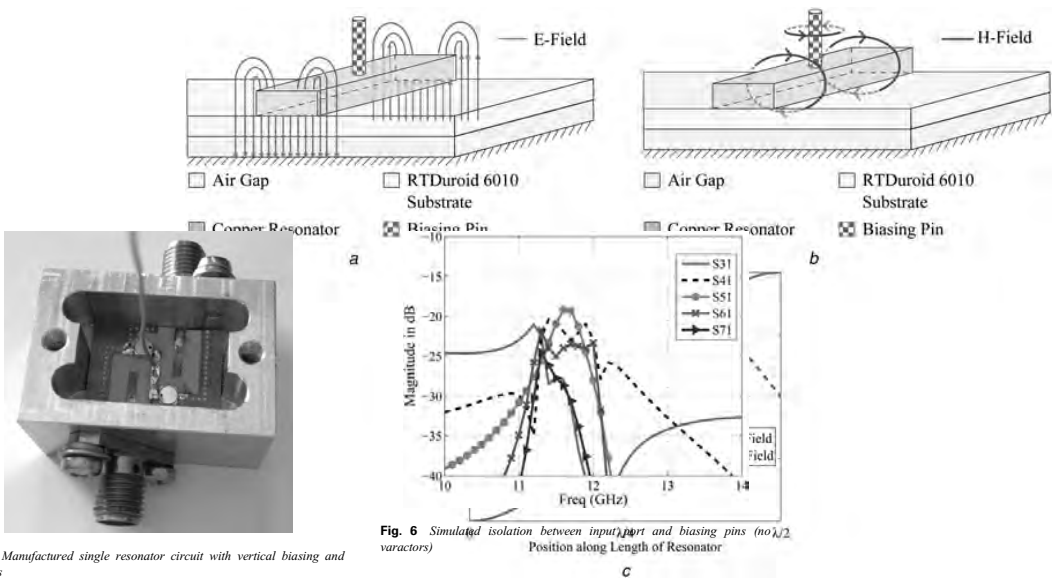


Fig. 4 Manufactured single resonator circuit with vertical biasing and varactors

decoupling circuitry. It should also be noted that when varactor diodes are added symmetrically to both ends of the line, the field symmetry of the magnetic field and the null in the electric field will be maintained at the same position of the line, enabling the use of the proposed structure to equally divide along the length of the line. These characteristics will change as they are both linked to the symmetry of the structure. This independence of frequency due to spatial coupling is a significant advantage of the proposed structure.

Fig. 2 Electric and magnetic fields for an ideal open-circuited half-wave transmission line resonator on suspended substrate

Figure 3.63: Spatially decoupled biasing principle (from [63])

Chebyshev low-pass prototype and methods described in [1]. To achieve these frequencies and for such a narrow bandwidth, stringent requirements must be placed on the tuning elements, especially their series resistance and inductance. In addition, the capacitance range must be of the order of 0.23 pF, thus, since the line resonator prototype, the Skyworks SMV1405-240 varactor is at the tuning component. Owing to the sensitivity of parasitics at high frequencies, accurate measurement varactors are used in the design cycle and line components are used to compensate the parasitic inductance and capacitance. The filter structure with the enclosure is shown in Fig. 5a, with the exploded view of the components shown in Fig. 5b. The resonator has a length of 1.18 mm and a length between 6.9 and 7.2 mm. The measured results for the filter, shown in Fig. 3.64, are very similar to the theoretical results. The insertion loss is 1.75 mm, and between the feed line and resonator is 1.75 mm, and between the feed line and resonator is 1.75 mm, and between the feed line and resonator is 1.75 mm.

Figure 3.64: Tunable staircase filter using spatial decoupling (from [63])

3 Prototype filter

Planar staircase filters have for many years been one of the most popular classical filter topologies. As they can be designed from a coupled resonator perspective, having had a long history, they are eminently suited to the biasing structure proposed here. To illustrate the biasing technique, a fifth-order staircase filter with a 3 dB bandwidth of 500 MHz at a nominal centre frequency of 12 GHz, tunable from 11.75 to 12.25 GHz, is designed using a

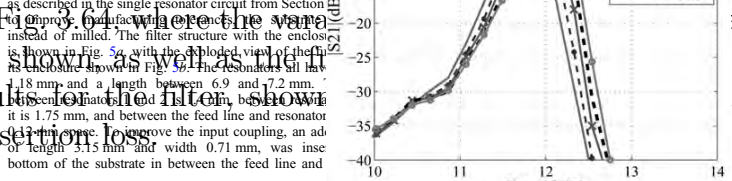


Figure 3.65: Filter measurements

Fig. 5 Tunable filter structure

a Three-dimensional view of designed tunable filter
b Breakdown of tunable filter

IET Microw. Antennas Propag., 2017, Vol. 11, Iss. 1, pp. 10-18
© The Institution of Engineering and Technology 2016

As filters are tuned over a frequency range, the bandwidth is well. For fixed absolute bandwidth systems, this is very important and an important part of tunable filter research. The second phase of control of these filters. The second phase of control of these filters.

Table 4 Comparison with recently published filters

Filter	Tuning frequencies, GHz
[4]	0.766-1.228
[14]	1-1.4
[15]	4.25-4.4 and 6.25-6.4
[16] presented	10.50-10.92 and 11.75-12.25

the filters compared in Table 4, the proposed filter is competitive with recently published filters.

5 Conclusion

A novel biasing structure for planar decoupling achieved through spatially decoupled biasing lines, is presented. The any decoupling circuit elements, by point of zero RF voltage, on a line symmetrically with respect to the resonators, this point is stationary frequency, which is a significant advantage of the proposed structure is illustrated by X-band filter with varactors at each pair controlled by a single DC voltage. The spatially decoupled bias feed. The each resonator enables compensation and tolerances, as well as the ability to specific centre frequency. The biasing structure is a very interesting alternative for spatially constrained decoupling circuitry and minimising

6 Acknowledgments

The authors thank the SKA for funding and W. van Eeden for the manufacturing of the RT Duroid samples, the Skyworks inc. for the varactor samples and AWR for the use of their simulation software.

7 References

- Maththai, G.L., Young, L., Jones, E.M.T.: 'Networks and coupling structures' (Artech House, 2004).
- Peroulis, D., Naglich, E., Sinani, M., et al.: 'Mag. Microw. Wirel. Eng.', 2014, 4, (46), pp. 1-10.
- Ocera, A., Farnelli, P., Mezzanotte, R., et al.: 'filter on silicon substrate'. Proc. 36th European Microwave Conference, 2006, pp. 1124-1130.
- Huang, X., Feng, Q., Zhu, L., et al.: 'A compact varactor-loaded open-loop resonator'. Conf., 2013, pp. 872-874.
- Xiang, Q., Feng, Q., Huang, X., et al.: 'Electrically small filters with constant bandwidth'. IEEE Trans. Antennas Propag., 2015, 63, (6), pp. 2864-2871.
- Sun, J.S., Kaneda, N., Baeyens, Y., et al.: 'Wide tuning bandwidth'. IEEE Trans. Antennas Propag., 2015, 63, (6), pp. 2864-2871.
- Sirci, S., Martinez, J.D., Taroncher, M.: 'tunable SIW resonator for reconfigurable microwave'. Microwave Conf., Manchester, UK, 10-11 September 2015, pp. 946-951.
- Young, M.W., Yong, S., Bernhard, T.: 'A compact antenna with single bias, dual varactor tuning'. IEEE Trans. Antennas Propag., 2015, 63, (6), pp. 946-951.
- Khamis, I., Khamis, B., Arafat, S.: 'waveguide-to-substrate-integrated-waveguide'. Electron. Lett., 2014, 50, (50), pp. 34-35.
- Hoffmann, R.K.: 'Handbook of microwave engineering'. Norwood, MA, 1987, pp. 325-336.

Table 3 Summary of the measured results

f ₀ , GHz	3 dB FBW, %	3 dB RBW, MHz	-15 dB RL FBW, %	-15 dB RL RBW, MHz
11.75	3.58	420	2.04	240
11.84	3.55	420	2.11	250
11.92	4.03	480	2.60	310
11.95	4.01	480	2.59	310
12.15	4.23	510	2.39	290

filters was therefore a proposal for the control of the inter-resonator couplings. For this, my PhD student Dr Satyam Sharma and myself proposed a novel type of tunable inverter, based on a non-resonant-node (NRN) placed between resonators [65], [66].

The principle for this tunable NRN inverter is shown in Fig. 3.66, with the NRN realised by a short piece of line, terminated at both ends by a varactor diode to ground. The resulting equivalent circuit shows that a change in the varactor capacitance will result in change in the inverter value. As the coupling coefficient between resonators are directly controlled by this inverter constant, a tunable coupling is realised in this way.

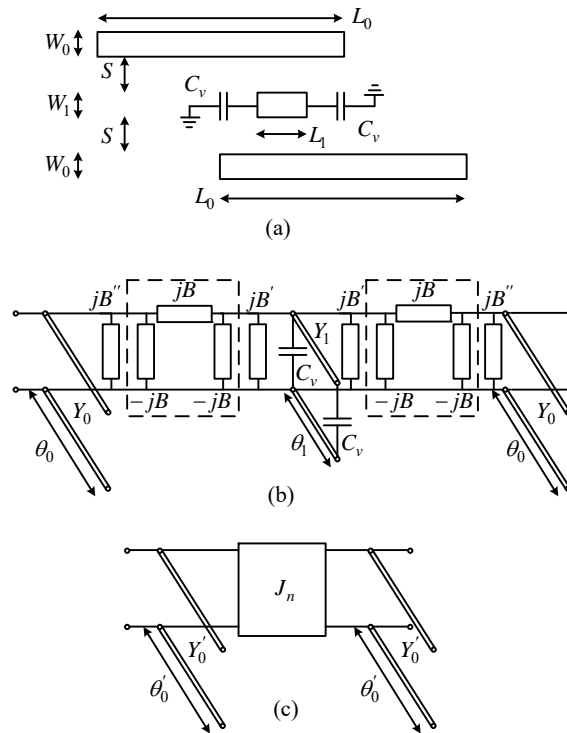


Figure 3.66: Non-resonant node inverter principle (from [65])

Fig. 2: Equivalent NI circuit

Fig.3.67 shows simulation results for the change in coupling coefficient as a function of the varactor capacitance, with varying range of coupling values clearly realizable. Unfortunately such a structure will support a spurious resonance frequency, which will also be dependent on the varactor capacitance. This is shown in Fig. 3.68, and needs to be tightly controlled.

A set of tunable staircase filters, with tunable NRN inverters, and using the TEM COUPLED-LINE INVERTER, was designed and tested, shown in Fig. 3.69. In order to compensate for the change in loaded Q-values

$$k \approx \frac{B^2}{Y_1 Y_0} \frac{\omega_0}{\omega} \quad (9)$$

To simplify the model, the capacitively loaded line is replaced with an equivalent unloaded line, with admittance Y'_1 and electrical length θ'_1 , where

$$(Y'_1)^2 = Y_1^2 + 2\omega C_v Y_1 \cot \theta_1 - \omega^2 C_v^2$$

$$\sin \theta'_1 = \frac{Y'_1}{Y_1} \sin \theta_1$$

Using the same procedure as in section II, the inverter value is obtained as

$$B_n = -\frac{B^2}{Y'_1 \tan \theta'_1 + 2B'}$$

Equivalent shunt transmission line resonators are calculated by adding B'' and B_n to the input, resulting in the inverter-coupled equivalent circuit with $J_n = B_n$.

The relationship in (11) is of limited use, as it is dependent on the line widths and spacings, but also on the position of the NRN with respect to the adjacent resonators and C_v . A closed-form expression for B can be derived, but is very cumbersome, and of little use. An approximate proportionality relationship can however be established by recognising from [22] that B is proportional to

$$B_n \approx -\frac{B_{n0}^2 \tan \theta'_1}{Y'_1}$$

where B_{n0} is a length-independent coupling coefficient [65] which is only dependent on the line widths and spacings. If B' is assumed small. An exact analysis for ideal inverter, which includes all effects, is presented in the Appendix.

IV. IMPLEMENTATION IN MICROSTRIP

For implementation in quasi-TEM structures such as microstrip, the derivation in the Appendix neglects the effects at the ends of the lines, as well as the effects of the even and odd mode propagation speeds. To give more accurate results, the structure in Fig. 2(a) can be analysed using a solver such as CST Microwave Studio.

Two half-length microstrip resonators of length L_0 are chosen for the study. With reference to Fig. 3.66, the nominal dimensions are $L_0 = 17$ mm, $L_1 = 1$ mm and $W_1 = W_0 = 1.175$ mm. In isolation, the resonators have a nominal resonant frequency of 5 GHz and $Z_0 = 50$. In order to get maximum variation in coupling between resonators, the NI is placed symmetrically between the resonators.

Using the eigenmode solver in CST, the coupling coefficients and resonant frequencies can be calculated. The modal resonant frequencies using standard formulae shows the variation of coupling value as a function of width (W_1) for various values of spacing (L_1). For $C_v = 0$. The observed inverse dependence of coupling on spacing is shown in Fig. 3.67.

CHAF

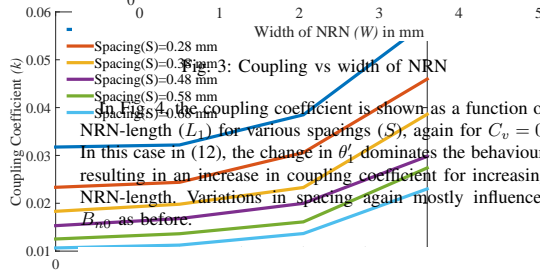


Fig. 3: Coupling vs width of NRN

In Fig. 4, the coupling coefficient is shown as a function of NRN-length (L_1) for various spacings (S), again for $C_v = 0$. In this case in (12), the change in θ_1 dominates the behaviour, resulting in an increase in coupling coefficient for increasing NRN-length. Variations in spacing again mostly influences B_{n0} as before.

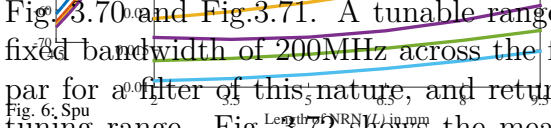


Fig. 4: Coupling vs length of NRN

Figure 3.68: Tunable NRN spurious response (from [65])

These lines are also loaded with capacitance causing a sharp lowering of the frequency. It is therefore imperative that this behaviour is included in the design. For such an investigation, a Spice model of the MA46H120 varactor diode operating between 0-12V is used as variable capacitance. This voltage range results in a capacitance variation of approximately 400 fF. Using tightly edge-coupled lines to input and output ports, a two-port analysis is performed using the CST frequency solver within the CST Microwave Studio. The results shown in Fig. 6. The position of the spurious frequency is determined using the graph in Fig. 6. The loss in the varactor strongly attenuates the signal at this frequency. Furthermore, in a higher-order filter, these spurious points will not coincide, diminishing their influence even more. Nevertheless, it is clear that this behaviour must be considered in the design of a filter, as it can limit the stop-band attenuation. In filters requiring high stop-band attenuation, it may even be required to add a low-order low-pass filter before or after the main filter.

V. FILTER CONSTRUCTION AND MEASUREMENT

Three microstrip staircase filters were designed and tested. The design was based on the design equations presented in [19] are utilized to calculate coupling coefficients and external quality factors.

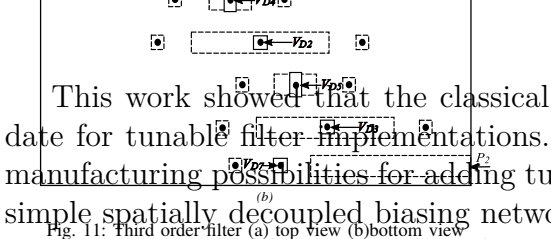


Fig. 11: Third order filter (a) top view (b) bottom view

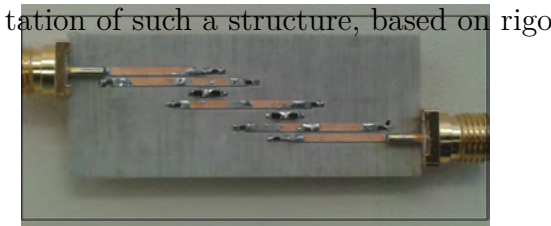


Fig. 12: Fabricated third order filter with Q_e tuning circuit

used for biasing.

From classical coupled resonator theory, it follows that to achieve a fixed absolute bandwidth and a set reflection coefficient simultaneously, for a varying centre frequency, the input and output q-factors must change with frequency. In the prototype proposed here, such a compensation is implemented by adding varactor diodes to the end of each feed line.

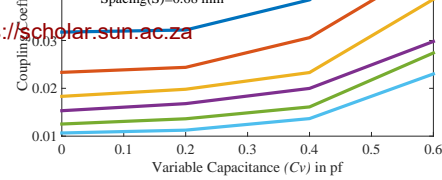


Fig. 5: Coupling coefficient for different capacitances

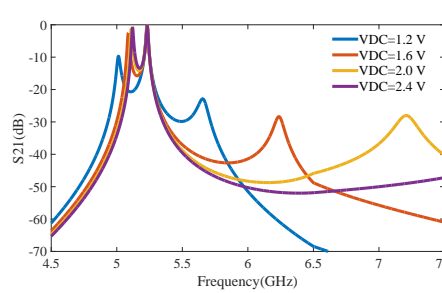


Fig. 6: Spurious response for different DC bias voltage ranges

Figure 3.68: Tunable NRN spurious response (from [65])

These lines are also loaded with capacitance causing a sharp lowering of the frequency. It is therefore imperative that this behaviour is included in the design. For such an investigation, a Spice model of the MA46H120 varactor diode operating between 0-12V is used as variable capacitance. This voltage range results in a capacitance variation of approximately 400 fF. Using tightly edge-coupled lines to input and output ports, a two-port analysis is performed using the CST frequency solver within the CST Microwave Studio. The results shown in Fig. 6. The position of the spurious frequency is determined using the graph in Fig. 6. The loss in the varactor strongly attenuates the signal at this frequency. Furthermore, in a higher-order filter, these spurious points will not coincide, diminishing their influence even more. Nevertheless, it is clear that this behaviour must be considered in the design of a filter, as it can limit the stop-band attenuation. In filters requiring high stop-band attenuation, it may even be required to add a low-order low-pass filter before or after the main filter.

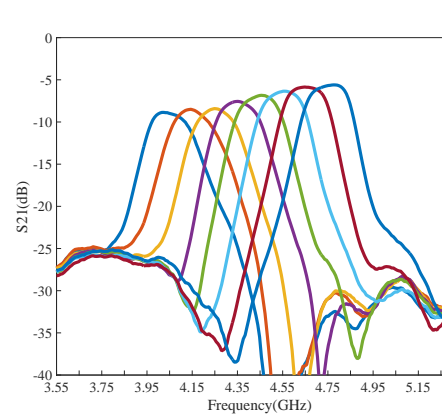


Fig. 16: Measured S21 for the third order filter with input and output compensation

Figure 3.70: Tunable NRN filter measurements S21 (from [65])

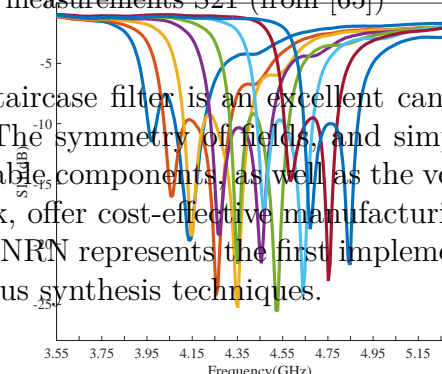


Fig. 17: Measured S11 for the third order filter with input and output compensation

The proposed technique is not limited to certain orders of filters, and also not specifically to the staircase topologies used as illustration, but can be used for any Coupled-Resonator topology. For frequencies above 5 GHz, higher order filters will however suffer significant insertion loss due to the finite and relatively low varactor Q-factors.

VII. ACKNOWLEDGEMENT

The authors thank the National Research Foundation (NRF) of South Africa for financial assistance with this work, as well as CST for the use of their software.

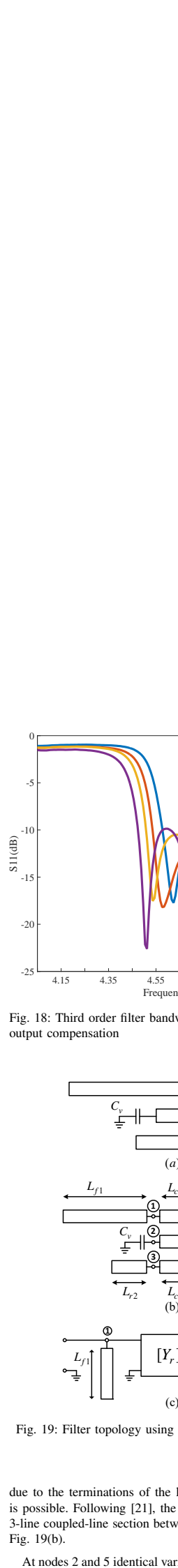


Fig. 19: Filter topology using 3-line coupled-line section

due to the terminations of the 1-line section. It is possible. Following [21], the 3-line coupled-line section between nodes 2 and 5 identical with

At nodes 2 and 5 identical with

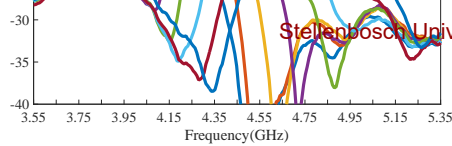


Fig. 16: Measured S21 for the third order filter with input and output compensation

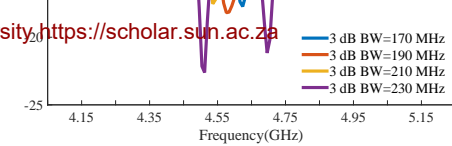


Fig. 18: Third order filter bandwidth variation with input and output compensation

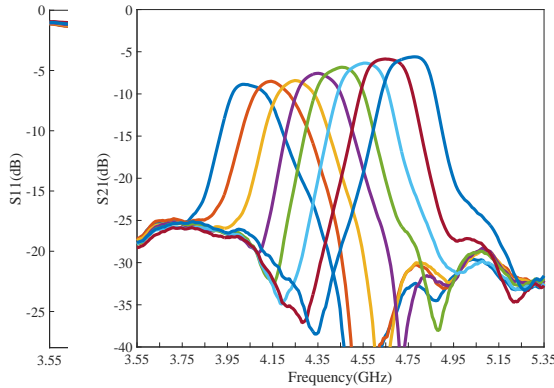


Fig. 17: Measured S11 for the third order filter with input and output compensation

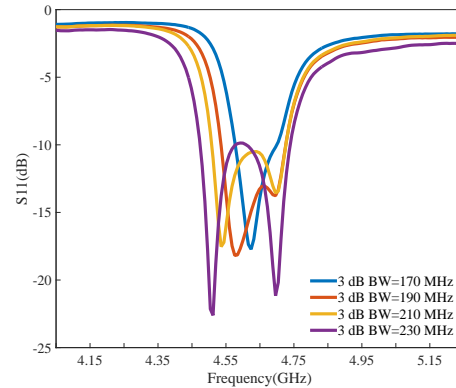


Fig. 18: Third order filter bandwidth variation with input and output compensation

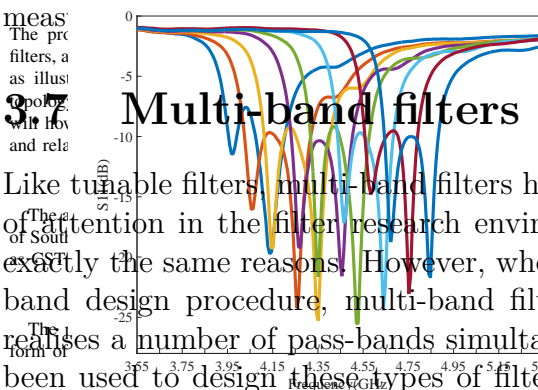


Fig. 19: Filter topology using reconfigurable NRN inverter

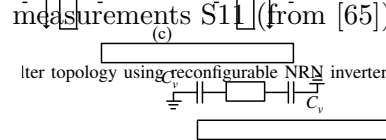


Fig. 19: Filter topology using reconfigurable NRN inverter

3.7 Multi-band filters

Like tunable filters, multi-band filters have also received an enormous amount of attention in the filter research environment over the last decade, and for exactly the same reasons. However, whereas a tunable filter relies on a single-band design procedure, multi-band filters require a design approach which realises a number of pass-bands simultaneously. Three main approaches have been used to design these types of filters. Firstly, and also the simplest approach, is the interconnection of single-band filters. This approach typically results in larger structures, with performance degradation due to the interconnection structures. A second popular approach has been to use resonators with multiple resonances to create multiple pass-bands, with especially Stepped Impedance Resonators (SIRs) proving to be quite popular. While centre frequencies can readily be controlled in this way, the control over pass-band bandwidths are challenging, especially for higher order filters. However, this technique has the advantage of fundamental size and the ability to accommodate cases where there is a wide separation between the pass bands.

The last, and most rigorous, methods to design multi-band filters are to either construct the approximation function to include multiple bands, and perform a standard synthesis, or to transform the approximation function and consequently the low-pass elements as well, to a multi-band one. The latter approach can also be viewed as an extension of the standard low-pass to band-pass transform. This approach makes it possible to design multi-band filters with pre-determined topologies and transfer functions, but has the disadvantage that the responses of all the bands are determined by the original prototype response.

In 2014, a rigorous theoretical background for the design of multi-band filters had not been established, and most designs relied on a mixture of approximate design and optimisation. Together with my PhD student Dr Gerdus

Brandt, we therefore set out to derive such a procedure. This led to a formal mathematical procedure to transform a low-pass transfer function of any form, to a multi-band one of arbitrary order, and with arbitrary bands, using no optimisation, and only exact transformations [67], [68].

The basic transformation problem is shown in Fig. 3.73, where a single-band, low-pass transfer function has to be transformed into a multi-band function with arbitrary band-edge frequencies. *Designing Multiband Coupled-Resonator Filters*

83

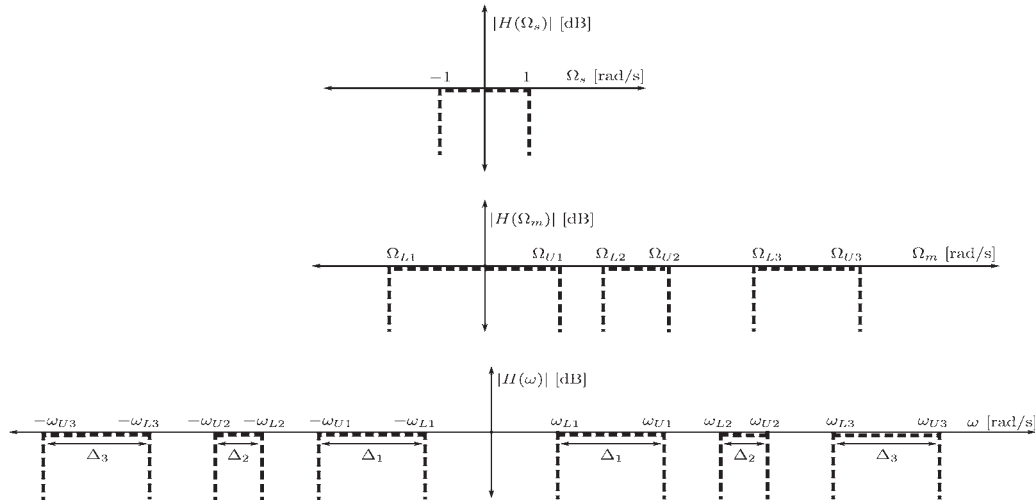


Figure 1 Low-pass to multiband response transformation using an unsymmetrical intermediate response.

Figure 3.73: Multiband frequency transform (from [68])

LC-network, transformed through a band-pass to low-pass transformation, as given in (1).

To find a function to do this is not trivial. For a pure polynomial mapping function, the minimum order Lagrange interpolation polynomial can for instance easily be constructed to map each band-edge as required. However, the behaviour of the function between these points can in this case not be specified, and the function can easily map parts of the low-pass stop-band into pass-bands. Both these aspects are significant drawbacks. The rational function in (1) has N zeros, z_1, \dots, z_N , and $N+1$ poles, p_1, \dots, p_{N+1} , $p_{N+1} = \infty$. With $z_1 < p_1$ and $p_2 < z_2 < p_3 < z_3 < p_4 < \dots$, the rational function can be used to map the low-pass stop-band into pass-bands, and the pass-band into stop-bands. The rational function can be used to map the low-pass stop-band into pass-bands, and the pass-band into stop-bands. The rational function can be used to map the low-pass stop-band into pass-bands, and the pass-band into stop-bands.

multiband frequency axis is a bandwidth-scaled replica of the low-pass filtering function. In addition to satisfying the mapping requirements, the mapping function has the following important advantages:

- Each pass-band has the exact same reflection and transmission responses as the original low-pass transfer function.
- The centre frequency and bandwidth for each band can be chosen completely arbitrarily.
- By simply choosing the correct poles and zeroes, or equivalently the pass-band edges for each band, a valid

Optimisation of the polynomial coefficients therefore becomes necessary, and in many cases a solution does not exist.

In contrast, a rational fraction with poles and zeros offers a much improved mapping function, as the pole and zero positions can be specified separately. While an infinite number of rational functions can be constructed, we showed that the classical LC one-port reactance function can be used very effectively for this purpose, and is indeed an superb function to use, as it also maps

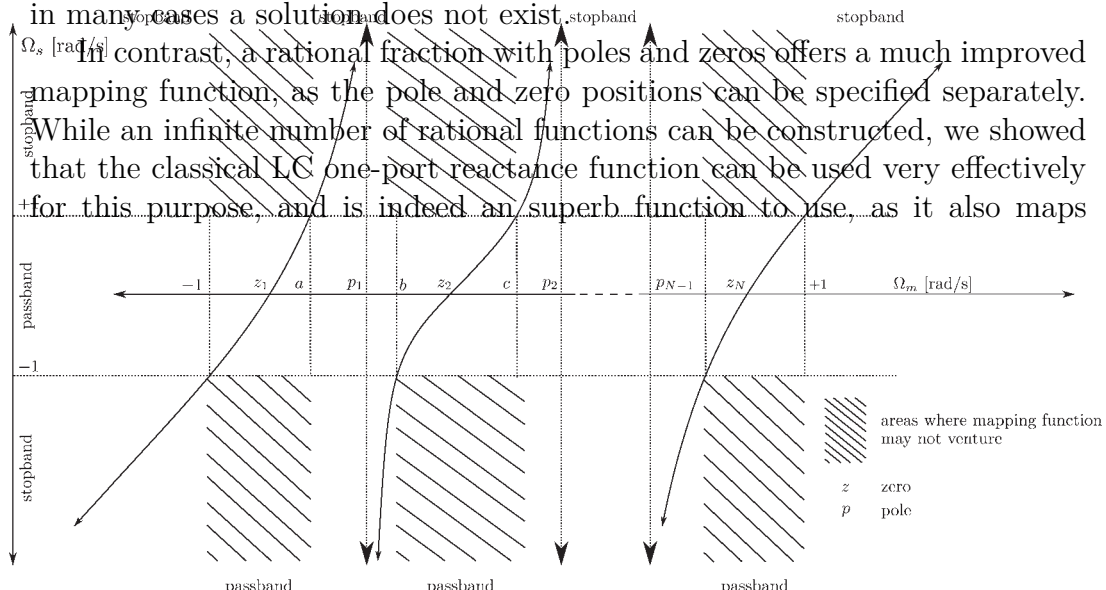


Figure 2 Graphical representation of the ideal frequency mapping function

LC-network, transformed through a band-pass to low-pass transformation, as given in (1).

CHAPTER 3. MICROWAVE FILTERS

$$\Omega_s(\Omega_m) = \frac{\alpha_{N-1}\Omega_m^{N-1} + \dots + \alpha_1\Omega_m + \alpha_0}{\beta_{N-1}\Omega_m^{N-1} + \dots + \beta_1\Omega_m + 1} = \frac{P(\Omega_m)}{Q(\Omega_m)} \quad (1)$$

reactive circuit elements only to other reactive circuit elements. Such a transformation function is shown in Fig. 3.74, with the corresponding element transformations in Fig. 3.75 and Fig. 3.76 and can be seen to be a single-order extension of the classical low-pass to band-pass transformation. The advantages of this transformation function are manifold, as discussed in [68].

(1). As a consequence, each $p_i \rightarrow z_i \rightarrow P$ Figure 3.74: Multiband frequency transform function (from [68])

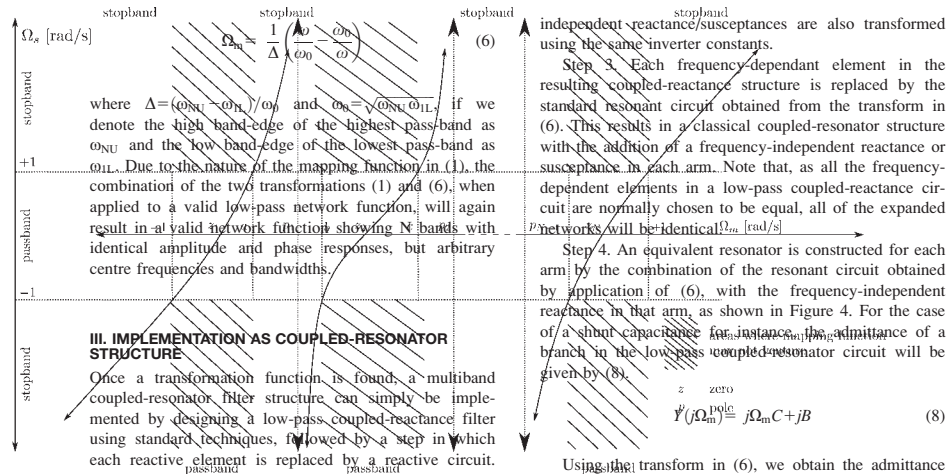


Figure 3.74: Multiband frequency transform function (from [68])

International Journal of RF and Microwave Computer-Aided Engineering DOI 10.1002/mmce

Once a transformation function is found, a multiband coupled-resonator filter structure can simply be implemented by designing a low-pass coupled-reactance filter using standard techniques, followed by a step in which each reactive element is replaced by a reactive circuit. This is done in a four-step procedure.

Step 1. As a first step, each reactive element in the low-pass filter is replaced with a circuit which is the direct network expansion of the low-pass filter. There are numerous classical techniques available in the literature to synthesize the required transformation subcircuit from the reactance (susceptance) function, with two of the simplest forms being the Cauer I and II topologies [25]. For a network containing frequency-independent reactances, the Cauer I expansion is shown in (7), with the circuit form in Figure 3.

$$j\Omega_m(\Omega_m) = j\Omega_m k_1 + j\Omega_m k_2 + \dots + \frac{1}{j\Omega_m k_2 + j\Omega_m k_1 + \dots} \quad (7)$$

Figure 3.75: Multiband LC transform form (from [68])

Step 2. The Cauer I expansion in Figure 3 is transformed to a coupled reactance low-pass structure with equal shunt capacitance or series inductance values coupled by J or K inverters, respectively. The frequency-

where $\Delta = (\omega_{N1} - \omega_{N2})/\omega_0$ and $\omega_0 = \sqrt{\omega_{N1}\omega_{N2}}$. If we denote the high band-edge of the highest pass-band as ω_{N1} and the low band-edge of the lowest pass-band as ω_{N2} . Due to the nature of the mapping function in (1), the combination of the two transformations (1) and (6), when applied to a valid low-pass network function showing N bands with identical amplitude and phase responses, but arbitrary centre frequencies and bandwidths.

III. IMPLEMENTATION AS COUPLED-RESONATOR STRUCTURE

Once a transformation function is found, a multiband coupled-resonator filter structure can simply be implemented by designing a low-pass coupled-reactance filter using standard techniques, followed by a step in which each reactive element is replaced by a reactive circuit. This is done in a four-step procedure.

Step 1. As a first step, each reactive element in the low-pass filter is replaced with a circuit which is the direct network expansion of the low-pass filter. There are numerous classical techniques available in the literature to synthesize the required transformation subcircuit from the reactance (susceptance) function, with two of the simplest forms being the Cauer I and II topologies [25]. For a network containing frequency-independent reactances, the Cauer I expansion is shown in (7), with the circuit form in Figure 3.

$$j\Omega_m(\Omega_m) = j\Omega_m k_1 + j\Omega_m k_2 + \dots + \frac{1}{j\Omega_m k_2 + j\Omega_m k_1 + \dots} \quad (7)$$

Step 2. The Cauer I expansion in Figure 3 is transformed to a coupled reactance low-pass structure with equal shunt capacitance or series inductance values coupled by J or K inverters, respectively. The frequency-

where $\Delta = (\omega_{N1} - \omega_{N2})/\omega_0$ and $\omega_0 = \sqrt{\omega_{N1}\omega_{N2}}$. If we denote the high band-edge of the highest pass-band as ω_{N1} and the low band-edge of the lowest pass-band as ω_{N2} . Due to the nature of the mapping function in (1), the combination of the two transformations (1) and (6), when applied to a valid low-pass network function showing N bands with identical amplitude and phase responses, but arbitrary centre frequencies and bandwidths.

III. IMPLEMENTATION AS COUPLED-RESONATOR STRUCTURE

Once a transformation function is found, a multiband coupled-resonator filter structure can simply be implemented by designing a low-pass coupled-reactance filter using standard techniques, followed by a step in which each reactive element is replaced by a reactive circuit. This is done in a four-step procedure.

Step 1. As a first step, each reactive element in the low-pass filter is replaced with a circuit which is the direct network expansion of the low-pass filter. There are numerous classical techniques available in the literature to synthesize the required transformation subcircuit from the reactance (susceptance) function, with two of the simplest forms being the Cauer I and II topologies [25]. For a network containing frequency-independent reactances, the Cauer I expansion is shown in (7), with the circuit form in Figure 3.

$$j\Omega_m(\Omega_m) = j\Omega_m k_1 + j\Omega_m k_2 + \dots + \frac{1}{j\Omega_m k_2 + j\Omega_m k_1 + \dots} \quad (7)$$

Step 2. The Cauer I expansion in Figure 3 is transformed to a coupled reactance low-pass structure with equal shunt capacitance or series inductance values coupled by J or K inverters, respectively. The frequency-

multiband frequency axis is a bandwidth-scaled replica of the low-pass frequency axis, the advantage of satisfying the mapping requirements, this choice of mapping function has the following important advantages:

There is no theoretical limit on the number of passbands, which can be obtained.

Each pass-band has the exact same reflection and transmission responses as the original low-pass transfer function.

The centre frequency and bandwidth for each band can be chosen completely arbitrarily.

By simply choosing 168 correct poles and zeroes, or

independent reactance/susceptances are also transformed using the same inverter constants.

Step 3. Each frequency-dependant element in the resulting coupled-reactance structure is replaced by the standard resonant circuit obtained from the transform in (6). This results in a classical coupled-resonator structure with the addition of a frequency-independent reactance or susceptance in each arm. Note that, as all the frequency-dependant elements in a low-pass coupled-reactance circuit are normally chosen to be equal, all of the expanded networks will be identical.

Step 4. An equivalent resonator is constructed for each arm by the combination of the resonant circuit obtained by application of (6), with the frequency-independent reactance in that arm, as shown in Figure 4. For the case of a shunt capacitance for instance, the admittance of a branch in the low-pass coupled-resonator circuit will be given by (8).

$$Y(j\Omega_m) = j\Omega_m C + jB \quad (8)$$

Using the transform in (6), we obtain the admittance of an arm in the final multiband filter as

$$Y(j\Omega_m) = j\Omega_m C + jB \quad (8)$$

where C' and L' are the element values for the equivalent resonator, and ω_0 the new resonant frequency. To calculate these values, we note that at resonance the input

$$\omega_i = \frac{\omega_0}{\Delta B / 2C + \sqrt{(-\Delta B / 2C)^2 + 1}} \quad (9)$$

$$\omega_i = \frac{\omega_0}{\Delta X / 2L + \sqrt{(-\Delta X / 2L)^2 + 1}}$$

where C' and L' are the element values for the equivalent resonator, and ω_0 the new resonant frequency. To calculate these values, we note that at resonance the input

$$\omega_i = \frac{\omega_0}{\Delta B / 2C + \sqrt{(-\Delta B / 2C)^2 + 1}} \quad (9)$$

$$\omega_i = \frac{\omega_0}{\Delta X / 2L + \sqrt{(-\Delta X / 2L)^2 + 1}}$$

where C' and L' are the element values for the equivalent resonator, and ω_0 the new resonant frequency. To calculate these values, we note that at resonance the input

$$\omega_i = \frac{\omega_0}{\Delta B / 2C + \sqrt{(-\Delta B / 2C)^2 + 1}} \quad (9)$$

$$\omega_i = \frac{\omega_0}{\Delta X / 2L + \sqrt{(-\Delta X / 2L)^2 + 1}}$$

where C' and L' are the element values for the equivalent resonator, and ω_0 the new resonant frequency. To calculate these values, we note that at resonance the input

$$\omega_i = \frac{\omega_0}{\Delta B / 2C + \sqrt{(-\Delta B / 2C)^2 + 1}} \quad (9)$$

$$\omega_i = \frac{\omega_0}{\Delta X / 2L + \sqrt{(-\Delta X / 2L)^2 + 1}}$$

where C' and L' are the element values for the equivalent resonator, and ω_0 the new resonant frequency. To calculate these values, we note that at resonance the input

$$\omega_i = \frac{\omega_0}{\Delta B / 2C + \sqrt{(-\Delta B / 2C)^2 + 1}} \quad (9)$$

$$\omega_i = \frac{\omega_0}{\Delta X / 2L + \sqrt{(-\Delta X / 2L)^2 + 1}}$$

where C' and L' are the element values for the equivalent resonator, and ω_0 the new resonant frequency. To calculate these values, we note that at resonance the input

$$\omega_i = \frac{\omega_0}{\Delta B / 2C + \sqrt{(-\Delta B / 2C)^2 + 1}} \quad (9)$$

$$\omega_i = \frac{\omega_0}{\Delta X / 2L + \sqrt{(-\Delta X / 2L)^2 + 1}}$$

where C' and L' are the element values for the equivalent resonator, and ω_0 the new resonant frequency. To calculate these values, we note that at resonance the input

$$\omega_i = \frac{\omega_0}{\Delta B / 2C + \sqrt{(-\Delta B / 2C)^2 + 1}} \quad (9)$$

$$\omega_i = \frac{\omega_0}{\Delta X / 2L + \sqrt{(-\Delta X / 2L)^2 + 1}}$$

Figure 9 (a) Low circuit. Refer to Fig

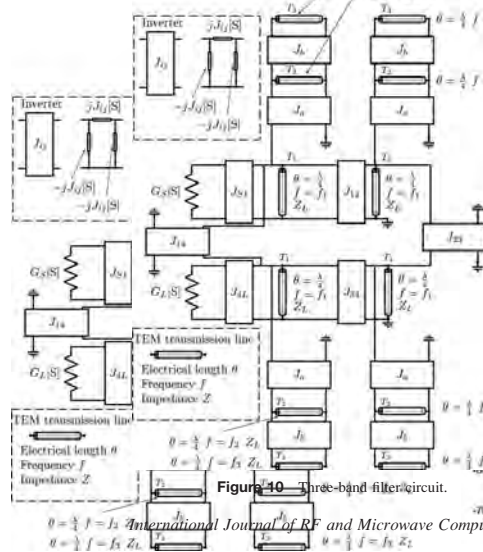


Figure 10 Three-band filter circuit.

Figure 3.77: Multiband filter (from [68])

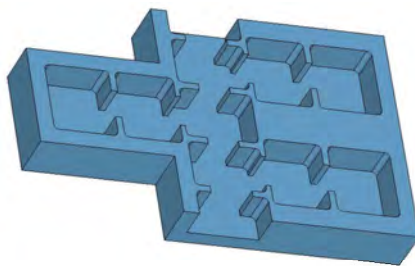


Figure 3.79: Multiband waveguide filter (from [69])

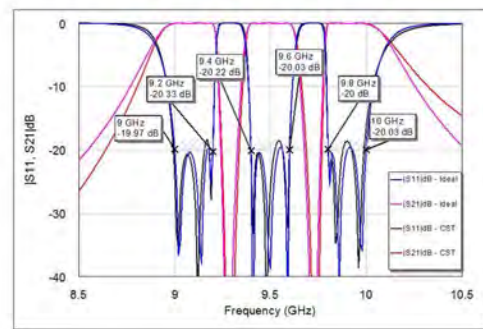


Figure 3.80: Multiband waveguide filter response (from [69])

is shown in Fig. 3.81 and Fig. 3.82, with the measured results in Fig. 3.83 and Fig. 3.84. One of the main drawbacks of these filters is clearly shown here, i.e. the effects of loss in at least one of the pass-bands. Another aspect which clearly emerged from the practical example, was the extreme difficulty in tuning such a multi-band filter, an issue which is largely ignored by the research community.

For me, the work on multi-band filters represents one of my best research efforts, as it provides a rigorous synthesis framework for a complete class of filters, and is inclusive of numerous published filters which were designed using partial versions of this theory. It is an elegant method, with virtually no theoretical limitations, and no special validity conditions beyond the normal ones of passivity and the absence of loss.

CHAPTER 3

Fig. 3.86
frequency
mechanism
high insertion

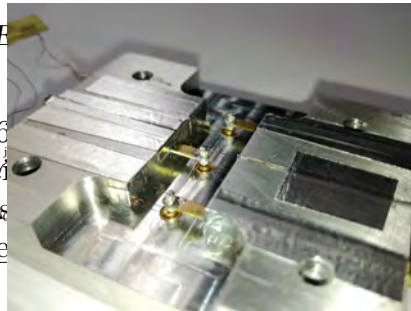


Fig. 2: Third Order Evanescent Mode Waveguide Filter Equivalent Circuit

Fig. 4: Manufactured 3rd Order E-mode Waveguide

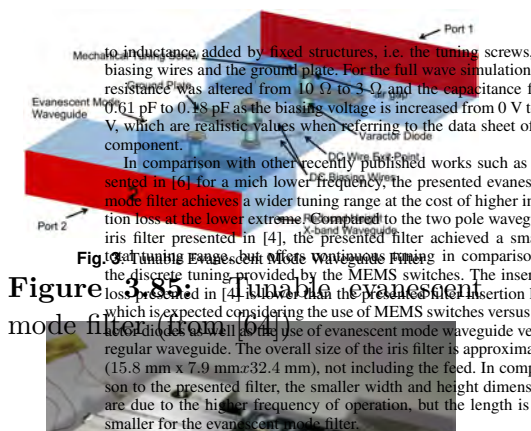


Figure 3: Manufactured 3rd Order E-mode Waveguide

mode filter (from [4])

A second interesting filter is a wire-cut combline filter, as shown in the exploded assembly drawing in Fig. 3.88. The wire-cut manufacturing process is

end-loading and inter-resonator shielding makes this one of the smallest S-band filters published. The end-loading is achieved by the resonators into cut-outs in the roof of the filter, as shown in the exploded assembly drawing in Fig. 3.88. The wire-cut manufacturing process is

end-loading and inter-resonator shielding makes this one of the smallest S-band filters published. The end-loading is achieved by the resonators into cut-outs in the roof of the filter, as shown in the exploded assembly drawing in Fig. 3.88. The wire-cut manufacturing process is

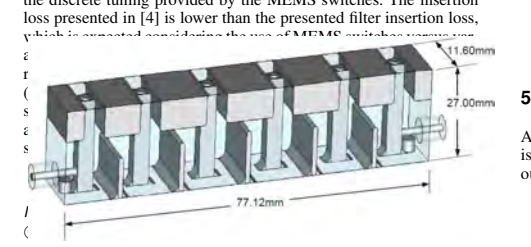


Fig. 2: Modified Combline Structure

Figure 3.87: Miniaturised combline filter (from [73])

filter structure (from [73])

While obvious, it is nevertheless worth noting that the advantages of the proposed changes would be difficult to achieve when using cylindrical resonators, as the end-capacitances will be reduced significantly for equivalent gap dimensions. The use of square resonators also enables the manufacturing process of wire-cutting to be utilized to good effect, allowing the complete central part of the structure to be cut from one piece of metal. This is shown in Fig 5, and is highly advantageous, as very high accuracy of the critical dimensions can easily be achieved.

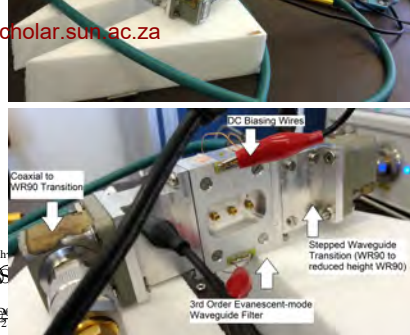


Fig. 5: Measurement Setup for 3rd Order E-mode Waveguide Filter

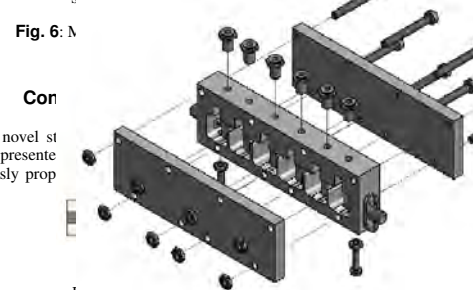
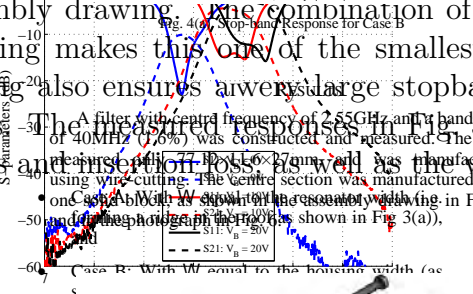
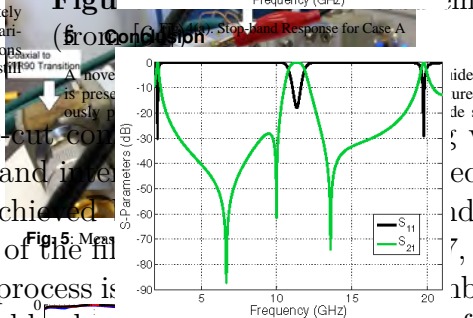
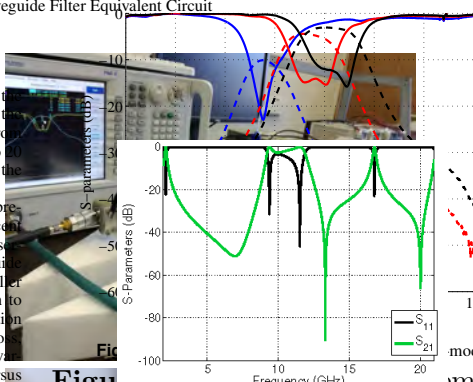


Fig. 5: Filter Construction

Figure 3.88: Miniaturised combline filter (from [73])

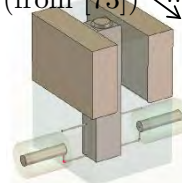


Fig. 3(b). Embedded Resonator Detail: Case B

For both cases, the resonator was coupled to input and output ports, and tuned to the same resonating frequency. Using CST Microwave Studio, wideband transmission responses were simulated, with the results shown in Figs. 4(a) and (b). The difference is quite marked. For Case A, the attenuation starts declining at frequencies just over 7GHz already, with the lower edge of a well-defined second pass-band occurring at 9.5GHz. For Case B, the lower edge of the second pass-band only occurs at 11.3GHz, an increase of

37

se
ss
in

The results are shown in Figs. 7 and 8. The region of the pass-band shown in Fig. 8. Due to the red in the pass-band is fairly high, but 17dB is achieved over the band shows that an attenuation of better to 11GHz, or 4.3f₀.

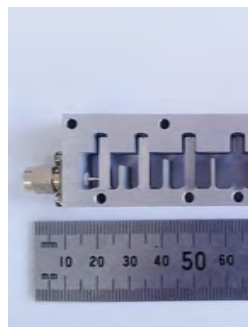


Fig. 6: Manufactured 3rd Order E-mode Waveguide

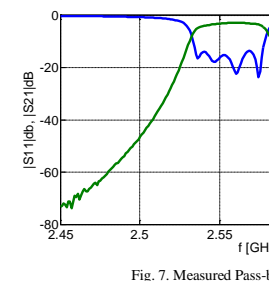


Fig. 7: Measured Pass-band Response

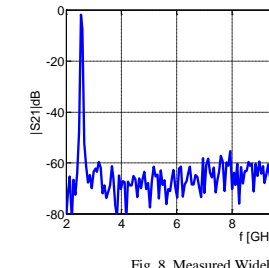


Fig. 8: Measured Stop-band Response

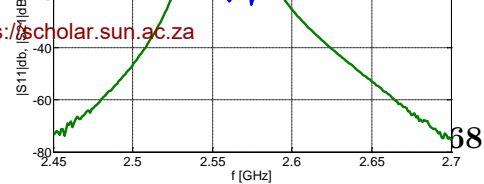


Fig. 6. Manufactured Filter

Fig. 7. Measured Pass-band Response

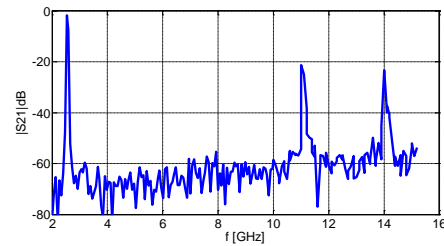


Fig. 8. Measured Wideband Response

RESULTS

frequency of 2.55GHz and a bandwidth of 100MHz were constructed and measured. The filter was a rectangular waveguide, 27mm, and was manufactured from the section was manufactured from the assembly drawing in Fig. 5, 6.

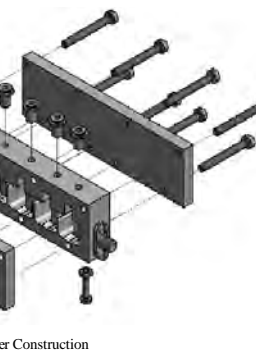


Figure 3.89: Miniaturised combine filter measurements (from [73])

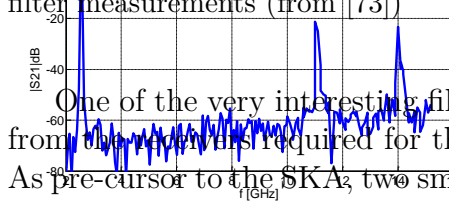


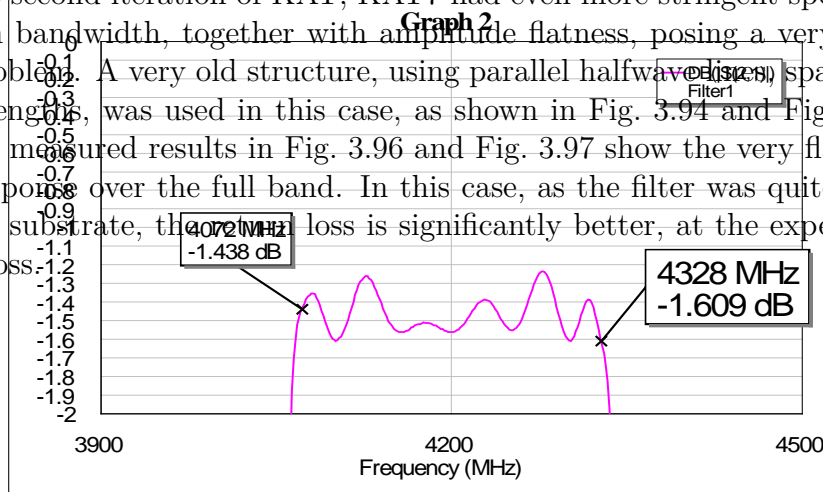
Figure 3.90: Wideband measurements (from [73])

One of the very interesting filter requirements in the last decade, stemmed from the receivers required for the Square Kilometre Antenna (SKA) project. As pre-cursor to the SKA₂, two smaller projects were first launched by the South African government, namely the Karoo Array Telescope (KAT), a one-dish, L-band demonstrator, and KAT7, a seven-dish extension of KAT. For both, the receivers required extreme magnitude flatness over frequency. As the filters in the receive chains have the strongest influence of overall system amplitude flatness, the required filters demanded very flat magnitude responses, in addition to wide bandwidths. The first solution for KAT is shown graphically in Fig. 3.91, and consisted of a basic combline filter with cylindrical rods, but tuned for insertion loss flatness at the expense of return loss. The measured results are shown in Fig. 3.92 and Fig. 3.93, where a 0.1dB insertion loss flatness was achieved over the band. The negative on the return loss, inherent to this type of design, is also clearly visible. **KAT-7 4200MHz FILTER**

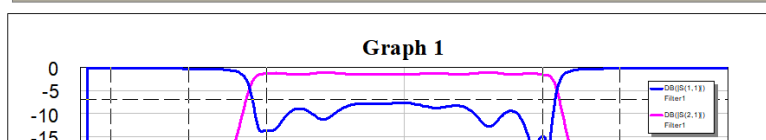
Figure 3.91: Comblane filter for KAT receiver

Filter 1: Nickel Plated

For the second iteration of KAT, KAT7 had even more stringent specifications, with bandwidth, together with amplitude flatness, posing a very challenging problem. A very old structure, using parallel halfwavelengths, spaced at half wavelengths, was used in this case, as shown in Fig. 3.94 and Fig. 3.95. Again, the measured results in Fig. 3.96 and Fig. 3.97 show the very flat amplitude response over the full band. In this case, as the filter was quite lossy due to the substrate, the insertion loss is significantly better, at the expense of insertion loss.



Graph 1



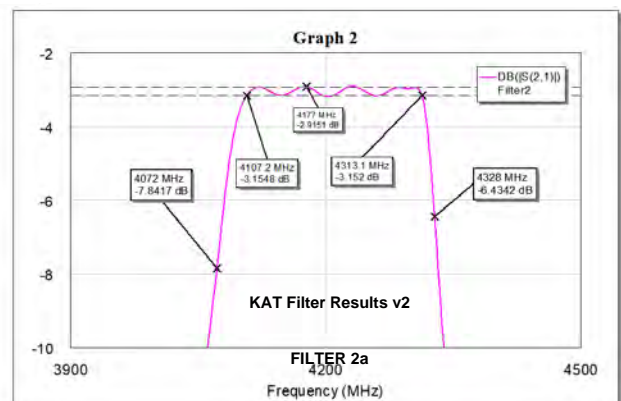
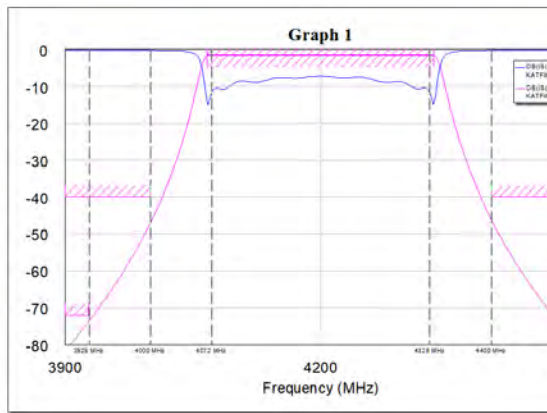


Figure 3.92: KAT combine filter measurements)



Figure 3.94: KAT7 filter photo-graph)

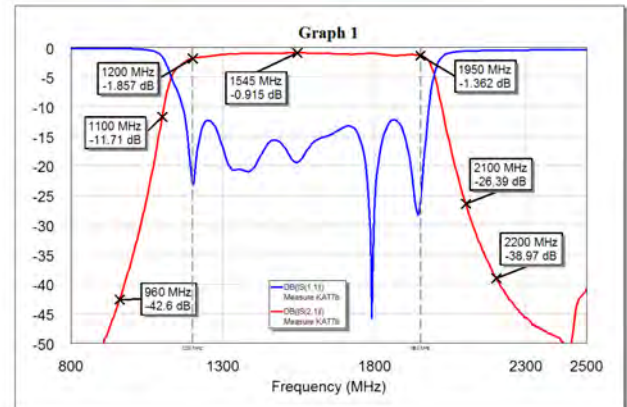


Figure 3.95: KAT7 filter layout

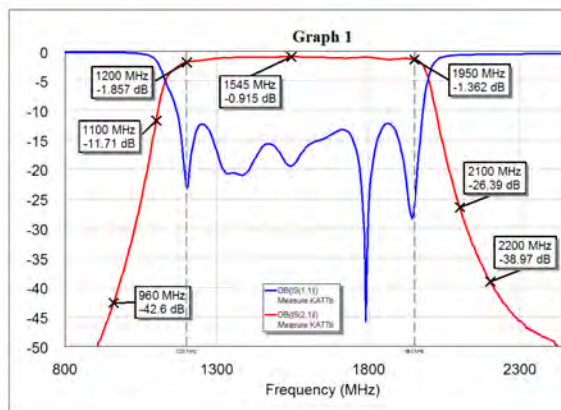


Figure 3.96: KAT7 combine filter measurements)

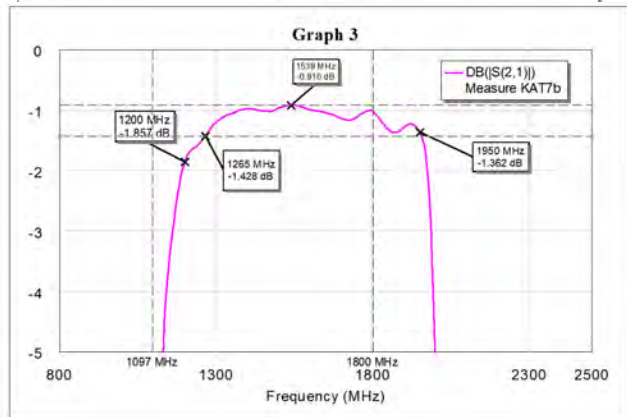
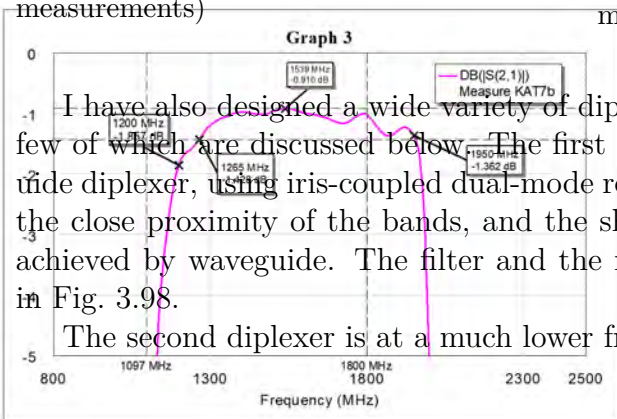


Figure 3.97: KAT7 filter measurements

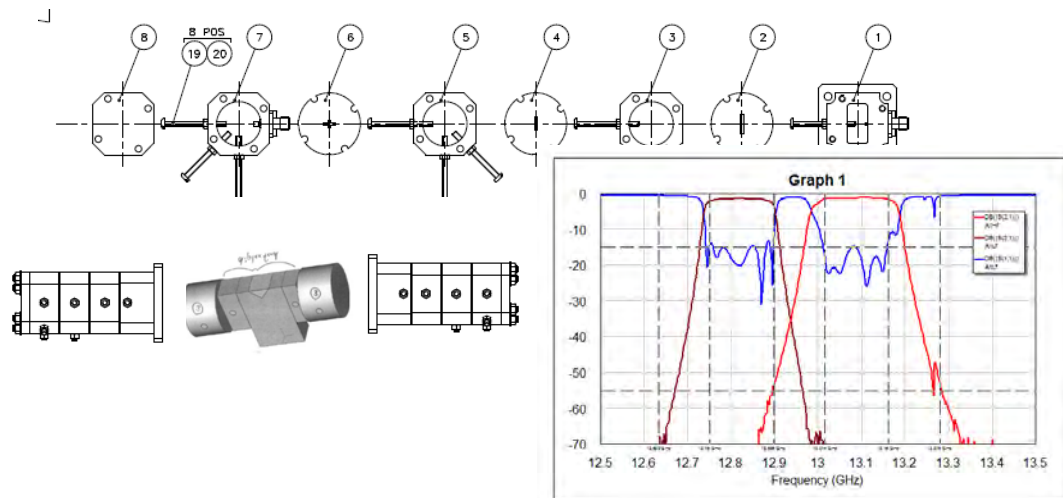


I have also designed a wide variety of duplexers for commercial purposes, a few of which are discussed below. The first is a dual-mode cylindrical waveguide diplexer, using iris-coupled dual-mode resonators. The challenge here was the close proximity of the bands, and the sharp roll-off, which could only be achieved by waveguide. The filter and the measured performance are shown in Fig. 3.98.

The second diplexer is at a much lower frequency, and was interesting due

Dual-Mode Waveguide Diplexers

13 GHz Dual-Mode Diplexer



Meyer 2007

Figure 3.98: Cylindrical waveguide diplexer

to the specific space envelope available, which called for a shallow and wide design. The resulting diplexer consisted of two combline filters lying in the same plane next to each other, and coupled to a central port through one half-wave input line. The input coupling is quite novel, as it exploits the mirror arrangement of the combline filters. The filter is shown diagrammatically in Fig. 3.99, with the measured results in Fig. 3.100 and Fig. 3.101. A zoomed-in measurement shows the good insertion loss characteristics of the filter.

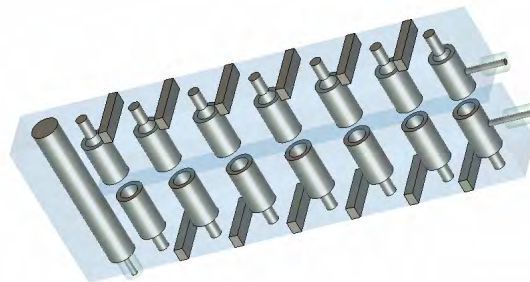


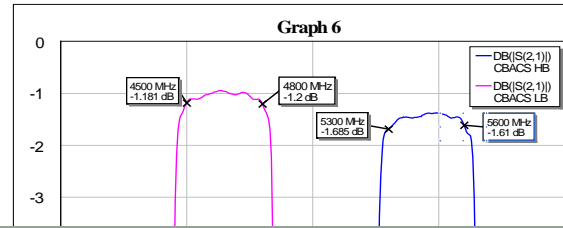
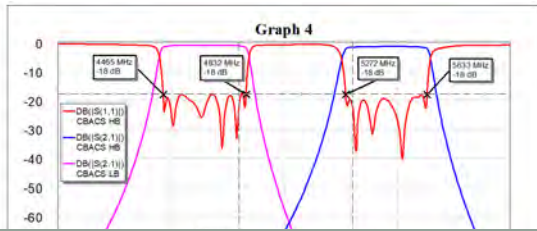
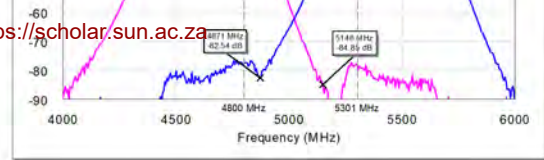
Figure 3.99: Combline diplexer

The final diplexer, and final filter in this chapter, represents the most challenging filter I have designed over my career. The filter consists of two 8th-order coaxial filters, each with three cross-couplings, which creates asymmetric transmission zeros on the high-band and low-band sides of the two filters respectively. The space envelope was extremely small, and the design pushes the

CBACS Diplexer Measurement

CHAPTER 3. MICROWAVE FILTERS

Measurement with tight clamping on output ports



Coaxial Diplexer

4GHz Diplexer

2x 9th order with asymmetrical transmission zeros

Positive and Negative Triplets

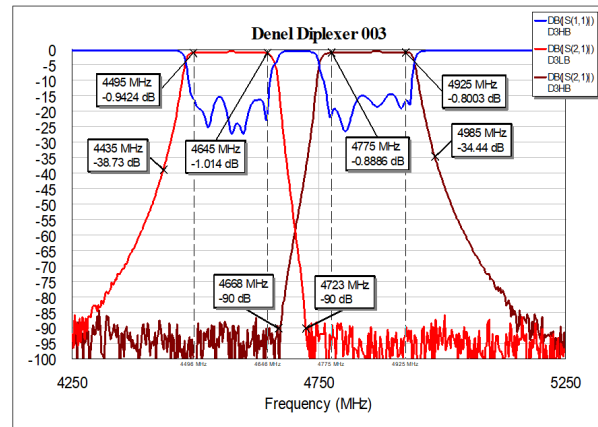


Figure 3.103: Coaxial diplexer measurements

Meyer 2010

My commercial filter work involved me in the local industry in a way that no research activity could do. It exposed me to a variety of projects and systems, and allowed me to work closely with extremely talented engineers with decades of experience. It also showed me that some of the toughest research problems originate in industry. In terms of technical aspects, whereas a research project needs only present proofs-of-concept, commercial prototypes need to work exactly to specifications. This is a significant difference, and has often exposed a lack of understanding of the subtleties or fundamentals of a particular piece of theory in my armoury of knowledge.

3.9 Conclusion

Microwave filters have been, and currently still are, one of the main pillars of my professional career, in terms of both research and industrial involvement. The combination of requirements on structural and electrical design, electromagnetic analysis, modelling, and optimisation, created numerous opportunities for innovation over the years. The explosion in personal communications over the last decade has increased the pressure on the available spectrum by orders of magnitude, making the role of filters more and more important. With the 5G-standard set to dominate communications for the next decade, the need for filters will increase even more. In addition, integration of antennas, amplifiers and filters is set to become one of the most important system requirements, calling for new design techniques and new measurement techniques. Massive integration will also in all likelihood more and more require non-traditional design and manufacturing techniques.

Due to our long history of development in this field, my group has established itself as the primary filter group in South Africa, with virtually all the filter designers in local industry being graduates from the group. Internationally, the group is involved with a number of other groups, and international companies. My activity on filters is therefore set to continue into the next decade, and in all likelihood until the end of my career.

Chapter 4

Passive Devices

4.1 Introduction

In terms of passive devices, microwave systems not only require filters, but a large variety of different signal control devices, such as switches, power dividers and combiners, couplers, matching networks and transitions between guiding structures. My work has included a number of these over the years, mostly as a result of requirements by the local Radar industry.

4.2 Matching networks

So-called *finline* structures became very popular in the 1990's as a way of inserting lumped components into waveguide. A typical single-sided finline is effectively a slotline on a substrate, which is inserted in the E-plane of a waveguide. As the substrate is typically quite thin, a very low-loss structure is obtained, but with the ability to add components across the slot.

For general applications, the use of finlines normally requires transitions between empty waveguide and the finline. As with normal planar structures, both stepped quarter-wave sections and smoothly tapered sections work well for finline. However, in waveguide these structures can become quite long. A classical exponentially tapered finline transition, also showing a stepped section created by cutting out a quarter-wave section of the substrate at the interface with the empty waveguide, is shown in Fig. 4.1.

I started work on the problem of finding optimal finline taper profiles in 1998 with the help of a Master's degree student, Mr JC Kruger (who qualified as a clinical psychologist after completion of his Master's degree, and is currently a practising professional psychologist). In this work, simple tapers such as exponential, linear, single circular arc and double circular arc tapers were experimentally investigated [74], [75]. This formed the starting point of work by myself and a student who was at that stage only an undergraduate final year student, Dr Chris Vale. The aim was to find an optimisation procedure

Designing High-Performance Finline Tapers with Vector-Based Optimization

Christopher A. W. Vale, Student Member IEEE, and Pierre Meyer, Member IEEE

paper, a novel two-step optimization algorithm for the design of high-performance finline tapers utilizes a focusing approach, where the design is aided with an increasing number of variables. The design exploits the vector representation of the reflection coefficient of smoothly varying performance X-band tapers are designed and the bandwidth of 0.47λ₀ (17.5 mm) at reflection bandwidth of 7.4–11.3 GHz, and without a quarter-wave notch transformer, bandwidth of 8.1–10.9 GHz.

finline, optimization.

1. INTRODUCTION

duction of finline in 1974 [1], it has due to its properties of low loss, wide range of fabrication. Smoothly varying finline reflection coefficient, the so-called *VB optimiser*, was proposed. For smoothly varying tapers, the theory of small reflections yields an integral of the form

$$\frac{1}{2} \int_{-L}^L \frac{dZ(z, \omega)}{Z_0(z, \omega)} e^{-j\int_0^z \beta(\zeta, \omega) d\zeta} dz \quad (4.1)$$

er, and standard design equations are distance along the line, and the propagation constant. The integrand can be viewed as a phasor (or vector). The proposed optimiser, instead of compensating for a straight air-dielectric interface. The latter still displays a reflection coefficient of better than 30 dB across the 8.1–10.9 GHz band, despite having no notch transformer.

er of studies, such as that performed by on optimal lengths for taper sections. Many authors use standard geometrical profiles such as circular arcs [5], often a value of the slot width at a certain distance along the line. Using the same geometrical profile on different dielectric constants and thicknesses yields varying results.

include the effects of the impedance constant dependence on frequency. It is by now well known that the standard formula for the reflection coefficient of smoothly varying tapers [7], shown in (1), is used with ρ, the reflection coefficient, Z₀ and β, the characteristic impedance and propagation constant, respectively, z the length of the taper, half-wavelength length, and ω the frequency in radians per second

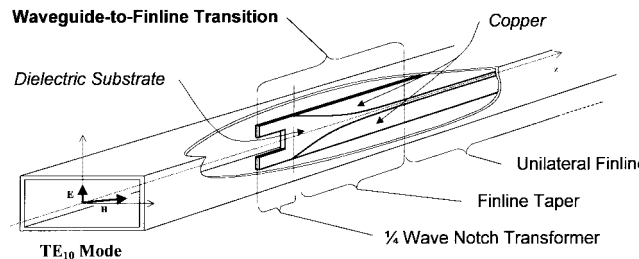


Fig. 1. Typical finline taper.

Figure 4.1: Waveguide to finline transition (from [76])

This paper presents a novel two-step optimization algorithm for the design of finline tapers. The first step relies on a systematic increase of variables, similar to the method used by Kozak *et al.* [6], while the second step exploits the vector nature of the integral formulation of the reflection coefficient of smoothly varying tapers, as derived by Collin [7]. The algorithm is evaluated with respect to convergence and sensitivity to starting values, and are shown to be robust and to display stable minimization behavior for any number of variables. As examples, four X-band tapers are shown with their measured results: two very short tapers of 0.47λ₀ and 0.67λ₀ at 8 GHz (17.5 and 25 mm, respectively), and two tapers illustrating how the air-dielectric interface of frequency and the nonideal behavior of the notch transformer, and one taper compensating for a straight air-dielectric interface. The latter still displays a reflection coefficient of better than 30 dB across the 8.1–10.9 GHz band, despite having no notch transformer. This process is illustrated in Fig. 4.3.

II. TWO-STEP OPTIMIZATION PROCEDURE

With each variable the widths in the line, the widths in the line, the widths in the line. The more variables chosen to describe the taper shape, the more arbitrary the taper shape may become. A method of arbitrary taper analysis is therefore required which not only executes the process very quickly, but also yields accurate results. For this purpose, the standard formula for the reflection coefficient of smoothly varying tapers [7], shown in (1), is used with ρ, the reflection coefficient, Z₀ and β, the characteristic impedance and propagation constant, respectively, z the length of the taper, half-wavelength length, and ω the frequency in radians per second

$$\rho(\omega) = \frac{1}{2} \int_0^L \frac{\partial}{\partial z} \left[\ln [Z_0(z, \omega)] \right] \cdot e^{-2j \int_0^z \beta(\zeta, \omega) d\zeta} dz. \quad (1)$$

ch 26, 1999; revised July 12, 1999.

the Department of Electronic Engineering, Stellenbosch 7600, South Africa (e-mail: caw@sun.ac.za).

0018-9480(99)08443-4.

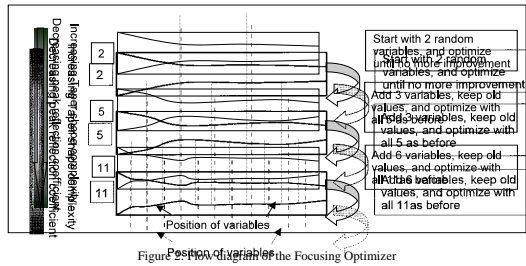


Figure 4.2: Focussing optimiser (from [76])

The integral is evaluated numerically using a high level of discretization to ensure accurate results. For increased speed, the impedance and propagation constant values are read from data tables. Such data tables can be computed either by using approximate formulas [8]–[11] or accurate two-dimensional (2-D) FEM analysis. The proviso that the taper should be smooth for this formula to hold [7] is achieved by the use of cubic interpolation to construct the taper profile from the variables.

For the optimization approach, the error function to be minimized is defined as the peak reflection coefficient in the band of interest. This particular definition causes severe problems for standard optimization techniques. In addition to the stochastic behavior of the error function caused by the nonlinear formulation, a host of local minima results from the large number of variables used to describe the tapers. Unfortunately, a good taper must have a large freedom of

Figure 7. Measured reflection coefficient for a large number of variables

The solution to this problem is two new optimization techniques: the focusing and vector representation (VR) techniques for a 25mm taper (from [76])

A. Focusing Optimizer

This work represented some of the first work on structural optimisation in microwave planar design, which allowed for continuously variable random problems using a wide range of one-way propagation over the next decades as the capabilities of computer codes increased. It showed that the exploitation of mathematical function. By starting an optimization with fewer variables, the error landscape can be “de-focused,” leaving only the large minima visible when the optimizer reaches and over problems with high numbers of variables. The point is that out-of-focus landscape, the focus is improved and the optimizer is allowed to find the slightly more accurate minimum. This process is repeated until the landscape is viewed with an acceptable resolution.

In the focusing algorithm, optimization is initially done with small number of variables, thereby finding an optimum shape of the taper form. Retaining this shape, variables are added to the taper form in a branch-like fashion. All variables are then optimized again, updating and refining the rough shape until enough variables have been added to ensure a shape with enough freedom of form. The process is illustrated in Fig. 2.

The branch-like addition scheme of variables was found to work more efficiently than introducing variables one at a time in random positions, though both produced similar results.

In addition to work on finite tapers, Mr Kruger’s Master’s work also included work on waveguide directional couplers [75]. By accident, I had discovered previously that traditional Bethe-hole couplers showed enormous improvements in coupling bandwidth when the waveguide roof was lowered. Mr Kruger investigated this in detail, using the classical Moreno crossed-slot, crossed guide

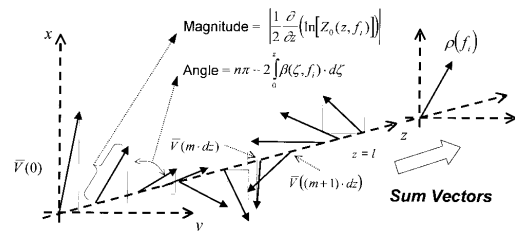


Fig. 3. Vector diagram illustrating the VR optimizer.

Figure 4.3: VR optimizer (from [76])

B. The VR Optimizer

For lossless systems (β real), the integrand term in (1) can be expressed in vector form as

$$\vec{V}(z, \omega) = M e^{j(\theta + n\pi)} \quad (2)$$

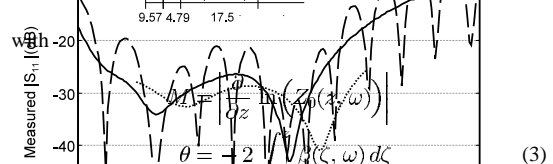


Figure 9. Measured reflection coefficient for a 17.5mm taper

At the frequency where maximum magnitude of the reflection coefficient occurs, the optimizer based on the vector representation finds the vector of vectors along the taper results for a 17.5mm taper (from [76])

coefficient vector. The magnitudes of these vectors are then reduced, while increasing the magnitudes of vectors opposite in direction. When the vectors sum to the reflection coefficient, the reduction in vector contributions will reduce the reflection-

coefficient magnitude at that frequency. While the vector magnitude is not directly a physical variable quantity, there is a direct correspondence between it and the exploitation of mathematical derivative term or magnitude of the vector can, therefore, be reduced or increased by reducing or increasing the derivative of the width profile. Varying the magnitude of solitary vectors in this way, however, creates rather abrupt changes in the width profile at the positions of the altered vectors, violating manufacturing tolerances and degrading performance at other frequencies markedly. This can be overcome by spreading the changes in vector magnitude over a sinusoidal curve. The formula for calculating the new width profile is shown in (4)

$$w(z)_{\text{new}} = \int_0^L \left(\frac{\partial}{\partial z} w(z)_{\text{old}} - k_{\text{red}} R \cdot \cos [\theta_V(z, \omega_i) - \theta_P(\omega_i)] + C \right) dz + w(0)_{\text{old}} \quad (4)$$

Directional couplers [1, 2] are finding increased usage in the design of dividers/combiners for distributed power amplifiers [3, 4, 5]. Waveguide couplers seem particularly attractive due to their low losses [6]. Unfortunately, these dividers utilize coupling values up to -30 dB. The difficulties associated with coupling values this high are evident from many of the referenced papers. In general, tight coupling is only achieved by the use of multi-aperture couplers.

A basic waveguide coupler consists of two waveguides joined by a mutual aperture, for instance a hole in the common broad wall. The most popular types are inline broad wall couplers, able to achieve coupling over large bandwidths. However, they are very bulky because of the large numbers of apertures needed. The crossed-guide coupler shown in figure 1 offers very compact size but smaller coupling values. Most couplers use crossed slots as coupling apertures due to the improved directivity [7].

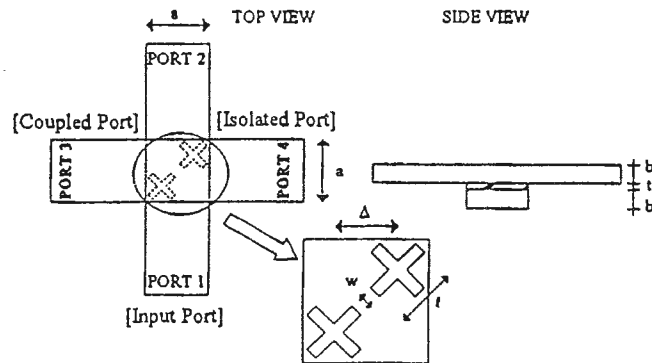


Figure 4.6: Moreno crossed-slot directional coupler (from [78])

Design data on waveguide crossed-guide couplers is readily available for coupling values of up to -15 dB [8, 9, 10 and various engineering handbooks]. For higher values, no data exists in standard literature. Only one author describes a way of obtaining tighter coupling by lowering the waveguide roof [11]. Unfortunately, he does not supply any design graphs, only a single example.

This paper will show how tight coupling can be achieved for crossed-guide couplers by using reduced-height waveguide. A large improvement in bandwidth, hinted at by Gerlack [11] is also illustrated. Finite element analyses are used to investigate the dependence of the S parameters on the different dimensions. The data presented here clearly defines the limits of operation for these couplers and constitutes valuable information for design engineers, as the characteristics of these reduced-height couplers are not available in standard literature.

2. Characteristics of Crossed-Guide Couplers

Most existing data on crossed-guide waveguide couplers is based off the analytical Bethe approach [7]. As the coupling can vary quite considerably and unexpectedly with frequency, and effects of resonance or coupling between slots can exist, this type of analysis is frequently inaccurate, and numerical analysis techniques have to be used. Rengarajan [12, 13], for instance, presents an analysis of resonant slot coupling, but no analyses are available for directional couplers. A Finite Element (FEM) technique (Maxwell Eminence from Ansoft) was used for this paper to accurately investigate the characteristics of these couplers.

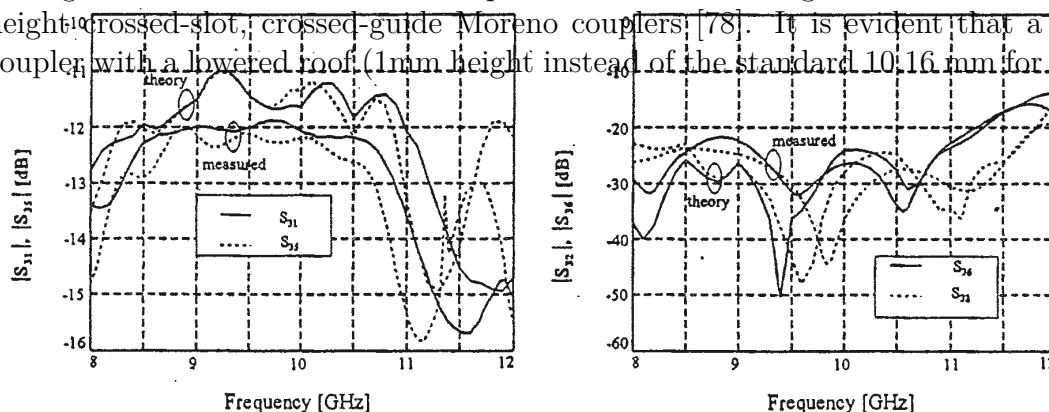
Figure 2: Effect of waveguide height: $a=22.86$ (mm), $\Delta=11.43$ (mm), $w=1.0$ (mm), $t=17.0$ (mm). Figure 4.7: Bandwidth comparisons for couplers with different roof heights. S_{11} is the reflection at the through path, S_{21} the coupled path, S_{41} the isolated path. A number of interesting properties, which can be used as a guide to the design of the coupler, are shown in figure 2 and 3. The coupling for the reduced height case changes by 1 dB from 8 to 11 GHz, while for full-height the coupling is constant at -10 dB. The coupling for the reduced height case is approximately 7 dB higher for the reduced height case. The increase in coupling for the reduced height case is approximately 7 dB higher for the reduced height case. The increase in coupling for the reduced height case is approximately 7 dB higher for the reduced height case. Other properties to be discussed in this paper are the effects of slot length, cross separation and wall thickness.

- 211 -

3. A Prototype Coupler - Analysis and Measurements

What was singularly problematic of this software, was that no delete function was available in the drawing interface, which meant any mistake or change in the coupler design, and for ports 2 and 3, the isolated ports.

Fig. 4.7 shows the simulated S-parameters for full-height and reduced-height crossed-slot, crossed-guide Moreno couplers [78]. It is evident that a coupler with a lowered roof (1 mm height instead of the standard 10.16 mm for



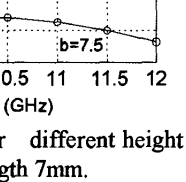


Figure 6: Crossed-guide coupler showing quarter-wave coupling slots.

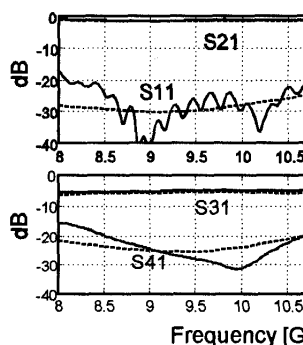
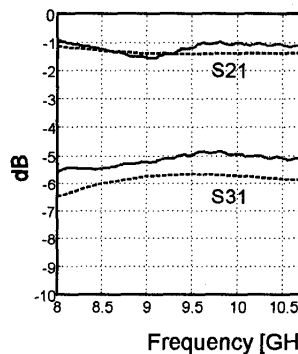


Figure 7: Results for prototype 1, measured results for 11 mm slots ($a=11.43$, $w=2.0$, $t=0.1$, $\ell=12.0$) — = measured --- = predicted

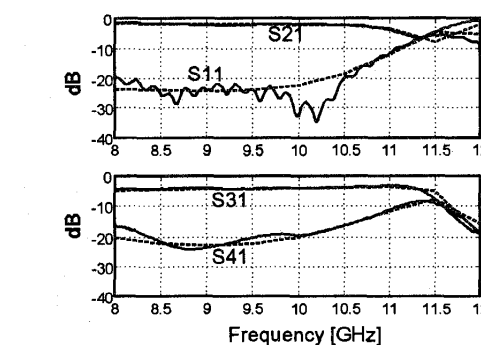
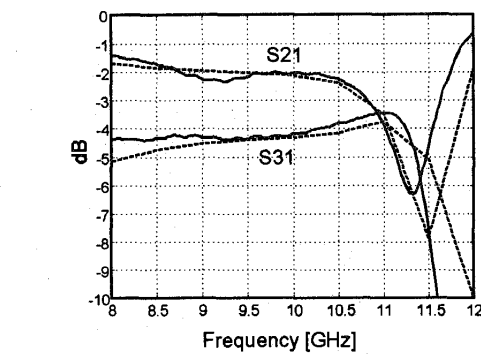


Figure 8: Results for prototype 2, measured results for 12 mm slots (from [79]) — = measured --- = predicted

CONCLUSIONS

X-band guide) creates a coupler with almost constant coupling over a 8-11.5 GHz band. (Note the coarse frequency interval of 0.5 GHz — this was the finest interval for an analysis to fit into half a day.) A large set of experimental structures was constructed and tested, and the results are reported at the 1998 IEEE MTT-S conference [79]. Some of the measured results are shown in Figs. 4.7 and 4.8.

Due to the excellent performance of the reduced-height coupler, the work was extended to that of a three-layered structure with two reduced-height guides crossing a third reduced-height guide. The results are shown in Fig. 4.10. Note that these results include coaxial-to-reduced-height waveguide transitions at all ports, which is the main reason for the variations.

This work was later extended to a full 10-way chain power divider for a local company. While it showed excellent coupling bandwidth, the losses were substantially higher than for normal height guide, which reduced the application of the principle substantially, especially for cascade couplers such as the chain divider. Nevertheless, it proved a valuable training ground for careful design of measurement experiments, and a first taste of commercial numerical electromagnetic analysis software.

disadvantages by a la

RE

- [1]: WE Caswell, *IEEE Trans. on Microwave Theory and Techniques*, 33, 1055.
- [2]: SB Cohn, R. Passive Components to Directional Couplers on Microwave MTT-32, no. 1055.
- [3]: M Faulkner, PHEMT Power Chain Comb. Symposium.
- [4]: G Ferrel, L. Sacks, 'A H Amplifier Techniques' Symposium.
- [5]: J Gipprich, I. Compact 8-1 Network Combining v Efficiency', Symposium.
- [6]: M Knox, R. Voigt, P. Br '400W X-Ba 1995 IEEE J pp. 1605-1608.
- [7]: RE Collin, *Second Edition* 523.
- [8]: WAG Voss, *The Microwave* 87.
- [9]: TN Anderson, *Nomograms* 1959, pp. 34.
- [10]: M Surdin, *Physical Rev*
- [11]: RZ Gerlack, *IEEE Trans. on Microwave Techniques*,

3. A Prototype Coupler - Analysis and Measurements

The results of a three-level coupler with guides crossing on both top and undersides of the main guide, is shown in fig 4.10. Measurements and predicted responses include a coaxial to waveguide transition at each port. Port 3 is the input port, and ports 1 and 5 the coupled ports, and ports 2 and 6 the isolated ports.

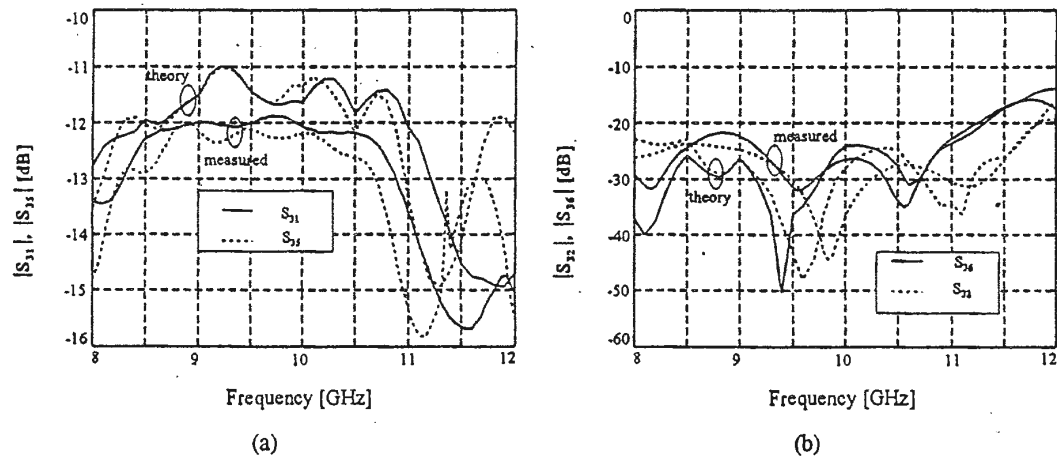


Figure 4.10: Three-layer crossed slot measured results. Port 3 is the input port, 1 and 5 the coupled ports, and 2 and 6 the isolated ports. (from [78])
 It is clear that a wide-band coupler has been constructed with coupling value of 12 to 12.5 dB across a 2GHz bandwidth, to 13dB across 2.5GHz. The coupling is equivalent to a two-level coupler with a coupling value of 9dB and is only made possible by the use of the reduced height waveguides.

4.4 Power dividers and combiners

4. Conclusions

Pulsed search RADAR systems require the generation of short pulses of very high power on the order of a few kilowatts typically. Historically, this was achieved by the use of a travelling wave tube (TWT) or a klystron. Historically, this was achieved by the use of a travelling wave tube (TWT) or a klystron. Historically, this was achieved by the use of a travelling wave tube (TWT) or a klystron.

transition to the use of combined solid-state devices. This technology offered the very desirable characteristic of graceful degradation, as opposed to single point failure in TWT systems, but required low-loss combiners which could handle very high peak powers, and multiple inputs.

In 2005, myself and my PhD student Dr Dirk de Villiers started work on X-band combiners using a proposal by Prof PW van der Walt, a RADAR expert working in local industry, for a conical line combiner [80]. Conical line combiners look similar to radial combiners, but use conical lines instead of radial lines. While similar, the design and performance of conical line combiners are hugely different from radial combiners, as a conical line supports a TEM mode, with the line impedance defined by the angle between the two conductors. This offers a number of advantages, of which a wide spurious free frequency range, and the ability to use standard impedance matching techniques are the most important.

The first iteration of a ten-way conical line combiner was published in 2007 [81]. The basic structure of the combiner is shown in Fig. 4.11. Stepped impedance transformers were used on the input ports as well as the common output port - in the former case a very simple one using a cut-out of the dielectric surrounding the centre conductor of an extended dielectric SMA connector as shown in Fig. 4.12, and in the latter case a higher order stepped coaxial line as shown in Fig. 4.13. A cross-section of the final combiner is shown

CHAPTER 4. PASSIVE DEVICES

in Fig. 4.14.

DE VILLIERS *et al.*: DESIGN OF TEN-WAY CONICAL TRANSMISSION LINE POWER COMBINER

Fig. 7. Schematic representation of circuit to be optimized in MWO. The S -parameter block was generated with a field simulation of the combining structure and needs not be optimized.

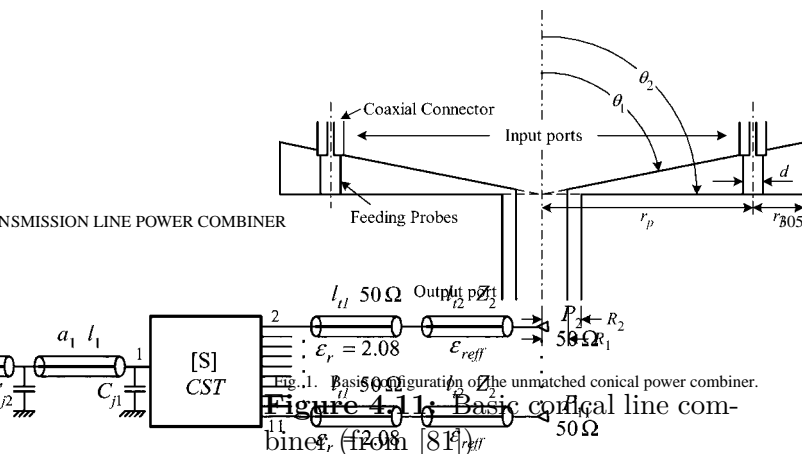


Fig. 4.11: Basic conical line combiner, (from [81])

ed in MWO. The S -parameter block was generated with a field simulation of the combining structure and

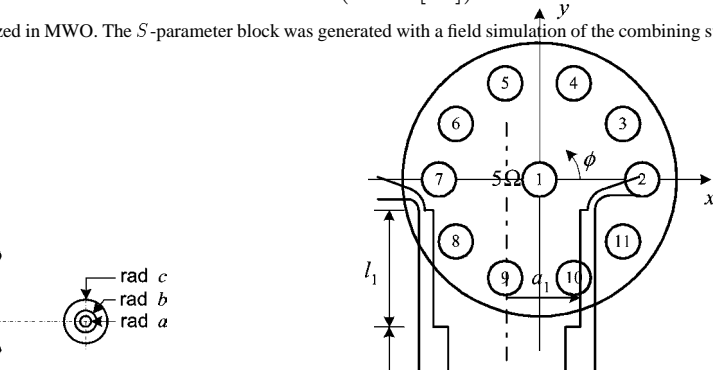


Fig. 4.12: Conical combiner input port detail, (from [81])

or inserted into the top
sion lines.

s. The bottom sec-
the normal SMA
 l_{t2} has a variable
as

A 2-D cross section of the basic structure of the conical transmission line power combiner is shown in Fig. 1, and a sketch showing the port numbering is shown in Fig. 2.

The combiner consists of three sections, i.e.: 1) the central coaxial to conical transition; 2) the conical transmission line; and 3) the N-type port probes. The central coaxial line has an air dielectric and inner and outer radii of R_1 and R_2 , respectively. The conical line is also an air dielectric and is defined by the angles θ_1 and θ_2 . Probes that feed the input coaxial lines are placed at a distance l_p from the axis. A short circuit is placed in the conical line at a distance l_s from the center of the peripheral ports.

The desired mode within the combining structure is the dominant H_{10} mode. The inner conductor of the N-type connector is also shown in this figure. The field has a θ -directed component only, and the magnetic field has an azimuthal component only.

The final values obtained for the parameters are $l_{t1} = 7.22$ mm, $l_{t2} = 7.22$ mm, $l_{s1} = 2.08$ mm, and $l_{s2} = 1.55$ mm. The final values obtained for the parameters are $l_{t1} = 7.22$ mm, $l_{t2} = 7.22$ mm, $l_{s1} = 2.08$ mm, and $l_{s2} = 1.55$ mm.

IV. SUMMARY OF THE STEP-BY-STEP DESIGN PROCEDURE

The full design process can be summarized as follows.

- 1) The combining structure is designed and the exact response of the structure is determined with a full-wave solver.
 - a) Determine the impedance of the conical line from the number of ports as $Z_0 = 50/N$.
 - b) Construct the central transition between conical and coaxial lines, as described in [10], using $\theta_2 = 90^\circ$ and calculating θ_1 from (1).
 - c) Determine the radius r_p where the input ports are placed based on the width of the connectors, the spacing between the connectors, and the number of connectors used. Keep r_p as small as possible to reduce higher order modes.

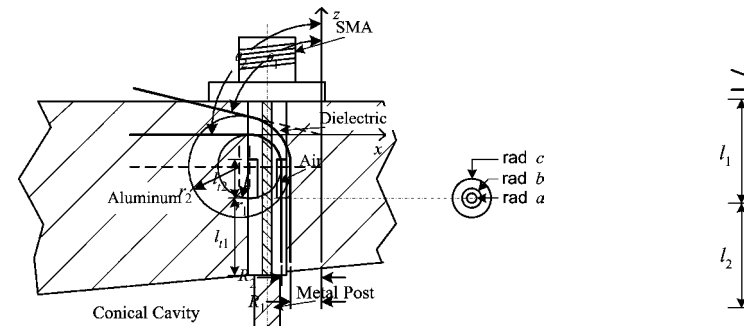


Fig. 3: Construction of coaxial-to-conical line constant impedance transition profile.

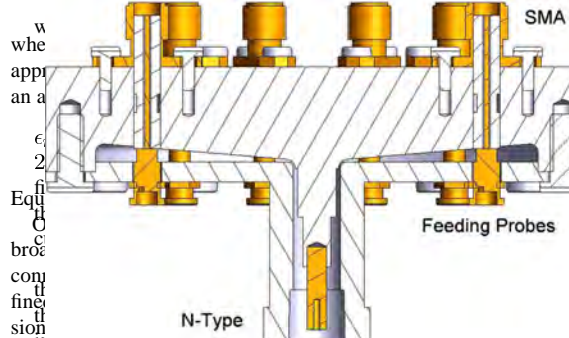
Fig. 8. Sketch of an extended dielectric SMA connector inserted into the top

Figure 4.12: Conical combiner input

port detail (from [81])

Inner can be combined with different impedances. The bottom section of the conical line will be a variable impedance. The line is terminated to the common port, which has a variable impedance. The impedance characteristic of a conical transmission line operating in the TEM mode is found as [81]

$$Z_0 = \frac{60}{\sqrt{\epsilon_r}} \ln \left(\frac{4a}{\pi b} \right)$$



varied from 50 to approximately 65 Ω in order not to completely and proof of the constant impedance characteristic of the profile. Figure 4.14 shows the simulated and measured reflection coefficient at the central output port.

This transition produces very low reflections and has much higher peak power-handling capability than the simple transition section (from [81])

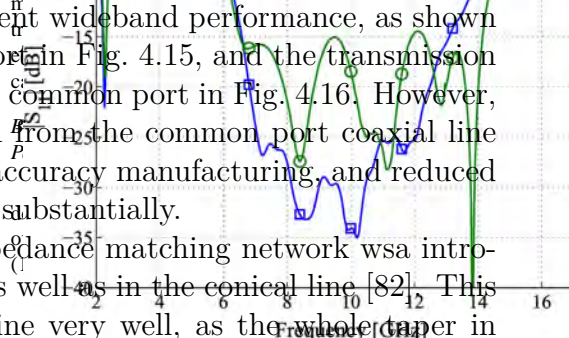


Fig. 4.15: Simulated and measured reflection coefficient at the central output port.

- 2) Optimization of the combining structure.
 - a) Determine the diameter of the feeding probes. Wider probes give better bandwidth, but the diameter is limited by the outer diameter of the input feeding coaxial lines.
 - b) Determine the length of the back-short r_b using a field simulation parameter sweep. (Optional: $\lambda/4$ can also be used for a slightly detuned performance.)
 - c) Analyze the entire structure with a field solver to get the S -parameters at all the ports.

Fig. 9. Sketch of the stepped conical line.

are used. The optimization of the two sections (dependent on the input) is used. The optimization of the two sections (dependent on the input) is used.

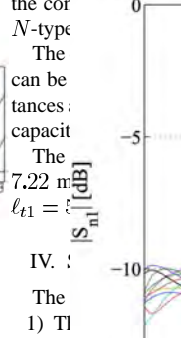


Fig. 4.16: Simulated and measured reflection coefficient at the central output port.

The bottom section of the conical line will be a variable impedance. The line is terminated to the common port, which has a variable impedance. The impedance characteristic of a conical transmission line operating in the TEM mode is found as [81]

$$Z_0 = \frac{60}{\sqrt{\epsilon_r}} \ln \left(\frac{4a}{\pi b} \right)$$

varied from 50 to approximately 65 Ω in order not to completely and proof of the constant impedance characteristic of the profile. Figure 4.14 shows the simulated and measured reflection coefficient at the central output port.

This transition produces very low reflections and has much higher peak power-handling capability than the simple transition section (from [81])

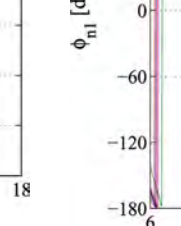


Fig. 4.15: Simulated and measured reflection coefficient at the central output port.

- 2) Optimization of the combining structure.
 - a) Determine the diameter of the feeding probes. Wider probes give better bandwidth, but the diameter is limited by the outer diameter of the input feeding coaxial lines.
 - b) Determine the length of the back-short r_b using a field simulation parameter sweep. (Optional: $\lambda/4$ can also be used for a slightly detuned performance.)
 - c) Analyze the entire structure with a field solver to get the S -parameters at all the ports.

CHAPTER 4. PASSIVE DEVICES

Fig. 10. 2-D side view of the conical combiner structure showing all connectors, feeding probes, and fastening screws.

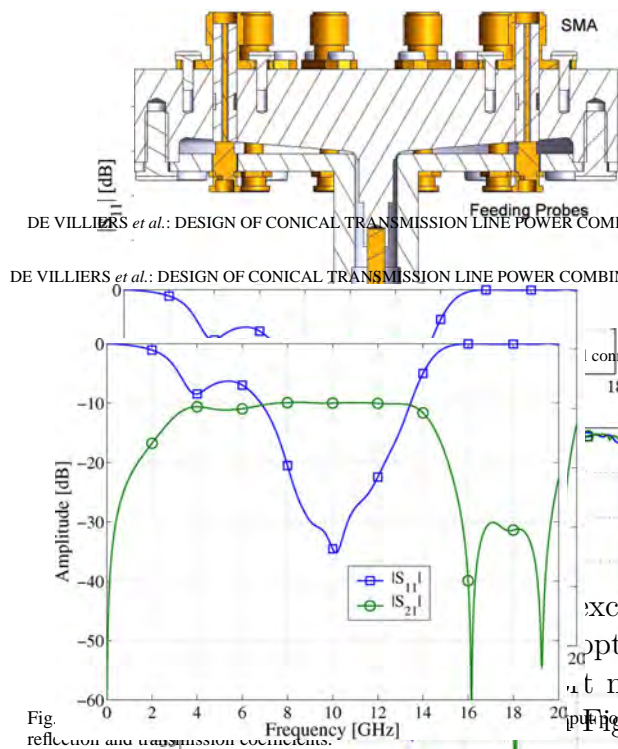


Fig. 5. Field simulation results of the combining structure central output port reflection and transmission coefficients.

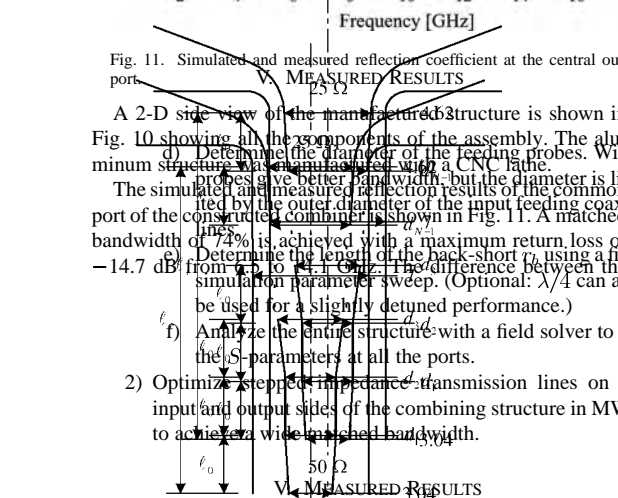


Fig. 6. 2-D side view of the manufactured structure.

A 2-D side view of the manufactured structure is shown in Fig. 10 showing all the components of the assembly. The aluminum structure was manufactured with a CNC lathe. The probes give better bandwidth, but the diameter is limited by the outer diameter of the input feeding coaxial port of the constructed combiner is shown in Fig. 11. A matched bandwidth of 74% is achieved with a maximum return loss of -14.7 dB from 6.7 to 16.7 GHz. The difference between the simulation parameter sweep. (Optional: $\lambda/4$ can also be used for a slightly detuned performance.)

f) Analyze the entire structure with a field solver to get the S -parameters at all the ports.

2) Optimize stepped impedance transmission lines on the input and output sides of the combining structure in MWO to achieve a wide matched bandwidth.

Fig. 11. Simulated and measured reflection coefficient at the central output port.

A 2-D side view of the manufactured structure is shown in Fig. 10 showing all the components of the assembly. The aluminum structure was manufactured with a CNC lathe. The probes give better bandwidth, but the diameter is limited by the outer diameter of the input feeding coaxial port of the constructed combiner is shown in Fig. 11. A matched bandwidth of 74% is achieved with a maximum return loss of -14.7 dB from 6.7 to 16.7 GHz. The difference between the simulation parameter sweep. (Optional: $\lambda/4$ can also be used for a slightly detuned performance.)

f) Analyze the entire structure with a field solver to get the S -parameters at all the ports.

2) Optimize stepped impedance transmission lines on the input and output sides of the combining structure in MWO to achieve a wide matched bandwidth.

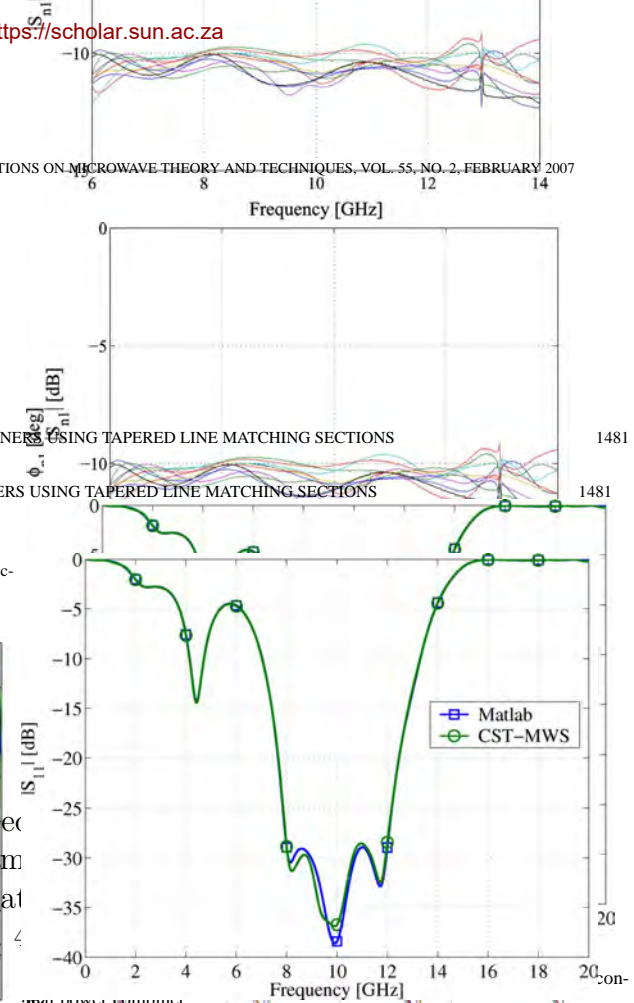
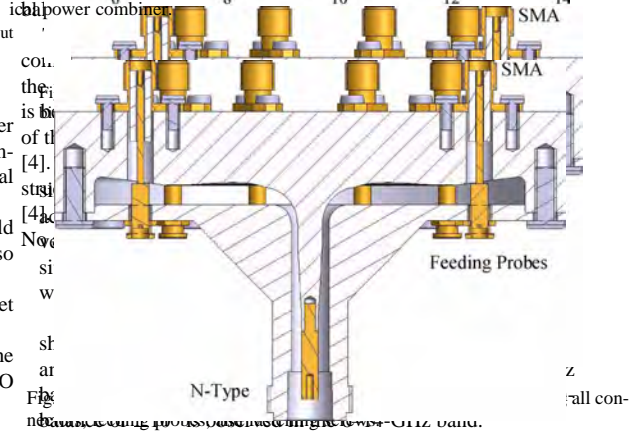


Fig. 7. Simulated reflection coefficient of a matched ten-way tapered line conical power combiner.



The simulated and measured isolation characteristics of the tapered line conical combiner are shown in Fig. 8. The simulated results show a minimum return loss of -14.7 dB from 6.7 to 16.7 GHz. The measured results show a minimum return loss of -14.7 dB from 6.7 to 16.7 GHz. The difference between the simulation parameter sweep. (Optional: $\lambda/4$ can also be used for a slightly detuned performance.)

f) Analyze the entire structure with a field solver to get the S -parameters at all the ports.

2) Optimize stepped impedance transmission lines on the input and output sides of the combining structure in MWO to achieve a wide matched bandwidth.

Fig. 8. 2-D section view of the tapered line conical combiner showing all connectors, feeding probes, and fastening screws.

The simulated and measured isolation characteristics of the tapered line conical combiner are shown in Fig. 8. The simulated results show a minimum return loss of -14.7 dB from 6.7 to 16.7 GHz. The measured results show a minimum return loss of -14.7 dB from 6.7 to 16.7 GHz. The difference between the simulation parameter sweep. (Optional: $\lambda/4$ can also be used for a slightly detuned performance.)

f) Analyze the entire structure with a field solver to get the S -parameters at all the ports.

2) Optimize stepped impedance transmission lines on the input and output sides of the combining structure in MWO to achieve a wide matched bandwidth.

reduction in the required manufacturing tolerances, and the increase in power handling capability.

1482

1482

IEEE TRANSACTIONS ON MICROWAVE THEORY AND TECHNIQUES, VOL. 56, NO. 6, JUNE 2008

IEEE TRANSACTIONS ON MICROWAVE THEORY AND TECHNIQUES, VOL. 56, NO. 6, JUNE 2008

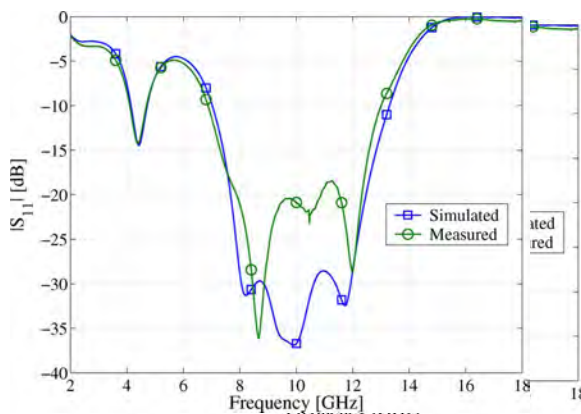


Fig. 9. Comparison between the simulated and measured reflection coefficient of a tapered line ten-way combiner.

Figure 4.19: Conical combiner measured S11 (from [82])

bandwidth of 47% is achieved with a maximum return loss of -18.5 dB from 7.7 to 12.4 GHz. This match is narrower and deeper than the previous design in [31], and is in much closer agreement to the simulated result. The non-linear response in the center of the band is due to the central coaxial line 100% type transition in the structure and the N -type SMA connector used in the measurement. These were not included in the simulation and typically have a reflection of around -20 dB.

The measured loss in this tapered line ten-way combiner is shown in Fig. 10. The simulated transmission coefficient is not shown since the simulated structure is perfectly symmetrical. A maximum amplitude imbalance of 0.7 dB and a phase imbalance of 1.5° is observed in the 8 – 12 GHz band.

The simulated and measured field distributions of the tapered line ten-way combiner are shown in Fig. 11 where good agreement between the results is demonstrated.

Fig. 12 shows the total loss of the combiner. The maximum loss in the operating band is 0.28 dB and the average loss is only 0.18 dB. The loss includes the effects of the SMA transition from the tapered line to the SMA connector, as well as the SMA 100% type transition used in the measurement setup. Again, the simulated loss is not included since the simulated structure is completely lossless.

in conical lines. A typical result for the electric field strength and peak power considerations is shown in Fig. 13.

The peak power handling capacity of transmission lines is usually limited by breakdown caused by high electric field strengths of the gas that fills the guide.

The simulated magnitudes of the E -fields, evaluated along a curve on the surface of the inner conductor of the central feed line from the central output port to one of the peripheral ports in the tapered line combiner developed here and the stepped impedance combiner in [31], are shown in Figs. 14 and 15. The length of the tapered line combiner is longer than that of the stepped impedance combiner, and the size of the central feed line is larger.

Fig. 16 clearly shows much lower peak E -field values for the tapered line combiner than those of the stepped impedance combiner. There are no sharp peaks in the E -field, except in the vicinity of the corners at the peripheral ports. The E -field value

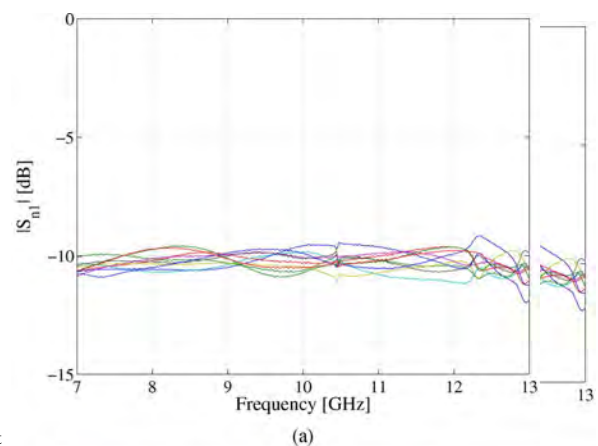


Figure 4.20: Conical combiner measured S11 (from [82])

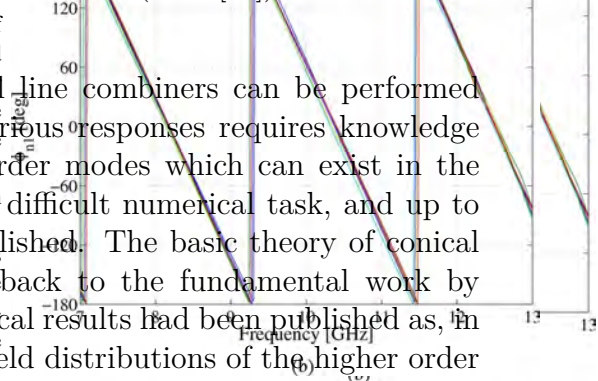


Figure 4.20: Conical combiner measured S11 (from [82])

here is, however, much lower than the peak in the central part of the combiner due to the power combining action. The peak electric field strength in the tapered line combiner is approximately one-third of that of the stepped impedance combiner for the same input power, and it can therefore be expected that the tapered line combiner has a four times greater peak power handling capability.

One of the main advantages of the tapered line combiner is the absence of sharp corners, common to EM solvers, these results should only be used in a comparative rather than a quantitative sense.

As a conclusion of the design of conical transmission line power combiners with highly predictable performance, the technique is general and may be applied to the design of similar N -way combiners.

By using simple quarter-wave length matching sections in the conical line, the impedance at the central port is raised, which allows for easier matching to the output waveguide, and more accurate construction. An optimized tapered line matching section is employed at the central output port to obtain wideband performance. The simulated peak power handling capability of the

tions in The Mathworks' MATLAB were compared to those found by *Mathematica* 4.2.1. The results of the parameters. For the associated Legendre functions of the first kind, $P_v^m(x)$, results agree to at least 11 significant digits for all arguments in the range $-1 < x < 1$, real degrees up to $v = 1000$ and integer orders up to $m = 50$. The second kind functions,

was varied between 10° and 90° and θ_1 was chosen to be 22.5° and θ_1 is varied to give line impedances of $Z_0 = 10, 25, 50, 75, 100$, and 125Ω . Roots were also computed for $\theta_2 = 90^\circ$ and $\theta_1 = 85.231^\circ$ (5Ω line impedance) for $m = 1:15$. All the results agree to at least five significant digits.

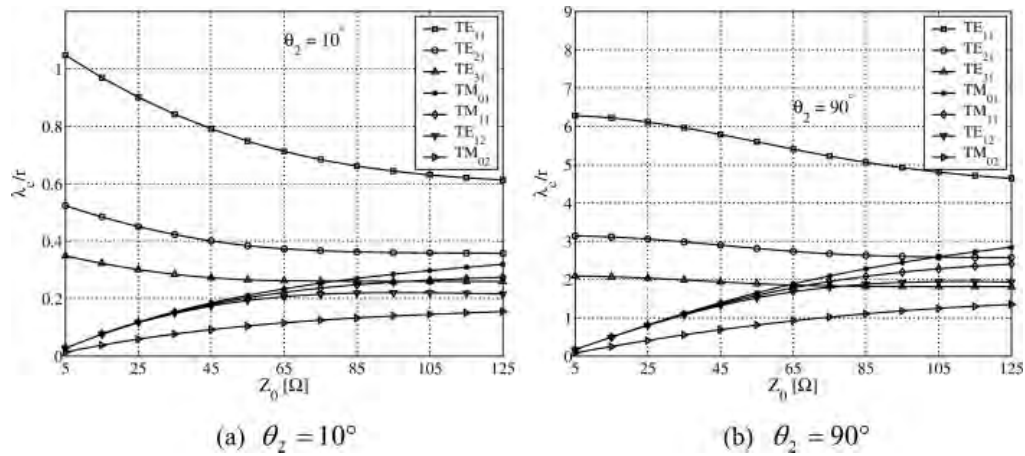


Figure 5. Normalized cutoff wavelength of higher order modes in a conical transmission line with θ_2 constrained to be fixed. **Figure 4.21:** Conical line cut-off frequencies (from [83])

The work on conical line combiners and dividers showed for the first time that the conical line, which had up to this point mostly been used as the theoretical model for dipole antennas, could be used very effectively in power combiners. The TEM characteristic of these lines makes it possible to use standard impedance matching techniques and profiles, which is a significant advantage. In addition, the frequency spacing between the fundamental mode cut-off (at DC) and that of the first higher order modes is much larger than for radial lines. The work on the calculation of the higher order modes by Dr De Villiers represented a high point of numerical mathematical algorithms in my career, with reviewers of the paper specifically pointing out the absence of work of this nature in literature, and the high quality of the mathematical and numerical innovation.

The research on conical line combiners also continued after completion of the work reported here, and formed one of the key research areas of Dr de Villiers and his research students.

4.5 Microwave Switches

One of the key components in a pulsed RADAR system is a microwave switch which can control the signal from the antenna to the receiver input port. For high power search RADAR, such a switch should in its off-state have a very large isolation to protect the high power transmitted signal from leaking through to the sensitive receiver. In its on-state, the switch should show a very low loss, as this loss directly impacts the detection range. Finally, the structure should be able to protect against power levels of several kilowatt.

To satisfy all these conditions, most high-power switches make use of waveguide technology due to its low loss and high power capability. However, to

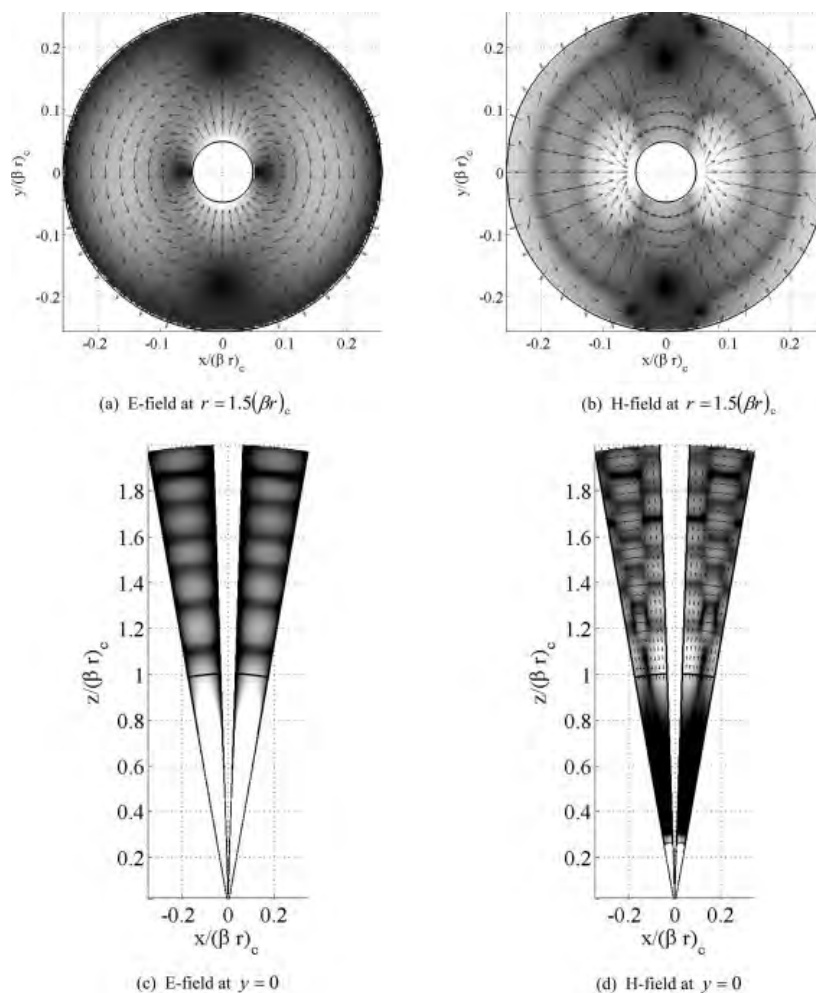


Figure 8. Normalized field patterns of the TE_{12} mode in a conical line with $\theta_2 = 10^\circ$ and $Z_0 = 100 \Omega$. **Figure 4.22:** Conical line mode pattern (from [83])

C. Higher Order Modal Cutoff Plots

In this subsection plots are shown of the normalized cutoff wavelength of some of the higher order modes in conical transmission lines. The geometries of the lines chosen together with myself and Prof. PW van der Walt, proposed a PIN-diode switching structure in evanescent mode waveguide [72], [85]. The plots are shown with either θ_2 constant and varying Z_0 or Z_0 constant and varying θ_2 , but is much more difficult to work with than for

The results in Figure 5 agree perfectly with those published in [3]. It can also be seen that for low impedance lines the TE_m modes dominate. Also note in Figure 4.23 that this structure is shown in Fig. 4.23, with the equivalent circuit for the impedance lines with a large θ_2 . These lines have a wider conductor spacing than low impedance lines of two diodes mounted back-to-back on a thick, flat conductor which extends horizontally to the waveguide wall, where it is grounded. This plate is orthogonal to the electric field of the TE_{10} -mode, and therefore does not affect the

with small θ_2 . The dominance of the TE_{m1} modes for narrow lines will be explained by some modal field waveguide is difficult, as the signal

In 2005, my PhD student Dr Thomas Sidel, together with myself and Prof. PW van der Walt, proposed a PIN-diode switching structure in evanescent mode waveguide [72], [85]. Normalized field patterns for the TE_{11} and TE_{12} modes in a conical line with $\theta_2 = 10^\circ$ and $Z_0 = 100$ are shown in Figure 8, calculated from the equations in Section 4.4.5, are shown with the 7 and 8.

The TE_{11} mode in Figure 7 is seen to have little θ variation of the θ -directed E-field and the ϕ -directed E-field. In the TE_{12} mode of Figure 8, the E-field is with ϕ directed and the equivalent circuit for the essential E-fields at the conductors are observed. TE_{mn} modes are similar to the modes shown here, but with

horizontally to the waveguide wall, where it is grounded. This plate is orthogonal to the electric field of the TE_{10} -mode, and therefore does not affect the

signal path. The direct connections between the diodes, the grounding plate, and the waveguide wall creates a path of very low thermal resistance, which allows the diodes to dissipate high heat loads. This in turn allows the switch structure to protect against very high peak and average power levels. The bias to the diodes is supplied through two thin conductors running from the non-terminated side of each diode to a small hole in the waveguide wall. As these conductors are very thin, and approximately orthogonal to the electric field, they also disturb the signal path very little.

282

IEEE TRANSACTIONS ON MICROWAVE THEORY AND TECHNIQUES, VOL. 55, NO. 2, FEBRUARY 2007

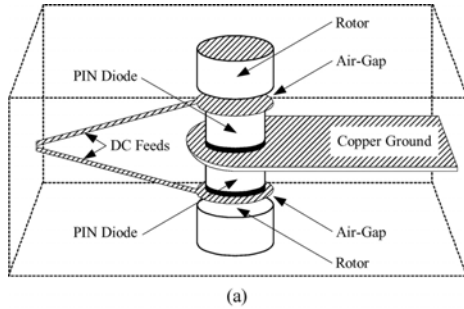


Figure 4.23: PIN diode mounting structure (from [72])

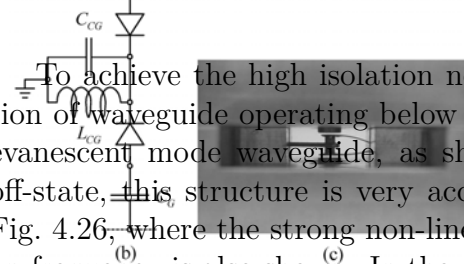


Figure 4.24: PIN diode in evanescent mode

IEEE TRANSACTIONS ON MICROWAVE THEORY AND TECHNIQUES, VOL. 55, NO. 2, FEBRUARY 2007

ating in the low-loss state, and 18-dB isolation and 1.1-dB return loss when operating in the isolation state, over a fractional BW of 15%, and 1.5-dB return loss and 1.53-dB insertion loss when operating in the low-loss state, and 24.4-dB isolation and 0.913-dB return loss when operating in the isolation state, over a fractional BW of 25%. The three-module switch produced 45.73-dB return loss and 1.23-dB insertion loss when operating in the low-loss state, and 62-dB isolation and 1.29-dB return loss when operating in the isolation state, over a fractional BW of 25%.

Figure 4.25: PIN diode in evanescent mode

The topology is based on a standard construction of two feed lines, constructed from 0.1-mm copper shimstock with added circular pads at the ends, feed dc bias to the top and bottom diodes, and a central horizontal ground extending to the waveguide wall. The circular pads serve as one side of tunable air-gap capacitors, and the diodes are mounted vertically in the center of the evanescent-mode section. By varying the length of the waveguide, the isolation state is achieved. The diodes are mounted vertically in the center of the evanescent-mode section. By varying the length of the waveguide, the isolation state is achieved. The diodes are mounted vertically in the center of the evanescent-mode section. By varying the length of the waveguide, the isolation state is achieved.

III. PRINCIPLE OF OPERATION

The mounting structure is illustrated through its application to an evanescent-mode X-band waveguide switch, as the ability to tune the capacitance is most useful in a device where the diodes are embedded in a shunt-coupled filter topology. Evanescent-mode devices were popularized by Craven and Mok in the 1970s [6], and commercially available switches operating below-cutoff have excellent wideband performance. The basic structure of an evanescent-mode switch is shown in Fig. 2. Two reduced-height X-band guides are separated by a section of the evanescent-mode guide with two diodes mounted vertically in the center of the evanescent-mode section. By varying the length

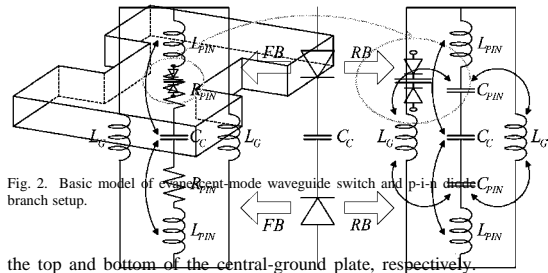


Fig. 2. Basic model of evanescent-mode waveguide switch and p-i-n diode branch setup.

the top and bottom of the central-ground plate, respectively. Feed lines, constructed from 0.1-mm copper shimstock with added circular pads at the ends, feed dc bias to the top and bottom diodes, and a central horizontal ground extending to the waveguide wall. The circular pads serve as one side of tunable air-gap capacitors, and the diodes are mounted vertically in the center of the evanescent-mode section. By varying the length of the waveguide, the isolation state is achieved.

The lumped-element model of the mount/feed structure consists of two air-gap capacitances C_G , as well as a parallel combination of C_G and L_C to model the horizontal central-ground plane. The central-ground plane is modeled by a parallel combination of C_G and L_C to model the horizontal central-ground plane. The central-ground plane is modeled by a parallel combination of C_G and L_C to model the horizontal central-ground plane. The central-ground plane is modeled by a parallel combination of C_G and L_C to model the horizontal central-ground plane.

The mobile state results in a through filter and a parallel resonator section. The mobile state results in a through filter and a parallel resonator section. The mobile state results in a through filter and a parallel resonator section. The mobile state results in a through filter and a parallel resonator section.

to tune the capacitance is most useful in a device where the diodes are embedded in a shunt-coupled filter topology. Evanescent-mode devices were popularized by Craven and Mok in the 1970s [6], and commercially available switches operating below-cutoff have excellent wideband performance. The basic structure of an evanescent-mode switch is shown in Fig. 2. Two reduced-height X-band guides are separated by a section of the evanescent-mode guide with two diodes mounted vertically in the center of the evanescent-mode section. By varying the length of the waveguide, the isolation state is achieved.

The equivalent circuit model of the complete evanescent-mode waveguide switch is shown in Fig. 3, where the central capacitance C_C and the diode capacitances C_{PIN} are modeled by a transformer of turns ratio n_{II} and susceptance B_J [7]. Brass rotors at the junctions implement the end capacitances, forming broadband resonators with the junction susceptances.

Fig. 3. Equivalent circuit model of evanescent-mode p-i-n diode switch.

When reverse biased, the capacitances of the p-i-n diodes C_{PIN} resonate in parallel with effective guide inductances L_G to form the central resonator of the filter, as shown in Fig. 4. Resonances are indicated by arrows. The diode mount creates additional capacitance C_C to resonate in series with the combined p-i-n diode inductances L_{PIN} . In the forward-bias state, the series resonance between the mount capacitance C_C and com-

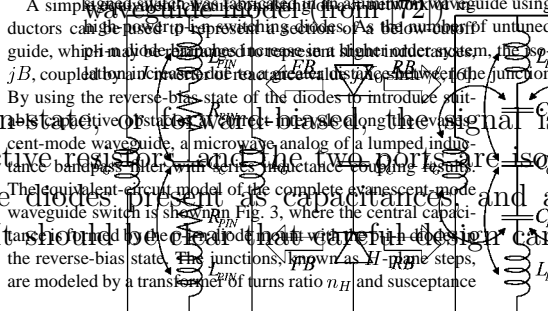


Fig. 4. Forward- and reverse-bias conditions of p-i-n diode branch.

jB_J [7]. Brass rotors at the junctions implement the end capacitances, forming broadband resonators with the junction susceptances.

When reverse biased, the capacitances of the p-i-n diodes C_{PIN} resonate in parallel with effective guide inductances L_G to form the central resonator of the filter, as shown in Fig. 4. Resonances are indicated by arrows. The diode mount creates additional capacitance C_C to resonate in series with the combined p-i-n diode inductances L_{PIN} . In the forward-bias state, the series resonance between the mount capacitance C_C and com-

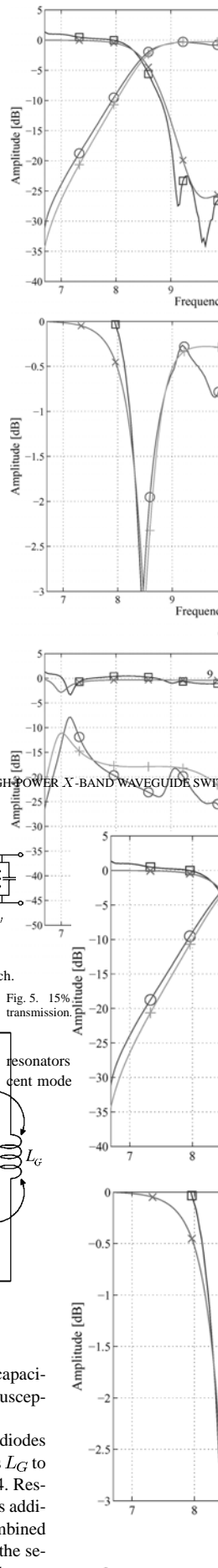


Fig. 5. 15% transmission.

CHAPTER 4. PASSIVE DEVICES

incorporate such capacitances into a filter to create a pass-band with very low loss and low response is very sensitive to the exact capacitor diode mounting structures often create filter aspects of the mounting structure proposed above each diode, with a tuning screw the gap presents as a series capacitor in the manufacturing fine-tuning of each equivalent structure apart, a so-called *in-situ* tuning, therefore be obtained.

The assembly drawing of a third order switch order filter was also constructed, and the measurements. Fig. 4.28 shows 60dB of isolation forward-biased, across the X-band. Such an using standard waveguide.

IEEE TRANSACTIONS ON MICROWAVE THEORY AND TECHNIQUES, VOL. 55, NO. 2, FEBRUARY 2007

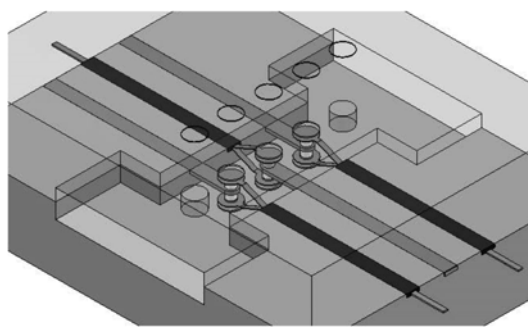
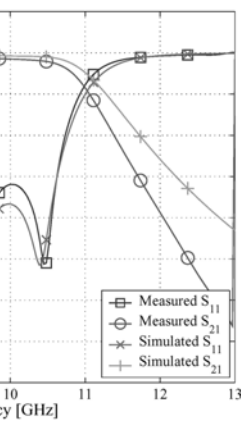


Fig. 7. Fifth-order switch.

Figure 4.27: Third order switch

construction (from [72]) were performed using CST Microwave Studio and AWR Microwave Office.

The evanescent guide length on either side of the diode may be changed to control the BW of the structure. The first single-mount switch achieved a fractional BW of 15% in the 15% BW structure with 22-dB insertion loss and 18-dB isolation. The second single-mount switch achieved a fractional BW of 25% with 25-dB return loss and 15-dB insertion loss when operating in the low-loss state, and 18-dB isolation and 1.53-dB return loss when operating in the isolation state, as shown in Fig. 5, and the second single-mount switch achieved a fractional BW of 25% with 25-dB return loss and 1.53-dB insertion loss when operating in the low-loss state, and 1.53-dB insertion loss and 0.943-dB return loss when operating in the isolation state.

An important part of the complete switch is the power handling capability. High-power signals being shorted through the forward-biased diodes create large currents, which in turn create large amounts of heat in the diodes. A significant part of the design was therefore the development of an accurate thermal model, which not only includes thermal resistance, but also thermal capacitance. Especially the latter is of very high importance in pulsed systems.

Good insertion- and return-loss characteristics when operating in the low-loss and isolation states, respectively, as well as a high-power handling capability, were the primary design goals. A variable choice in the implementation of a higher order switch structure.

Such a model, together with both high and low power measurements, was published in [86]. Some of the results, showing model response and measured

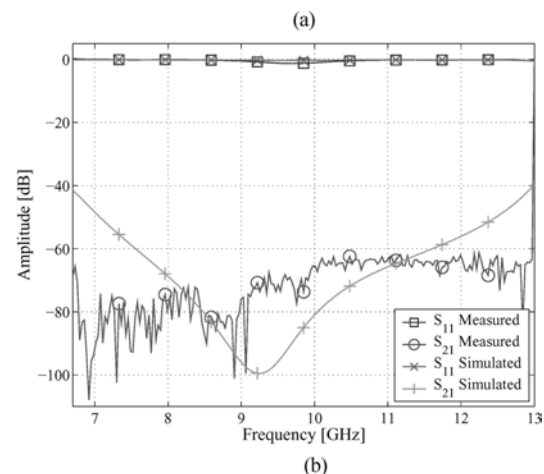
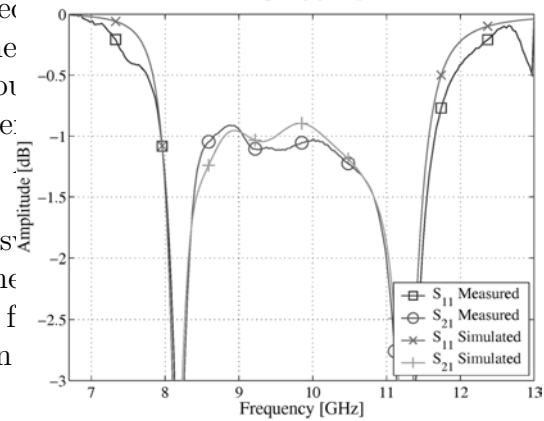
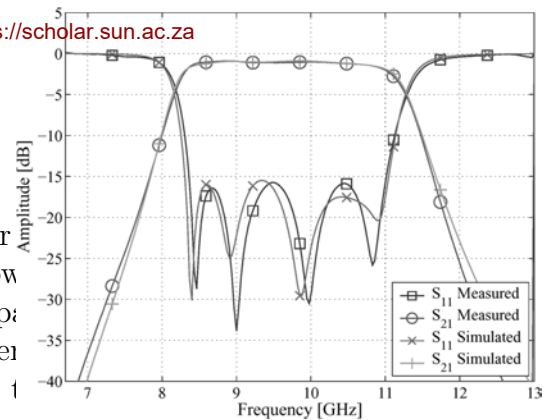
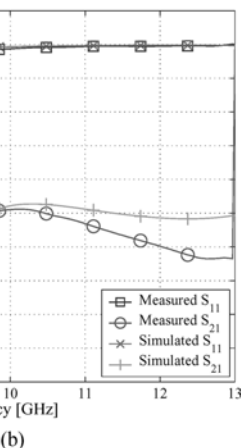


Figure 4.28: Fifth order switch at 11 GHz. Fifth-order switch—measurement versus theory. (a) Switch transmission (from [72])

Fig. 8(b), the relatively simple equivalent-circuit model is unable to accurately model the measured response.

Note the excellent return loss characteristics across the entire X-band loss. This was only possible due to the use of the equivalent-circuit model.

The power handling capability of the switch.

High-power signals being shorted through the forward-biased diodes create large currents, which in turn create large amounts of heat in the diodes. A significant part of the design was therefore the development of an accurate thermal model, which not only includes thermal resistance, but also thermal capacitance. Especially the latter is of very high importance in pulsed systems.

Good insertion- and return-loss characteristics when operating in the low-loss and isolation states, respectively, as well as a high-power handling capability, were the primary design goals. A variable choice in the implementation of a higher order switch structure.

Such a model, together with both high and low power measurements, was published in [86]. Some of the results, showing model response and measured

the proposed diode of the resonant frequency and feed lines entering the guide, perpendicular switches show good over a relatively wide achieves an isolation measured band (6.7 – state, and 15.73-dB return a fractional BW of 2

The mount displays properties between the diodes successful reflection of for a 24-μs pulsed topology has only been tures, however, it may structures with minor

The proposed diode of the resonant frequency and feed lines entering the guide, perpendicular switches show good over a relatively wide achieves an isolation measured band (6.7 – state, and 15.73-dB return a fractional BW of 2

The mount displays properties between the diodes successful reflection of for a 24-μs pulsed topology has only been tures, however, it may structures with minor

The authors wish to thank (CST), Darmstadt, (AWR), El Segundo, as W. Croukamp and Iese Dienste (SED), South Africa, for making

- [1] J. White, *Microwave*, White, 1995.
- [2] R. Dawson and B. "switch," in *IEEE*, 66.1.
- [3] P. Bakeman, Jr., "width, X-band wave-crow. *Symp. Dig.*
- [4] B. Sarkar, "Biased MTT-S Int. *Micro*
- [5] H. Meinel and B. tors and switches, 249–252, 79.1.
- [6] G. Craven and C. bandpass filters for *Trans. Microw. T*, 1971.
- [7] L. Lewin, *Advances* Sons, 1951.



CHAPTER 4. PASSIVE DEVICES

SICKEL *et al.*: *in situ* TUNABLE DIODE MOUNTING TOPOLOGY FOR HIGH-POWER X-

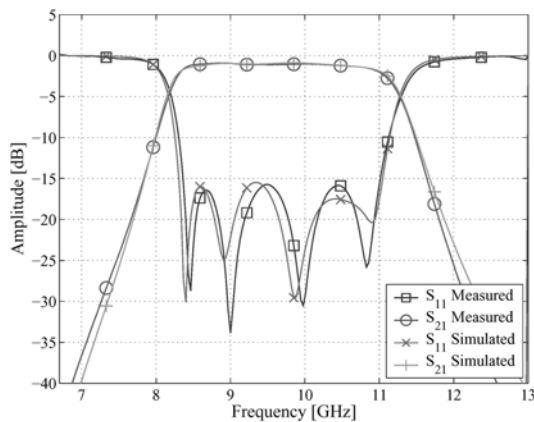


Figure 4.29: Fifth order switch in filter mode (from [72])

response, are shown in Fig. 4.31 for a low power, 1 microsecond pulse at a 10% duty cycle, and in Fig. 4.32 for an 8kW, 25 microsecond pulse at a 5% duty cycle. It is clear that the high power measurements show much higher peak temperatures for the model than in measurement. This can be attributed to a difficult-to-model increase of the I-region thermal capacitance at high peak powers. For the average temperature predictions however, the difference between the model and the measurements was only 11 degrees in the high power test. In all, the switch performed well at the 8kW peak power level.

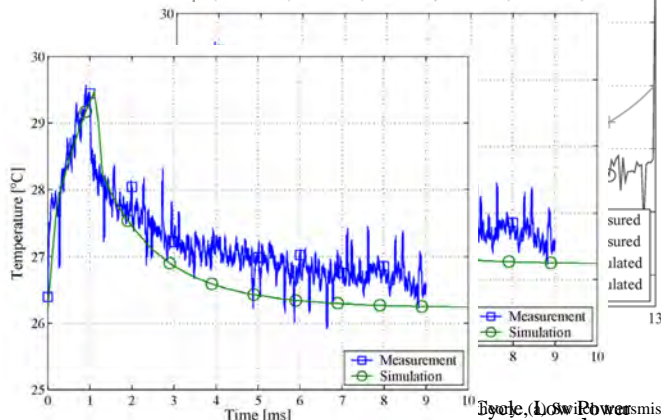


Figure 4.31: Low power test results (from [72])

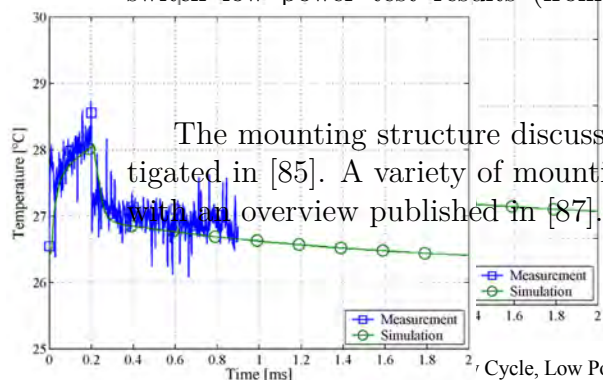


Figure 4.32: High power test results (from [72])

The mounting structure discussed above was investigated in [85]. A variety of mounting structures with an overview published in [87].

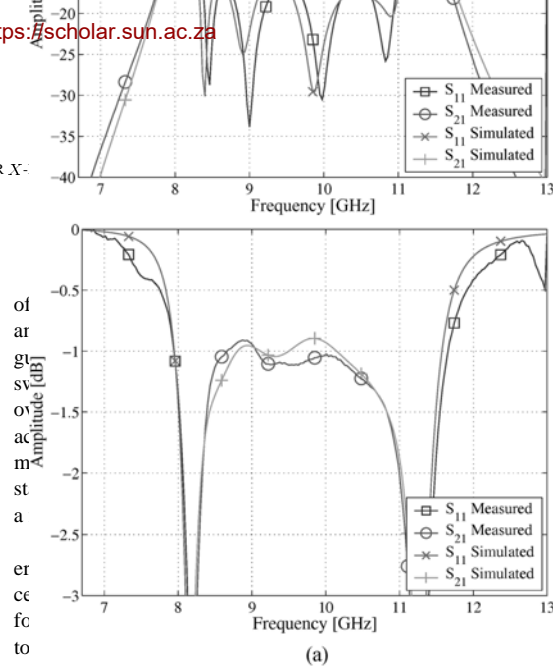


Figure 4.30: Fifth order switch at attenuation in filter mode (from [72])

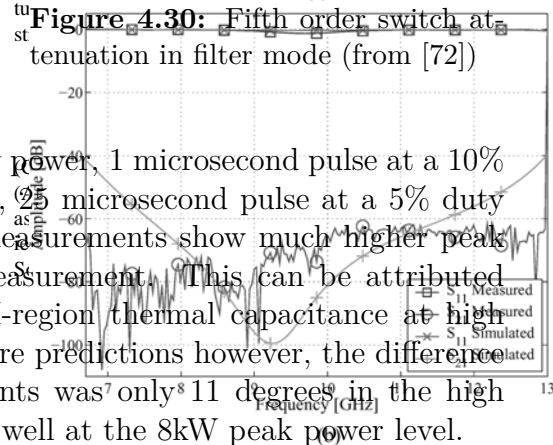


Figure 4.33: High power test results (from [72])

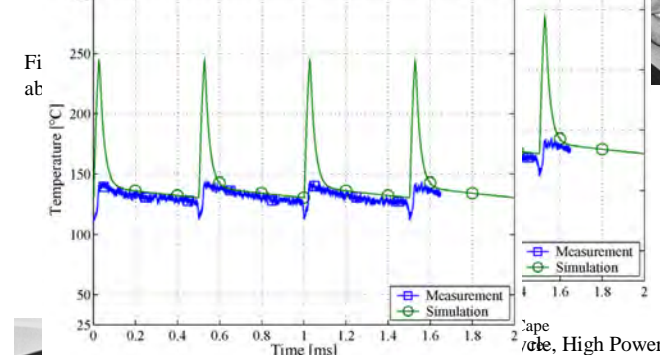


Figure 4.34: High power test results (from [72])

The authors wish to thank the National Research Foundation (NRF) of South Africa, the Wilhelm Frank Trust and Reutech Radar Systems (RRS) for support during the period of research.

ACKNOWLEDGEMENT

REFERENCES

achieves an isolation measured band (6.7 — state, and 15.73-dB re a fractional BW of 21 The mount displays eries between the dio cessful reflection of a for a 24-μs pulsewidth topology has only been tures, however, it may structures with minor

- [1] J. White, *Microwa* White, 1995.
- [2] R. Dawson and B. switch," in *IEEE M* 66.1.
- [3] P. Bakeman, Jr. ar width, X-band way crow. *Symp. Dig.*,
- [4] B. Sarkar, "Biased MTT-S Int. *Microw*
- [5] H. Meinel and B. tors and switches," 249–252, 79.1.
- [6] G. Craven and C. bandpass filters fo *Trans. Microw. Th* 1971.
- [7] L. Lewin, *Advanc* Sons, 1951.



T Co S E re v D in p

The work on the evanescent mode waveguide switch was my first work on devices using high-power diode control elements. Commercially, these switches are produced in very low numbers, at high cost, and for the specific requirement this work was aimed at, only one company globally was prepared to quote at the time. The successful completion of this product, and its subsequent introduction into the RADAR systems of the local sponsoring company, made this research some of the most directly applicable industry-related work of my career.

4.6 Conclusion

My research on passive devices has formed a significant part of my overall work. Being very closely coupled to local industry and its requirements, this work also created the need for a number of other research topics over the years, such as my work on modelling, optimisation and so forth. Throughout my career I have found that some of the most challenging research topics stem from industry products, as commercial systems in most cases require the satisfaction of a huge number of requirements - not only electrical, but also mechanical and thermal, with spatial and weight constraints typically very important. As such, this research often calls for high levels of originality, combined with very practical constraints.

Chapter 5

Antennas, Antenna Feeds, and Mixed-Mode Formulations

5.1 Introduction

For most of my career, my work was primarily aimed at microwave receiver subsystems, and stopped short of antennas. Due to the close integration between the filtering subsystems and the antenna feed in typical receivers and transmitters, antenna feeds however also on occasion formed part of my work up to 2012. In 2013, my research focus took a quite dramatic turn towards actual antennas, through my involvement with the Square Kilometre Array (SKA) project. Especially my involvement in higher order modes on guided structures would prove to be very useful in this area, and lead to various projects utilising the modal characteristics of structures in antenna and antenna feed design.

5.2 X-band monopulse waveguide feed

My first project on antenna feeds stemmed directly from my work on Mode-Matching and waveguide filter design, and involved the design of a waveguide feed for an X-band reflector antenna system for monopulse RADAR in 1999. In these systems, a number of waveguide feeds are typically first combined into one overmoded waveguide, which terminates in the radiating aperture. Using three specific combinations of excitations at the four waveguide ports, a single mode is excited in the radiating aperture in each case. For the excitations shown in Fig. 5.1 for instance, the TE_{10} , TE_{20} and TE_{11} modes are respectively excited, which in turn radiate in what is called the plus, elevation and azimuth modes.

One of main the problems with the design of these types of feed in the late 1990's, was the achievement of good input match across a wide band for all three excitations. At the time, the state-of-the-art was a system with an input match of -18dB for all three excitations, over a bandwidth of only 10%.

CHAPTER 5. ANTENNAS, ANTENNA FEEDS, AND MIXED-MODE FORMULATIONS

89

The fundamental problem in reaching the objective of low input reflection, is of course that one physical structure, i.e. the overmoded waveguide, has to match three different terminating impedances to the impedance of the source guide – one for each mode. In addition, each excitation generates a different mode of the overmoded guide, each of which has a different terminating impedance. This is a classical optimisation problem, which, given the analysis software available at the time, was simply intractable.

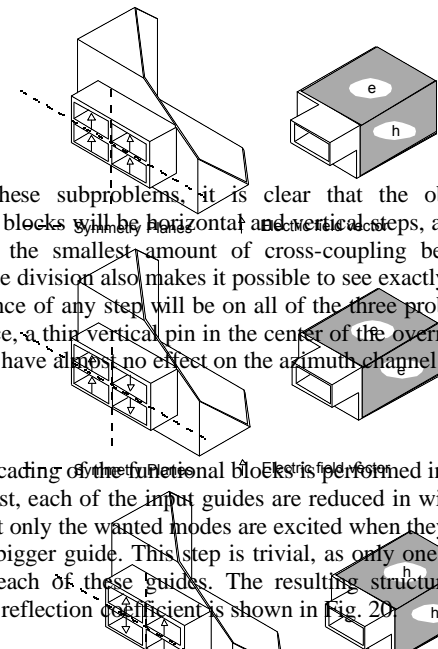


Figure 20: Reduction in Width of Input Guides

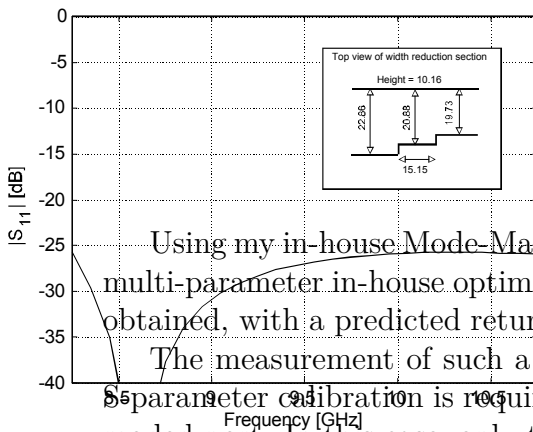


Figure 21: Monopulse Feed structure (from [45])

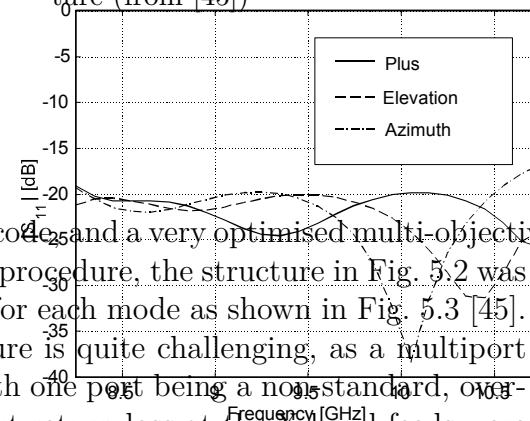


Figure 22: Predicted Results for Monopulse Feed

The next stage is to cascade a number of vertical steps to remove the vertical wall separating the guides. These blocks affect the plus and elevation channels in the same way, with a relatively small effect on the azimuth channel. The final stage is to cascade a number of horizontal steps to remove the horizontal wall separating the guides. These steps have a negligible influence on the elevation channel, and a smaller effect on the other two channels. Both these stages are performed by optimising all three problems together.

D. Results

The final feed structure is shown in Fig. 21, with the calculated results shown in Fig. 22. An input match of better than 19dB is achieved over a 20% band. At the time of publication, measured results are not yet available.

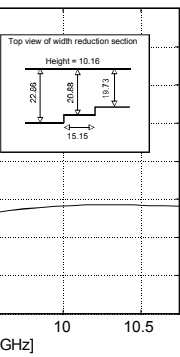
ACKNOWLEDGEMENT

The authors acknowledge Mr. Wessel Croukamp, who was responsible for the construction of all of the prototypes.

blocks is performed in three
sides are reduced in width to
s are excited when they open
is trivial, as only one mode
The resulting structure and
shown in Fig. 20.

FORMULATIONS

Figure 21: Monopulse Feed



Width of Input Guides

number of vertical steps to
ing the guides. These blocks
nels in the same way, with a
uth channel. The final stage
zontal steps to remove the
ides. These steps have a big
1, and a smaller effect on the
e stages are performed by
ther.

shown in Fig. 21, with the
22. An input match of better
20% band. At the time of
not yet available.

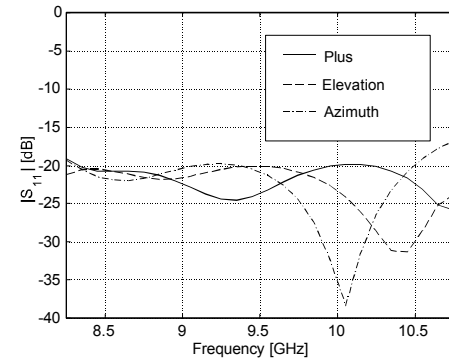


Figure 22: Predicted Results for Monopulse Feed

Figure 5.3: Monopulse feed predicted modal return loss (from [45])

A number of designs have been presented to illustrate an approach to the design of devices utilising multiple propagating modes. All the designs are based on the identification of a device designs. Numerical designs functional understanding of the problem.

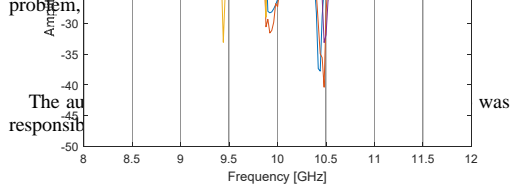


Figure 5.5: Monopulse feed azimuth channel return loss

NA FEEDS, AND MIXED-MODE

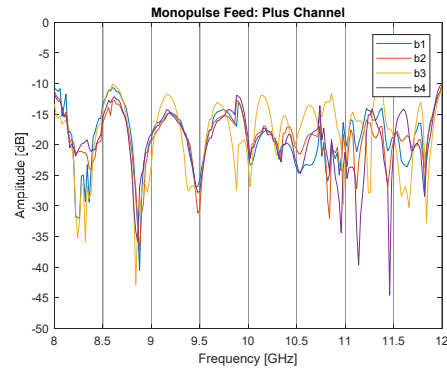


Figure 5.4: Monopulse feed plus channel return loss

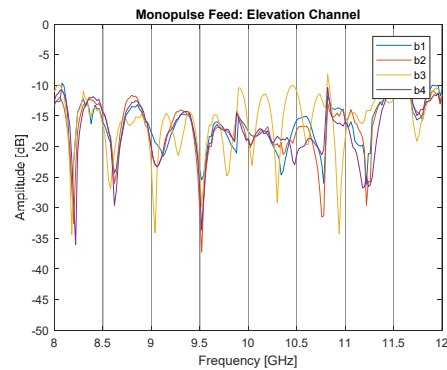


Figure 5.6: Monopulse feed elevation channel return loss

It is however clear that good return loss is measured for each port of each channel over the full X-band of 8-12GHz, or a 40% bandwidth.

These results represented a factor of four improvement in bandwidth over the state-of-the-art, and provided validation of the analysis and optimisation techniques developed in-house. This type of antenna, which has different radiation patterns for different excitation combinations, would later become part of a class of antennas which currently is called multi-mode antennas, and the expertise gained in this project would prove to be extremely useful two decades later.

5.3 The Square Kilometre Array Antenna

Many years would pass before I would become involved in antenna work again. The event which would trigger this was the SKA initiative which started in the early 2000's, with the aim of creating the world's largest radio-astronomy

antenna - one with an effective receiving aperture of one square kilometre. Such a telescope would enable radio astronomy science at a completely new level of sensitivity.

The project was of particular interest to South Africa, as we have some of the most easily accessible radio-quiet zones in the world in a semi-desert region known as the Karoo. In order to convince the international SKA steering group of the viability of situating the antenna system in South Africa, the South African Department of Science and Technology (DST) approved the biggest funding for a single science project in the history of the country, with the aim of building a pathfinder antenna array on the proposed site. The name of the first phase of seven large dishes was proposed as the Karoo Array Telescope, or KAT-7. This phase was extended to 64 dishes, with the new name of MEERKAT. (In Afrikaans, 'meer' means more, thus literally 'more KAT', but a meerkat is also a small rodent which is unique to Africa.) Both KAT-7 and MEERKAT were fully designed and constructed locally, using local engineers, companies and universities.

At the time of writing, the main SKA site has been confirmed as the Karoo, and phase 1 of the SKA is starting construction. By some coincidence, on this day of writing, i.e. Friday 13 July 2018, the full MEERKAT array was inaugurated in a ceremony at the site close to Carnarvon - a historic moment for South African engineering and science. The partially completed telescope has been in operation for science work for almost a year already, and the first science paper was published early in 2018. A recent photograph is shown in Fig. 5.7.



Figure 5.7: The MEERKAT antenna array

Alongside the actual technical project, the DST also launched an SKA focused human capital development programme, which currently supports on

the order of 100 postgraduate students in the country. The SKA programme has had a significant influence on the research landscape in South Africa, and has been a focal point of government funding.

My own involvement in the SKA project has been substantial, both on the technical side with the development of receiver subsystems for KAT-7 and MEERKAT, and on the research side. Through my own efforts and that of my colleagues Profs David Davidson and Howard Reader, our department developed very strong ties with the South African SKA office, and currently have three staff positions funded in this way - one being a full research chair which forms part of the South African research Chairs' Initiative (SARCHI), a highly prestigious position.

The involvement with the SKA project caused me for the first time to broaden my research interest to include antennas and antenna systems. Two areas were of specific interest to SKA, namely wideband waveguide feeds for reflector antennas (SKA Phase 1 and 2), and small, inexpensive, lower frequency antenna elements which could be used as part of an array of thousands of fixed antennas (the SKA Mid-Frequency Aperture Array, or MFAA). In 2013, in cooperation with Profs Marianna Ivashina and Rob Maaskant from Chalmers University in Gothenburgh, I and two of my PhD students started on what would be my first serious antenna research.

5.4 Multi-mode antennas and mixed-mode systems

5.4.1 Dual-mode antennas

The first of these projects ran from 2013 to 2015 with my PhD student Dr David Prinsloo, co-supervised by the Chalmers group, and focused on developing a stationary antenna element to form part of the MFAA [88]. As stationary elements rotate with the earth, maximum observation times are directly dependent on the field-of-view of each element, with the ideal element having a $\pm 90^\circ$ coverage from zenith. In radio astronomy, images are created by integrating for long periods (hours) while looking at a fixed point in the sky, therefore longer observation times yield better results. Antenna elements with fields-of-view approaching a full hemisphere are however very rare, with the quadrifilar helix being the best option at that time.

The first attempt at creating an element with a hemispherical field-of-view, was reported in [89], and is shown in Fig. 5.8. The antenna consists of a double-sided substrate, with on one side a narrow section of groundplane, connected to a single, open-circuited quarter-wave line. On the other side of the substrate, a balanced folded dipole structure is implemented. Only the two lines feeding the dipole are excited with respect to the narrow groundplane. Two possible orthogonal excitations can be used, i.e. a *common mode* and a *differential*

the simulated results, deviating by a maximum of 1.3 dB for scan angles from zenith to $\pm 60^\circ$. Note that the loss in CM gain, seen when comparing Figs. 4 and 6, is due to the finite ground plane used for the physical antenna.

4 VERIFICATION RESULTS

4.1 Simulated Results

The antenna design described in Sec. 3 is analysed with an infinite ground plane in both the SE and MM excitation configurations, using CST MICROWAVE STUDIO[®]. Using (1), the equivalent DM and CM EEPs of the antenna can be determined from the SE EEPs shown in Fig. 3. The transformed E - and H -plane EEPs are compared to the MM EEPs, simulated with DM and CM excitations, in Figs. 4(a) and (b), respectively. It is clear from Fig. 4 that (1) provides a near exact solution for the MM EEPs of the antenna.

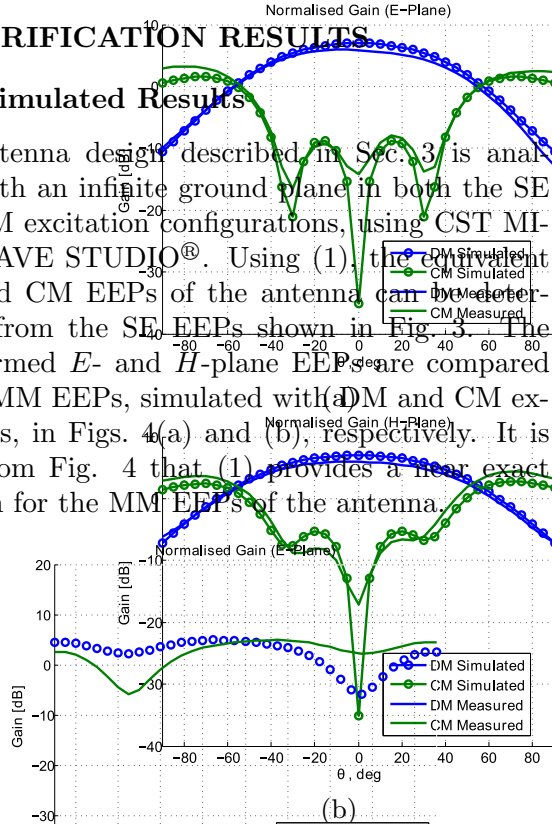


Figure 3: Measured and simulated antenna gain (a) E -plane and (b) H -plane.

5 CONCLUSION

A dual-mode antenna allowing both DM and CM excitations has been presented. Unlike conventional differentially excited antennas, the designed port from each feed line to ground (the centrally located differential feed) utilizes CM propagation in order to increase the coverage of the antenna. The MM performance of the antenna can be solved from a standard mixed-mode S-parameter theory by describing, designing and modeling them in terms of these modes, using for instance mixed-mode S-parameters, impedances, patterns, gains etc. However, the theory at the time for the analysis of receiver systems made no provision for this, being only formulated in terms of single-ended ports.

Figure 3: Simulated and measured antenna gain (a) E -plane and (b) H -plane.

As illustrated conceptually in Fig. 1, Fig. 4 shows that DM and CM excitations realise dipole over-ground and monopole beam patterns, respectively. The sharp decrease in gain of the DM EEP, seen for scan angles greater than 60° , can therefore be prevented by applying a CM excitation. By solving the respective MM complex beam forming weights the antenna gain (4) can be maximised for each scan angle. The optimally combined E - and H -plane gain (DM + CM), shown in Fig. 4, can be seen to follow the DM EEP for $0^\circ \leq \theta \leq 60^\circ$, from where the DM gain decreases significantly. For scan angles $60^\circ \leq \theta \leq 90^\circ$ the combined gain follows the CM EEP closely. Note that the combined E -

- [1] R. T. Schilizzi *et al.* (2007, Dec.) Preliminary specifications for the square kilometre array. *100th IEEE Symposium*. [Online]. Available: <http://www.skatelescope.org/PDF/memos/>
- [2] Garcia-Munoz *et al.*, "Fida3: A novel active array design for the mid-frequency range of the square kilometre array," in *Antennas and Propagation (EuCAP), 2010 Proceedings of the 4th European Conference on*, pp. 1–4.
- [3] A. Faulkner *et al.* (2010, Apr.) The aperture array for the ska: the skads white paper. [Online]. Available: <http://www.skatelescope.org/publications>
- [4] A. Brown *et al.*, "Wideband planar phased arrays for the square kilometre array," in *Phased Array Systems and Technology (ARRAY), 2010 IEEE International Symposium on*, Oct., pp. 616–623.
- [5] E. de Lera Acedo *et al.*, "Study and design of a differentially fed tapered slot antenna array," *Antennas and Propagation, IEEE Transactions on*, vol. 58, no. 78, Jan. 2010.
- [6] S. G. Hay and J. J. O'Donnell, "Analysis of common-mode effects in a dual-polarized planar connected-array antenna," *Radio Science*, vol. 43, no. RS6S04, pp. 1–9, Dec. 2008.

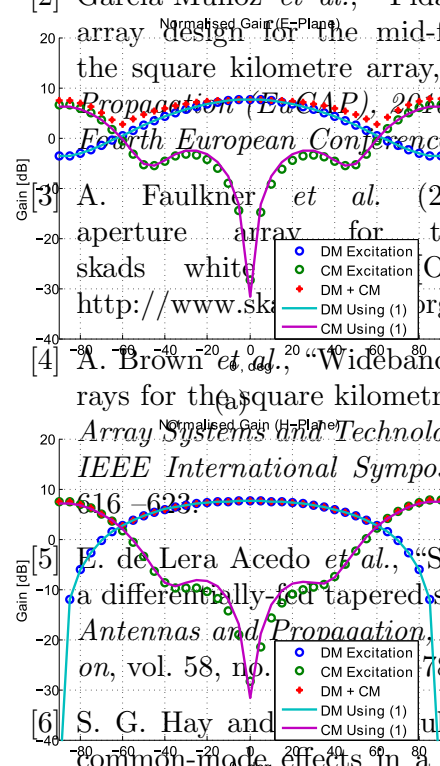


Figure 4: Simulated and transformed MM embedded element patterns (a) E -plane and (b) H -plane with maximized gain per scan angle.

plane gain shown in Fig. 4(a) is greater than either DM or CM gains for scan angles larger than $\pm 20^\circ$ from zenith, whereas the combined H -plane gain (DM + CM) is greater than the DM gain from 0° to 60° . This shows the DM EEP is not a good indicator of the combined gain. The result of variation of the combined DM and CM gain is shown to be less than 5 dB in both planes.

4.2 Measured Results

The antenna has S-parameters and gain in the antenna is fixed to a circular ground plane with a diameter of 500 mm. The S-parameters of the MM antenna are obtained by applying the transformation in (3) to the measured SE antenna S-matrix. Fig. 5 shows that the transformed (measured) DM and CM return loss of the antenna agrees well with the simulated MM return loss.

Gain measurements are performed by exciting each of the SE ports individually, while terminating the remaining port in a 50Ω load. The MM EEPs of the antenna can then be solved from the SE measurements using the transformations in (1). Figs. 6(a) and (b) compare the measured E - and H -plane gain of the antenna to simulated results. The measured gains show good agreement with

verified experimentally. Whilst demonstrating the viability of a dual-mode antenna, the antenna exhibits limited bandwidth and significant sensitivity variation over the limited bandwidth and significant sensitivity variation over the FoV. The present paper proposes an improved dual-mode antenna design. The proposed antenna exhibits improved bandwidth and sensitivity variation over the FoV and receiving sensitivity variation over the FoV.

A. Dual-Mode Antenna Design

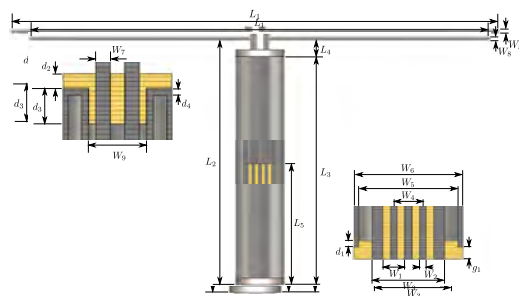


Figure 5.12: Dual mode antenna -

Figure 5.12: Dual mode antenna -

second prototype (from [90])

TABLE I CYLINDRICAL DUAL-MODE ANTENNA DESIGN PARAMETERS.		
Parameter	Value [mm]	Description
L	1.45	Dipole length
L_{2-3}	1.50	Dipole Monopole height
L_{2-3}	70	Dipole Monopole separation
L_{2-3}	5	Coaxial conductor diameter
W_1	9.9	Feed ground shield outer diameter
W_2	10	Feed ground shield outer diameter
W_3	10	Feed ground shield outer diameter
W_4	13.66	Monopole sleeve outer diameter
W_5	28	Monopole inner conductor diameter
W_6	1.15	Monopole feed line outer diameter
W_7	82	Twixmax inner conductor diameter
W_8	82	Twixmax ground shield inner diameter
d_1	52	Twixmax feed line inner conductor diameter
d_2	52	Twixmax ground shield inner diameter
d_3	52	Twixmax feed line inner conductor diameter
d_4	52	Twixmax ground shield inner diameter

The improved dual-mode antenna is realized by combining

For cylindrical dielectric and strong magnetic materials, the improved dual-mode antenna is realized by combining the advantages of both monopole and dipole antennas. The improved dual-mode antenna is realized by a single balanced transmitting mode antenna, and the number of modes of the improved dual-mode antenna is increased by increasing the balanced dunnits. Based on this technique, the dipole element is used to achieve the center slot antenna, it is convenient to cut into the dipole element, and then the monopole is realized by folding the ground, connecting back to the transmission line, as is done in the planar design [13]. The improved antenna is a linear antenna with four designs of the ground plane (a). To keep the monopole sleeve in place, towards the ground plane, a feeding slot is cut into the center of the monopole, and the spacing and width of the feed are given the same. The antenna is fed by two $50\ \Omega$ millimeter-wave coaxial ground plane (b). To keep the monopole sleeve in place,

a small Teflon spacer is placed in the foot of the antenna. The antenna is excited through two 3 mm semi-rigid coaxial

Copyright (c) 2014 IEEE. Personal use is permitted. For any other purposes, permission must be obtained from the IEEE by emailing pubs_permissions@ieee.org.

radio astronomy, is the so-called *Intrinsic Cross-Polarisation Ratio (IXR)* as

defined by Carozzi and Wean in 2011. In addition to the proposal of the

improved antenna structure, [91] evaluated the performance of the antenna in terms of the IXR. For each scan angle, a set of beam-forming weights are calculated to optimise the IXR. These sets are different than those required for maximum gain in a specified scan angle, as is shown in Fig. 5.19, where the calculated gain is shown for each scan angle when beamforming for maximum gain, and maximum IXR respectively. Fig. 5.20 shows the difference in IXR

cables extending midway into the antenna feed, from which point the center conductors of the twinaxial feed cables extend the further to form an air-core twinaxial transmission line. Each end of the feed cables is terminated with a 50-ohm load. To ensure the stability of the center conductors of the twinaxial transmission line, another center spacer is placed at the top of the transmission line sleeve. The center spacer is placed at the top of the sleeve, and the sleeve is terminated with a 50-ohm load. The design parameters illustrated in Fig. 5 summarize the antenna design parameters illustrated in Fig. 5.

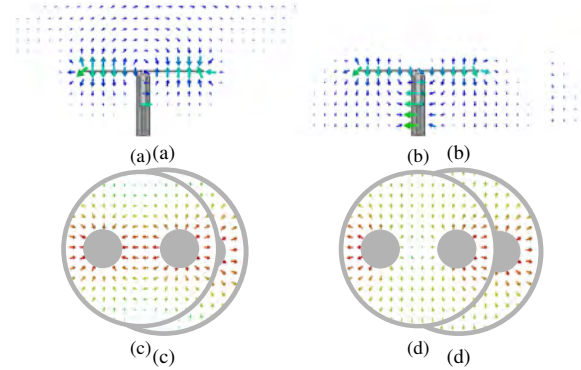


Fig. 6. Simulated electric field distributions (a) DM antenna near field (b) CM antenna near field (c) DM port excitation (d) CM port excitation.

Figure 5.13: Modal excitations (a) CM antenna near field (c) DM port excitation (d) CM port excitation

Fig. 6 illustrates the MM operation of the antenna topology, shown in Fig. 5, simulated over an infinite ground plane using CEEM [90]. (a) Differential mode (b) Common mode

CSF: The FDM field distribution in the balanced transmission line feed [c.f. Fig. 6(c)] is seen to excite the dipole arms out of phase, realizing a typical dipole radiated electric near field [c.f. Fig. 6(a)]. A CM excitation realizes the field distribution of the feed as depicted in Fig. 6(d) and is shown to excite full-dipole arms in-phase, thereby realizing a monopole-like radiation pattern. The results in Fig. 5.15 showed

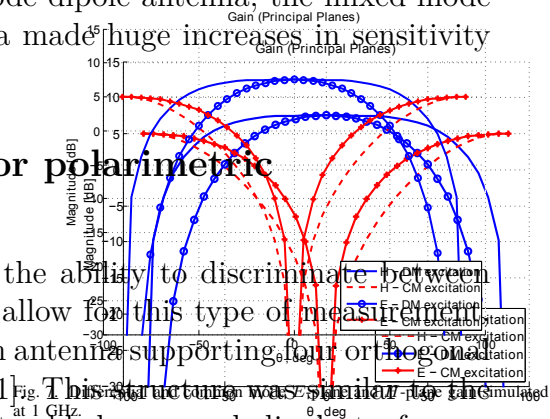


Fig. 1. Dispersion and attenuation of the TE_{10} wave in the AlN -plane gain simulator at 1 GHz.

Fig. 7. 7 shows the normalized E -plane and H -plane main gain patterns resulting from the DM and CM excitations depicted

Fig. 6. The curves in Fig. 7 clearly illustrate that a typical dipole over-ground radiation pattern is realized by a DM excitation, and that a DM excitation results in monopole over-ground radiation pattern for conical excitation.

own in Fig. 5.18, a CM excitation results in a mono-over-ground radiation pattern.

Permission must be obtained from the IEEE by emailing puls-permissions@ieee.org.

c Cross-Polarisation Ratio (IXR) as

In addition to the proposal of the

ed the performance of the antenna, a set of beam-forming weights are used that are different than those required for omnidirectional operation, as is shown in Fig. 5.19, where the main beam is steered to the angle θ_{max} when beamforming for maximum radiation. Fig. 5.20 shows the difference in IXR

CHAPTER 5. ANTENNAS, ANTENNA FEEDS, AND MIXED-MODE FORMULATIONS

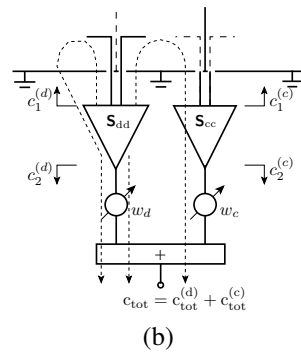
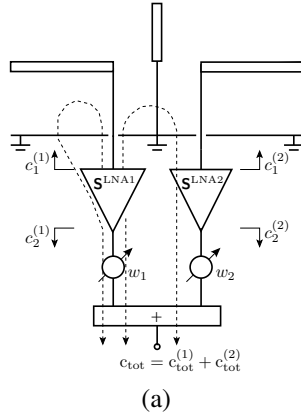


Figure 5.14: Dual mode receiver (a) Common mode (b) Differential mode (from [90])

obtained by a normal crossed-dipole antenna, and the QMA shows excellent IXR over a wide bandwidth. The development of the QMA concept was to continue for a number of years in a quest for wider bandwidth, and to better control the matching of the common mode. Firstly, the crossed dipole was replaced by an etched, crossed bow-tie antenna, and the cylindrical sheath by a conical one, as shown in Fig. 5.21, and then a tapered-slot antenna was implemented in the gaps between the bow-ties, as shown in Fig. 5.23. From Figs. 5.22 and 5.24, it is clear that both modifications improved the matching bandwidth, but that the addition of the TSA was the final required step to create a QMA with all four modes matched over a wide bandwidth.

5.4.4 Further improvements

These antennas were evaluated for different beam-forming strategies in [94], manufacturability [92], and quality of IXR [93]. In terms of radio astronomy

the E - and H -planes, of the MM receiver is compared to the sensitivity of a conventional differential receiver in Figs. 13(a) and (b), respectively.

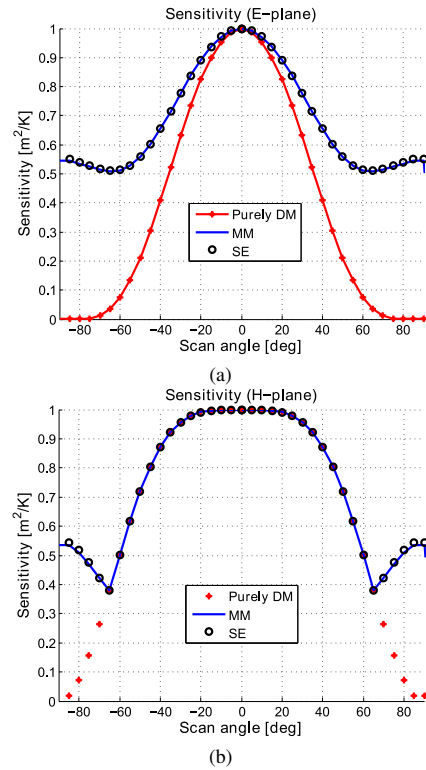


Figure 5.15: Sensitivity (a) E -plane (b) H -plane (from [90])

Fig. 13(b) illustrates the increase in the equivalent noise temperature attributed to the CM present in the MM receiver, the utilization of CM propagation can result in an increase in the sensitivity over the entire FoV coverage when compared to the conventional receivers where CM is completely rejected. It is clear that the variation in sensitivity of less than 50% in the E - and 60% in the H -plane. A comparison between the variation in sensitivity in Fig. 13 and the gain variation depicted in Fig. 15 shows that the variation in sensitivity corresponds to the gain variation in both planes.

As a final validation of the MM receiver model presented in this paper, Fig. 13 shows that the MM sensitivity analysis produces the same result obtained when analyzing the antenna and receiver using the equivalent SE S -matrix S_{SE}^{ant} and EEPs $J_1(\theta, \phi)$ and $J_2(\theta, \phi)$ with the corresponding SE complex beamforming coefficients C_{A1} and C_{A2} . The theoretical framework presented in this paper, single-polarized active receiving antennas can be modeled using a mixed different

proposed mixed-mode the sensitivity of a novel utilizing, rather than rejecting, the presence of a CM channel exhibits only a 3 dB sensitivity compared to a 10 dB sensitivity rejecting CM propagation.

Previous works [26] antenna structures, referred to have good polarization discrimination capability as a receiving antenna, radio astronomy application analysis of a dual-polarization mode active receiving antenna as well as an array thereof bandwidth.

In addition to the responding set of MM dLNA. Toward this end of the balanced dLNA parameters of the constituent Note that the derivation LNA are identical, isolated uncorrelated.

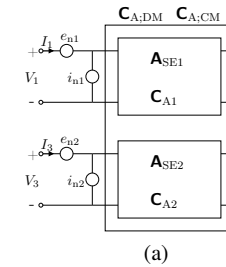


Figure 14: Equivalent noise source model for isolated LNAs in (a) chain representation

Each SE LNA can be modeled with a noise voltage matrix with a noise voltage input of the noiseless transmission representation is referred to. A physically significant representation is given by their self and mutual correlation matrix, hence the correlation matrix, hence the correlation matrix. One of the fundamental representations of the correlation matrix of its elements to the noise

III. QUAD-MODE ANTENNA

CHAPTER 5. ANTENNAS, ANTENNA FEEDS, AND MIXED-MODE FORMULATIONS

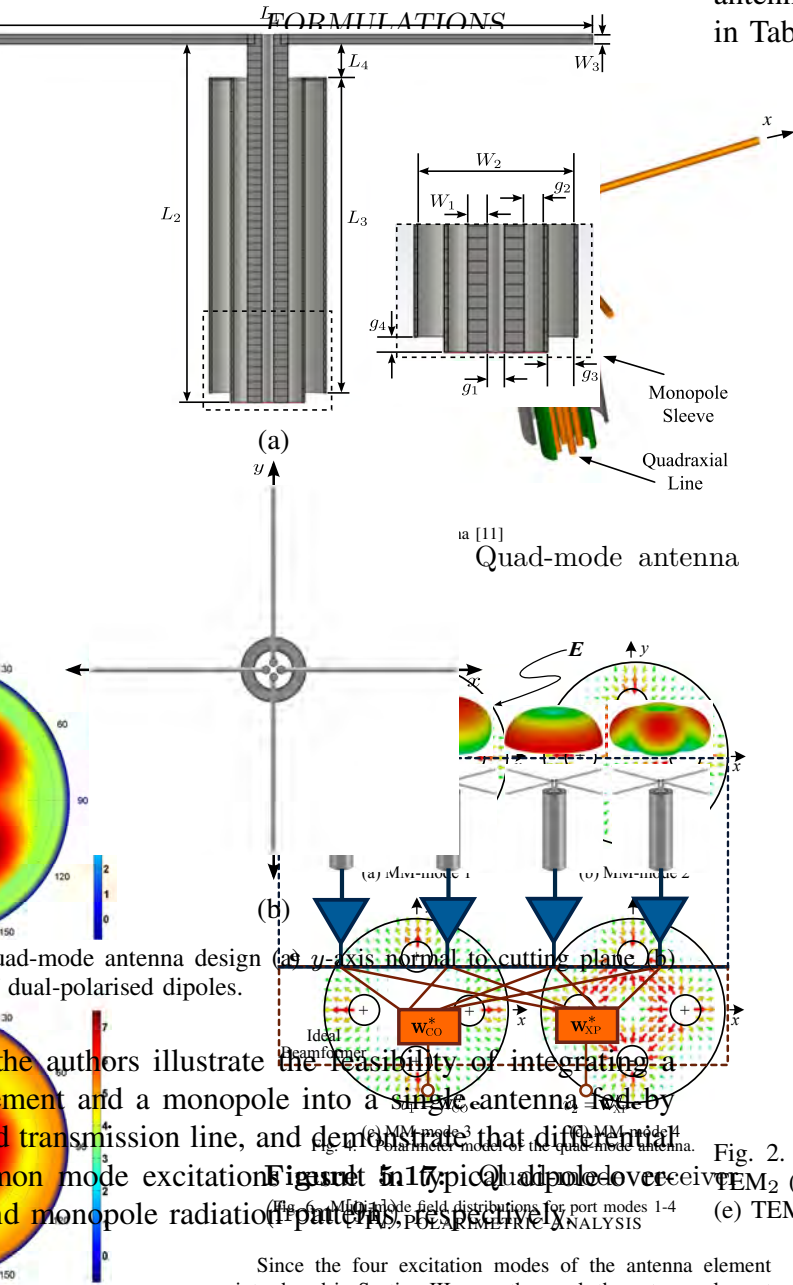


Fig. 5. Schematic diagram of the quad-mode antenna. (a) Top view, (b) Polarized mode of the quad-mode antenna.

design in [5]. As depicted in Fig. 1, each of the four centre conductors of the feed is connected to one of the dipole arms, while the ground shield of the feed is folded back toward the ground plane, effectively realising the monopole element. The antenna design parameters indicated in Fig. 1 are summarised in Table I.

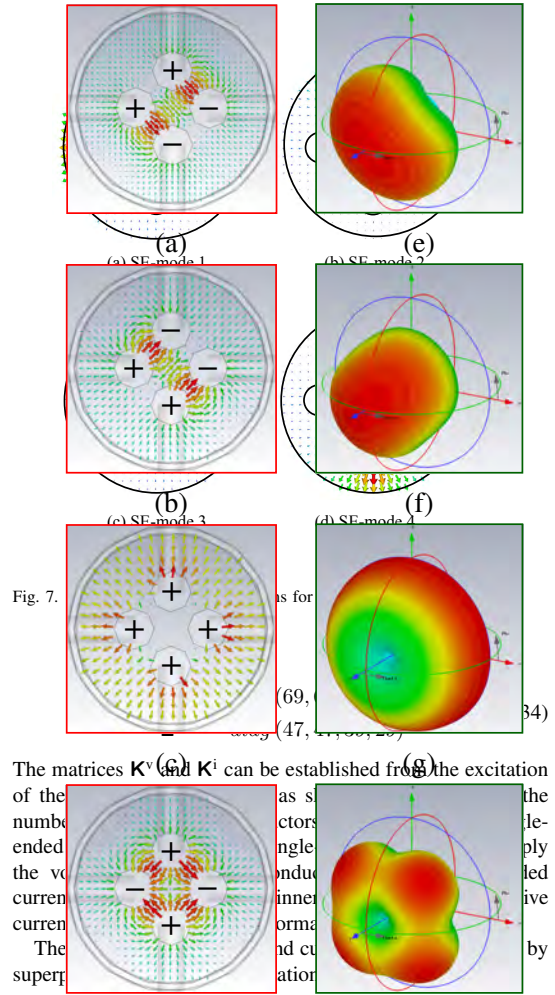


Fig. 7.

The matrices \mathbf{K}^v and \mathbf{K}^i can be established from the excitation of the number of the modes. The voltage induced in the inner normal current superposition

$$V_{SE1} = \frac{1}{2} V_{mm1} + \frac{1}{2} V_{mm2} + V_{mm3} + \frac{1}{2} V_{mm4}$$

$$V_{SE2} = \frac{1}{2} V_{mm1} - \frac{1}{2} V_{mm2} + \frac{1}{2} V_{mm3} - \frac{1}{2} V_{mm4}$$

$$V_{SE3} = -\frac{1}{2} V_{mm1} - \frac{1}{2} V_{mm2} + V_{mm3} - \frac{1}{2} V_{mm4}$$

$$V_{SE4} = -\frac{1}{2} V_{mm1} + \frac{1}{2} V_{mm2} + V_{mm3} - \frac{1}{2} V_{mm4}$$

Fig. 2. Simulated excitation field distributions for modes (a) TEM₁ (b) TEM₂ (c) TEM₃ and (d) TEM₄ and corresponding far-field radiation patterns for (e) TEM₁ (f) TEM₂ (g) TEM₃ and (h) TEM₄ excitation modes.

Since the four excitation modes of the antenna element introduced in Section III are orthogonal, the antenna element can be modelled as four independent modes. Due to symmetry, in Fig. 4, the four modes are shown as four separate elements, each radiating mode, corresponding to one of the excitation modes, therefore all have the same port impedance. With the single-ended case represented by network A_1 (depicted in this section, the incident electric field is expressed in terms of the Ludwig-3 coordinate system [10], that is, (U, V, W) , the impedance matrices necessary for the transformation in (15) can be determined from numerical analysis of the ports. (Using CST, the impedance matrices for the specified antenna

$$\mathbf{e}_{CO} = \begin{bmatrix} e_{CO}^{TEM1} \\ e_{CO}^{TEM2} \\ e_{CO}^{TEM3} \\ e_{CO}^{TEM4} \end{bmatrix}, \quad \mathbf{e}_{XP} = \begin{bmatrix} e_{XP}^{TEM1} \\ e_{XP}^{TEM2} \\ e_{XP}^{TEM3} \\ e_{XP}^{TEM4} \end{bmatrix}, \quad (10)$$

where the superscripts TEM1 – TEM4 represent the four fundamental TEM modes depicted in Fig. 2(a)–(d). Applying complex beamforming weight vectors \mathbf{w}_{CO} and \mathbf{w}_{XP} , defined to ensure axisymmetric reception of the co- and cross-polar components of the incident electric field [8], the signal response of the polarimeter to the co- and cross-polar components of the incident field can be expressed as the two beamformer output

quad-mode antenna design dual-polarised dipoles.

the authors illustrate the feasibility of integrating a element and a monopole into a single antenna fed by a transmission line, and demonstrate that differential non mode excitation is a typical quadpole receiver and monopole radiation patterns for respective

hemispherical FoV, simulated m gain and (b) optimum IXR

old distributions of the or corresponding far-field z with an infinite ground 2. Considering the four 2(a)–(d)] it is clear that ations can be realised, to individually, by two linear EM₂. A common mode four centre conductors shown in Fig. 2(c). Due to common mode excitation ar-field radiation pattern tal mode, TEM₄, shown dipole arm out of phase, to the orientation of the analogous to the analysis FoV coverage can be s. Fig. 3 shows the gain hemispherical FoV when Fig. 3(a)] and optimum le. Comparing Fig. 3(a) near-axisymmetric gain t for optimum IXR.

in a theoretical study which an array of QMA elements of exactly 48 stations (36) dual-polarized antenna elements each: referred to as Low Band Antennas (LBA) and High Band Antennas (HBA) operating in (37) and (38)

The inverse relationship also yield matrices \mathbf{K}^v and \mathbf{K}^i as in (37) and (38) configuration at Onsala Observatory is of the maximum possible array gains for the array using QMA-elements and ideal point source radiators, The Figure 5.26 It is clear that the use of QMA-elements results in significantly higher gain values towards the horizon.

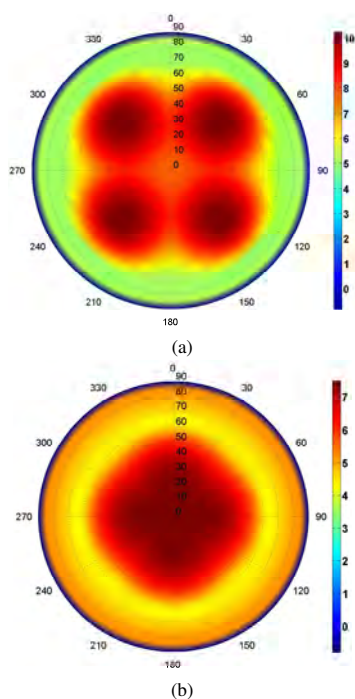


Figure 5.19: Quad-mode antenna

gain when beamforming for (a) maximum gain and (b) optimum IXR at each scan angle. (from [91]).

The four fundamental TEM field distributions of the quadraxial transmission line with their corresponding far-field radiation patterns, simulated at 1 GHz with an infinite ground plane using CST, are shown in Fig. 2. Considering the four excitation field distributions [c.f. Fig. 2(a)–(d)] it is clear that two orthogonal differential mode excitations can be realised to excite the x - and y - oriented dipoles individually, by two linear

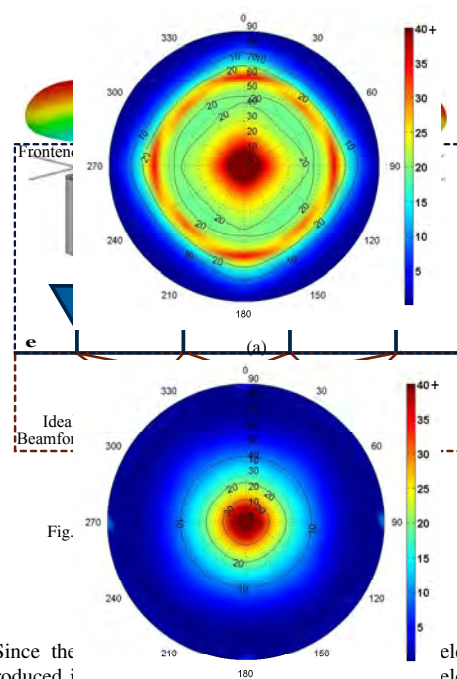
5.4.5 Multi-mode antennas

Two orthogonal fundamental modes excitation can be achieved, to excite the x - and y - oriented dipoles individually, by two linear combinations of modes development of TEM₁. A fourth mode excitation is realised by exciting all four centre conductors in-phase, that is excitation TEM₃ shown in Fig. 2(c). Due to the speciality of the so-called *fundamental dipole* excitation, it is seen to result in a monopole-like far field radiation pattern [c.f. Fig. 2(g)]. In the fourth fundamental mode, TEM₄, shown in Fig. 2(d), obtained by orthogonal diverse signals, resulting in power radiated diagonal to the orientation of the dipole moment. Paths (b) and (c) of the GMA offer a

published in this journal is spherical. For optimum gain, the antenna must therefore satisfy this criterion optimally in the field-of-view of the QMA. A sought-after beamforming for maximum gain [c.f. Fig. 3(a)] and optimum

The first investigation into the gr

less communications looked at the aspect communications system analysis to evaluate radio astronomy antennas [96]. This paper aimed to illustrate that the techniques used to characterise the Random-Line-of-Sight performance of antenna elements in wireless systems, can readily be applied to the characterisation of antenna elements used in radio astronomy applications. This was followed by a full paper describing the characterisation of the QMA in MIMO



Fig

Since the element introduced in (1) can be modelled as a four-element radio polarimeter as shown in Fig. 4, the polarimeter is realised by representing each radiation mode corresponding to one of the excitation modes as a separate antenna element. For the polarimetric analysis presented in this section, the hemispherical FOV of the quad-rod antenna is expressed in terms of the Ludwig-3 coordinate system [10], that is, voltage vector \mathbf{q} of quad-rod mode antenna and \mathbf{b})

$$\text{conventional } E_{\text{CO}}^{\text{dipole}} = \frac{1}{2} \frac{e^2}{a_{\text{CO}}} = \frac{1}{2} \frac{e^2}{a_{\text{CO}}} \quad (11)$$

where \mathbf{C}_0 and \mathbf{C}_P represent the co- and cross-polar components of the incident electric field, respectively. Furthermore, without affecting the conclusion of the presented study, identical isolated unilateral and matched Γ_{iso} noise amplifiers

are assumed in determining the Her construction is possible to show that using a polarized antenna, the method published in [1] for the polarimeter can be used. The feedline output voltages corresponding to each component of the incident electric field E_{inc} are $E_{\text{inc}} \cos \theta$ and $E_{\text{inc}} \sin \theta$ for the antenna oriented to wireless communications, as shown in Fig. 1.

represented by the two vectors \mathbf{e}_{eff} and \mathbf{e}_{exp} i.e. $\mathbf{e}_{\text{eff}} = \mathbf{e}_{\text{exp}}$. Multiple channels in the MCMC systems, \mathbf{g}_{eff} of the Jones matrix the EXR can be solved using (8). The system gained the *deposition gain* through solving the Jones matrices of each gain, angle, the EXR can be solved over an arbitrary physical (EXR) paths, and is optimal for completely in

Fig. 5(a) and (b) show the IXR of the introduced quad-mode antenna with a URA plane of antenna comprising of only one pair of crossed dipole elements and two pairs of wide loop elements. Furthermore, the introduction of the four fundamental TEM modes of the waveguide structure in the input plane of the antenna can be used to form a small antenna to be able to transform the wave vectors k_{co} and k_{cp} defined to ensure a symmetric distribution of the wave vectors of the available propagating modes results in a new potential input response of the polarimeter to the co- and cross-polar components of the incident field can be expressed as the two beam power output

[5]. This paper aimed to illustrate that the Random-Line-of-Sight performance of

can readily be applied to the characterisation of radio astronomy applications. This was the first characterisation of the QMA in MIMO

polarimetric performance. The proposed mode antenna is seen to scan angles up to 60° from broadside with a constant value for scan angles large

The polarimetric performance of the antenna excited by a quadraxial feed is compared with the performance of the antenna that utilises only two of the arms of the feed. Treating the IXR as a FoM it has been shown that the antenna is an integrated monopole, fed in the quadraxial feed case, and that the antenna has the polarimetric capabilities of a monopole. Since the results presented in this paper were obtained using only simulated data, the next step in the design, the analysis will, be to build the antenna with improved accuracy and to test it experimentally.

ACKNOWLEDGMENTS

The authors would like to thank the South African Research Council for Science and Technology, the Department of Science and Technology, as well as the Swedish VR and Digital Media Research Center for their support of this work.

R

- [1] P. E. Dewdney *et al.*, (SKA-TEL-SKO-DD-001-<http://www.skatescope.org>).
- [2] A. Faulkner *et al.*, "for the ska: the ska" <http://www.skatescope.org>.
- [3] E. de Lera Acedo *et al.*, "S slot antenna array," *IEEE*, pp. 68–78, Jan. 2010.
- [4] D. Cavallo *et al.*, "Com connected arrays of dipole exit strategy," in *Proc. Int. (ICEAA)*, Torino, Sep. 2009.
- [5] D. Prinsloo, P. Meyer, R. M. dual-mode antenna with n," *Proc. Int. Conf. on Electron*, 2013, pp. 1064–1067.
- [6] *IEEE Standard Definitions*, Std. 211-1997, Rev. May 1997.
- [7] T. Carozzi and G. Woan, "larimeters," *Antennas and*, no. 6, pp. 2058–2065, 2011.
- [8] K. F. Warnick, M. Ivashina try with phased array anten *Antennas and Propagation*, 184–196, 2012.
- [9] B. Fiorelli, M. Arts, G. Vir "Polarization analysis and antennas," in *Antennas Conference on*, 2013, pp.
- [10] A. Ludwig, "The definition *Propag.*, vol. AP-21, no. 1,
- [11] M. Ivashina, O. Lupikov, E. erloo, "An optimal beamf phased-array-fed reflector *Transactions on*, vol. 59, p.

3797

na excited through four
modes is presented. The
e are validated through
entary nature of the four
hich near-hemispherical

ON

use of multi-mode an-
(V) coverage of phased-
n sparse configurations
multiple orthogonal Trans-
to excite integrated, and
ments through a multi-
the authors introduce a
rate the improved FoV
ctivity and polarimetric
rough judicious use of
des.

multi-mode response of
The presented results
e four orthogonal exci-
ode antenna to achieve

ANTENNA DESIGN

design presented in this
f 950 MHz with an op-
imately 35%. As shown
perpendicularly oriented
substrate positioned above
opole sleeve connected
transmission line at the
xtends downward up to
. To excite the antenna,
below the ground plane,
nconnector is connected to
the air-core quadaxial
As shown in Fig. 1(b),
e each terminated in one
s the design dimensions

stics of the quad-mode
distributions of the four

Fig. 1. Conical quad-mode antenna with bow-tie feed (a) top view and (b) side view.

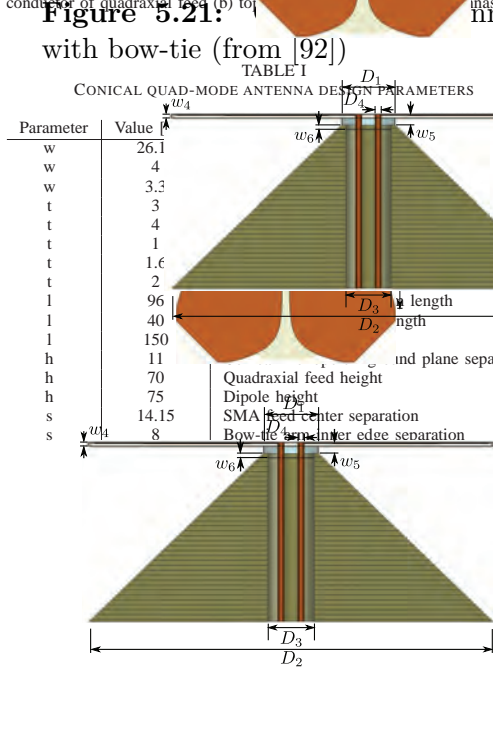


Figure 5.23: Quad-mode antenna with TSA (from [93])

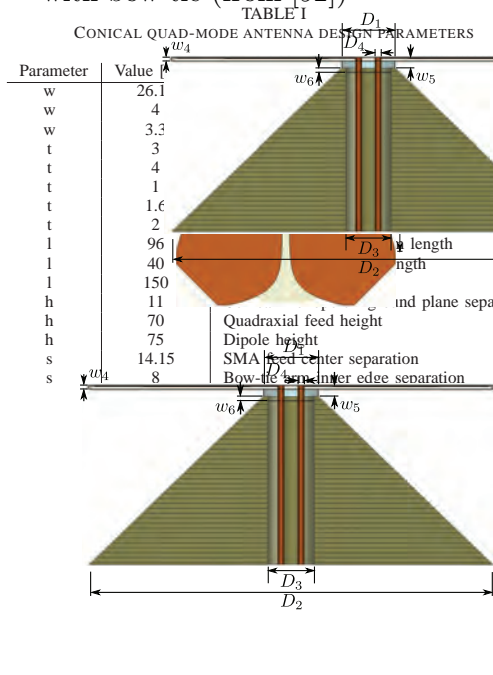


Figure 5.23: Quad-mode antenna with TSA (from [93])

scenarios [97], in both Random-Line-of-Sight (RLOS) and Rich Isotropic Multipath (RIMP) environments.

During the same period, both the crossed-bowtie and tapered-slot versions of the QMA were awarded patents [98][99]. This led to an award from the South African government's Technology Innovation Agency (TIA) seed fund, which supports the development of innovative ideas into commercial products,

Figure 3.34: Input reflection coefficients of the four orthogonal excitation modes for the conical quad-mode antenna transformed from SE measurements compared to simulated results.

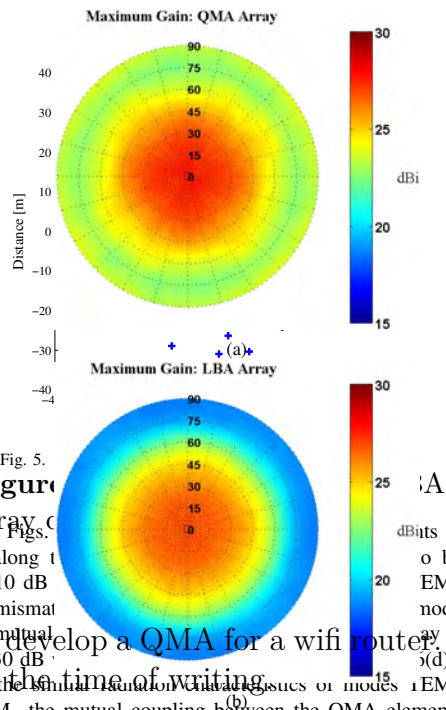


Fig. 5. Figure 5 shows the simulated radiation pattern of the QMA array. The color scale indicates the radiation intensity in dB, ranging from -30 dB (blue) to 0 dB (red). The pattern shows a central peak at 0 dB, with a color bar on the right side of the plot.

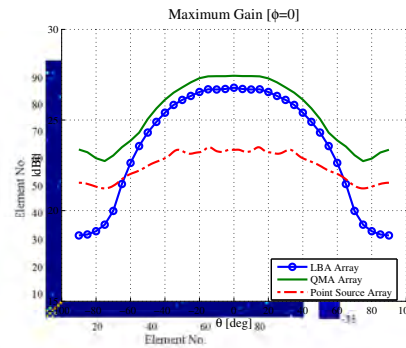


Figure 5.26: Comparison of the maximized gain of the QMA and LBA arrays with an array of $N = 26$ isotropically radiating point source elements.

therefore, largely be assumed to be the phase variation of the embedded antenna elements, which is not different from the way as proposed for modeling and mutual coupling of the physical antenna elements within the array.

Our work has been completed successfully.

Using the layout of the LOFAR LBA station at Onsala space observatory in Sweden^(a), the maximum gain of a QMA array has been compared with the maximum gain achieved by the LBA array over a hemispherical FoV. It is shown that

parametric transformations

the excitation modes of the QMA elements are below -15 dB, with the monopole-like radiation pattern of excitation mode TEM₃ resulting in the largest coupling between the QMA elements.

For QMA element designs in which the gain variation over the FoV coverage compares well with that of a single isolated QMA, it follows from the simulations presented here that arrays of hemispherically radiating QMA elements is illustrated that the dominant cause of the reduction in gain observed at higher field angles is due to ill-defined formulations, and

topic of mixed-mode formulations, and

at higher field angles is due to ill-defined formulations caused by the element spacing within the array. Despite the increased gain variation, the QMA array still exhibits a 5 dB increase in gain towards the horizon when compared with the

i-mode networks. QMA networks will

5.4.6 General Scattering P

applied to antennas

IV. MAXIMUM GAIN OF QUAD-MODE ANTENNA ARRAY (2)

CHAPTER 5. ANTENNA FORMULATIONS

To perform the transformation, the port (network B) must be expressed as linear voltages and currents at another network. As shown in Fig. 1, each network is described by an S-matrix $S^{A,B}$ with port voltages $(V_{n,A,B})$, port currents $(I_{n,A,B})$, and port impedances $(Z_{n,A,B})$ indicated for both networks. In addition, the incident $(a_n^{A,B})$ and reflected $(b_n^{A,B})$ waves are also shown at each port. For the case where the port voltages and port currents of network B are linear combinations of the voltages and currents of network A, the aim is to establish a transformation from S^A to S^B for an arbitrary set of port impedances. A typical scenario would for instance be one where network A consists of N single-ended ports, each terminated by the same reference impedance, and network B of sets of differential ports and possible single-ended ports, each terminated by a different impedance.

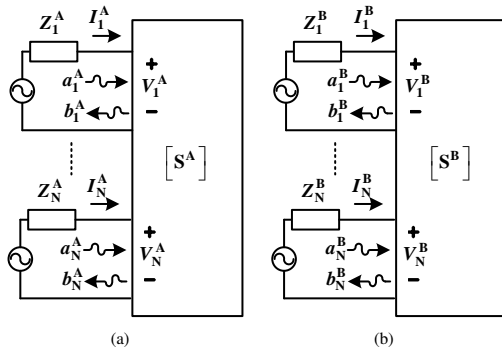


Fig. 1. N-port networks with ports using (a) mode set A and (b) mode set B

Figure 5.27: Multi-port Networks

(For the completely general case, the port voltages and currents of network B can be expressed as linear combinations of any or all of the port voltages and currents of network A. That is,

$$V_n^B = k_{n1}^v V_1^A + k_{n2}^v V_2^A + \cdots + k_{nN}^v V_N^A$$

By defining matrices $\mathbf{M}_S^{I\pm}$ and \mathbf{M}_C in (1) and diagonal matrices containing the γ_n for $n = 1, \dots, N$ or expression for the incident and reflected

$$\mathbf{v}^B = \mathbf{K}^v \mathbf{v}^A \quad (2a)$$

$$\mathbf{I}^B = \mathbf{K}^i \mathbf{I}_1^A \quad (2b)$$

$$\mathbf{M}_S = \frac{1}{2} \left(\mathbf{Z}^B \right)^{-\frac{1}{2}} \mathbf{K}^v \left(\mathbf{Z}^A \right)$$

$$\mathbf{M}_C = \frac{1}{2} \left(\mathbf{Z}^B \right)^{-\frac{1}{2}} \mathbf{K}^V \left(\mathbf{Z}^A \right)$$

$$\mathbf{a}^B = \mathbf{M}_S \mathbf{a}^A + \mathbf{M}_G \mathbf{b}^A \quad (5.3a)$$

$$\mathbf{b}^B = \mathbf{M}_C \mathbf{a}^A + \mathbf{M}_S \mathbf{b}^A \quad (5.3b)$$

$$\mathbf{K}^v = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & -1 & \cdots & 0 \\ \vdots & \ddots & \ddots & \vdots \\ 0 & \cdots & 1 & -1 \\ \frac{1}{2} & \frac{1}{2} & \cdots & 0 \\ \vdots & \ddots & \ddots & \vdots \\ 0 & \cdots & \frac{1}{2} & \frac{1}{2} \end{bmatrix} \quad \mathbf{K}^i = (\mathbf{K}^{v\dagger})^{-1} \quad (32)$$

where $[\mathbf{0}]$ denotes a $[2P \times (N - 2P)]$ zero matrix. Finally, the diagonal port impedance matrices are given by (33).

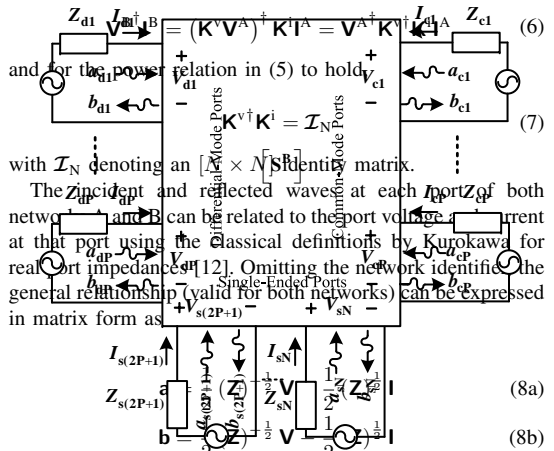
where $\mathbf{V}^{A,B}$ and $\mathbf{I}^{A,B}$ denote $[N \times 1]$ matrices containing the port voltages and currents of networks A and B and $\mathbf{K}^{v,i}$ are $[N \times N]$ matrices as in (3) and (4). 101

mode antennas [103]. Especially the $\mathbf{K}^v =$ is very powerful as it allows any set of antenna measurements, to be transmitters. $\mathbf{K}^i =$ voltages and currents of one network

combinations of any or all of the port voltages and currents. While \mathbf{K}^A and \mathbf{K}^B can in general be chosen independently, the transformation \mathbf{A} and the conservation of power under the transformation makes more physical sense, and will also be seen to reduce to the standard formulations in the case of differential and common-mode descriptions. In this case, the total complex power in networks A and B are set to be equal, requiring from Tellegen's theorem that the sum of the products of each port voltage and current remains constant under the transformation, as shown in (5).

$$\mathbf{V}^{\dagger A} \mathbf{I}^A = \mathbf{V}^{\dagger B} \mathbf{I}^B \quad (5)$$

where \dagger denotes the conjugate transpose. From (2a) and (2b)



or alternatively as

Figure 5.28: General mixed-mode

Figure 3.23: General mixed-mode network (from [103])

$$\mathbf{V} = \mathbf{Z} \mathbf{I} \quad (9a)$$

$$\mathbf{I} = (\mathbf{Z})^{-\frac{1}{2}} (\mathbf{a} - \mathbf{b}) \quad (9b)$$

any modification. For the combination treated by Ferrero, the port voltages and currents for matrices containing the same ports are related by the transfer and reflection values, respectively, and \mathbf{Z} is a diagonal matrix containing the characteristic impedances as shown in (10).

$$\mathbf{z} = \begin{bmatrix} Z_1 \\ \vdots \\ 0 \\ \vdots \\ \frac{1}{2} V_{dP} Z_N \end{bmatrix} \quad \mathbf{I}^A = \begin{bmatrix} I_{d1} \\ \vdots \\ I_{dP} \\ \vdots \\ I_{s(2P+1)} \\ \vdots \\ I_{sN} \end{bmatrix} \quad (10)$$

The \mathbf{K} matrices can simply be extended by the addition of a unity matrix to allow for this case, as in (32) (5.3a)

$$+ \mathbf{M}_S \mathbf{b}^A \quad (5.3b)$$

$$\mathbf{K}^v = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & -1 & \cdots & 0 \\ \vdots & \ddots & \ddots & \vdots \\ 0 & \cdots & 1 & -1 \\ \frac{1}{2} & \frac{1}{2} & \cdots & 0 \\ \vdots & \ddots & \ddots & \vdots \\ 0 & \cdots & \frac{1}{2} & \frac{1}{2} \end{bmatrix} \quad \mathbf{K}^i = \begin{bmatrix} \mathbf{0} & & & \\ & 1 & \cdots & 0 \\ & & \ddots & \vdots \\ & & & \mathbf{0}^T & \ddots & \vdots \\ & & & 0 & \cdots & 1 \end{bmatrix} \quad \mathbf{K}^i = (\mathbf{K}^{v\dagger})^{-1} \quad (32)$$

In terms of scattering parameters, $\mathbf{b}^A = \mathbf{S}^A \mathbf{a}^A$ and $\mathbf{b}^B = \mathbf{S}^B \mathbf{a}^B$, and it follows that \mathbf{S}^B can be expressed in terms of \mathbf{S}^A by

$$\mathbf{S}^B = (\mathbf{M}_C + \mathbf{M}_S \mathbf{S}^A) (\mathbf{M}_S + \mathbf{M}_C \mathbf{S}^A)^{-1} \quad (5.4)$$

A very important special case occurs when the port impedances of network B are related to the port impedances of network A by (5.5).

$$\mathbf{Z}^B = \mathbf{K}^v \mathbf{Z}^A (\mathbf{K}^i)^{-1} \quad (5.5)$$

In this case, $\mathbf{M}_C = \mathbf{0}$, and the transformation in (5.4) simply becomes that shown in (5.6).

$$\mathbf{S}^B = \mathbf{M}_S \mathbf{S}^A (\mathbf{M}_S)^{-1} \quad (5.6)$$

where

$$\mathbf{M}_S = (\mathbf{Z}^B)^{-\frac{1}{2}} \mathbf{K}^v (\mathbf{Z}^A)^{\frac{1}{2}} \quad (5.7)$$

Note that this special case is the one most widely used for the transformation of single-ended S-parameters to mixed-mode S-parameters, often erroneously. The new formulation thus removed the restriction, and allowed for arbitrary impedances. In practice, the choosing of port impedances also allow for multi-line coupled-line networks to be used. A general example of transforming single-ended S-parameters to a mixed-mode set is shown in Fig. 5.28, where the mixed-mode network consists of differential ports, common-mode ports, and single-ended ports.

Figs. 5.29 and 5.30 show the effect of using this transformation on the four radiation modes of the quadraxial line feed of the QMA. In Fig. 5.29, each line of the quadraxial line is excited in turn, with the other three terminated, giving four single-ended radiation patterns. When transformed to four modal excitations, the patterns in Fig. 5.30 result.

This transformation of radiation patterns was used to experimentally verify various QMA's. As it is virtually impossible to apply modal excitations in a practical measurement setup, the antennas were measured using single-ended excitations on each conductor of the quadraxial line successively, and the full set of measurements could then be transformed to the modal case, and compared to the theoretical modal patterns. An example for one QMA is shown in Fig. 5.31.

5.4.7 General Scattering Parameter transformations applied to multi-conductor lines

The General Scattering Parameter transformation, once developed, was a promising technique to apply to networks. Multi-conductor transmission lines especially have been the focus of many modelling algorithms, as it forms part

$$[\mathbf{M}_s + \mathbf{M}_c \mathbf{S}^{\text{SE}}] \bar{\mathbf{F}}^{\text{SE}}. \quad (40)$$

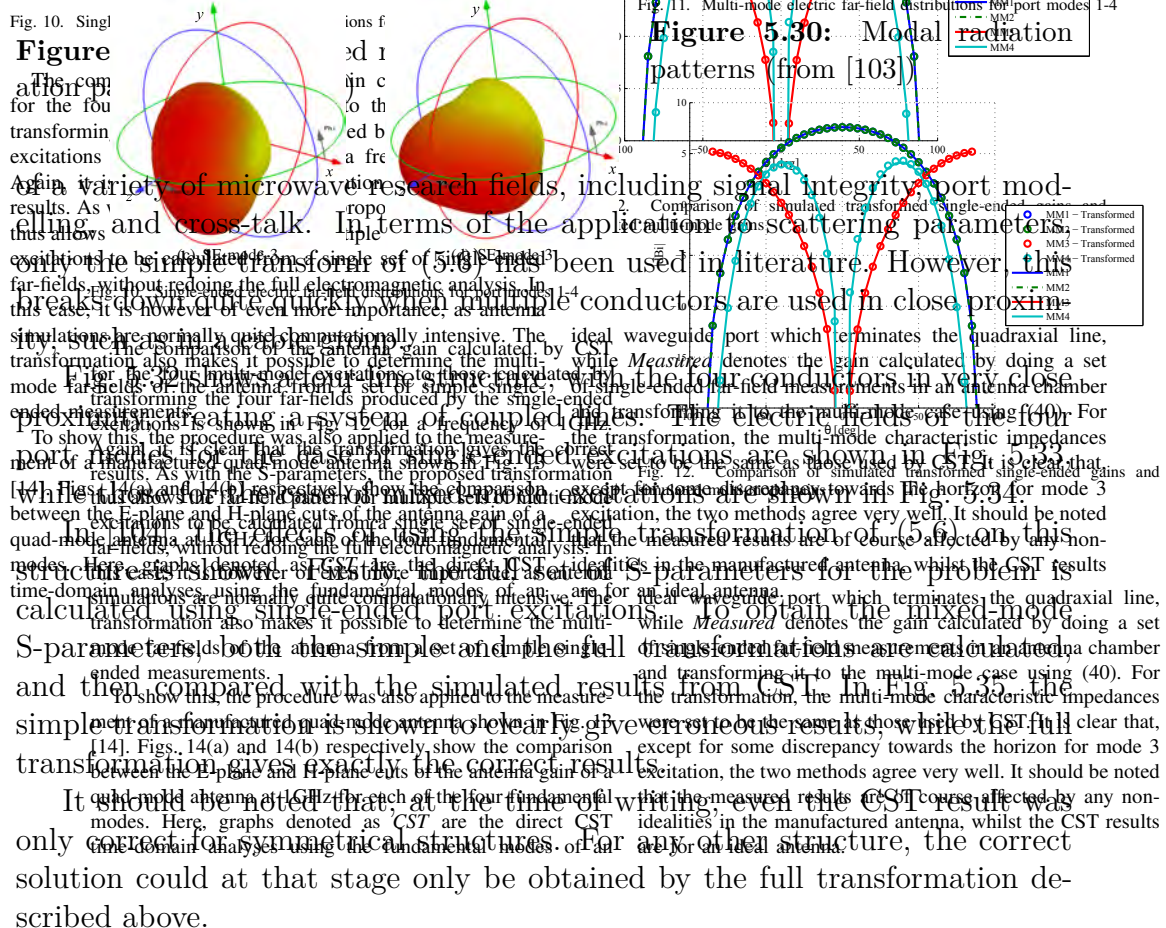
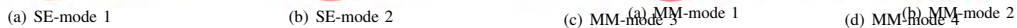
CHAPTER 9. ANTENNAS, ANTENNA FEEDING, AND TRANSDUCERS



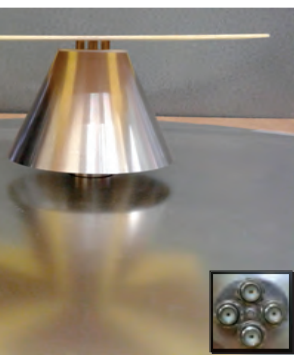
8

$$\bar{\mathbf{F}}^{\text{MM}} = \begin{bmatrix} \bar{f}_1^{\text{MM}}(\theta, \phi) \\ \vdots \\ \bar{f}_N^{\text{MM}}(\theta, \phi) \end{bmatrix} = [\mathbf{M}_S + \mathbf{M}_C \mathbf{S}^{\text{SE}}] \bar{\mathbf{F}}^{\text{SE}}. \quad (40)$$

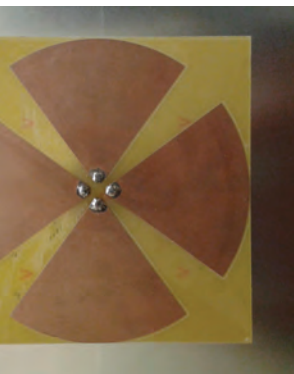
From these fields, the gain of the antenna for each multi-mode excitation can be calculated. Using the same simulated example as in section IV, the radiated electric far-fields for the four single-ended excitations are shown in Fig. 10, with the transformed multi-mode far-fields in Fig. 11.



Using these transformations, one needs only perform one set of analyses of a structure, using single-ended port excitations. The S-parameters of any other combination of excitations can then simply be calculated using the transformation, instead of a new set of analyses. In such a way, a set of excitations



(a) Side view



(b) Top view

ns of a prototype quad-mode antenna

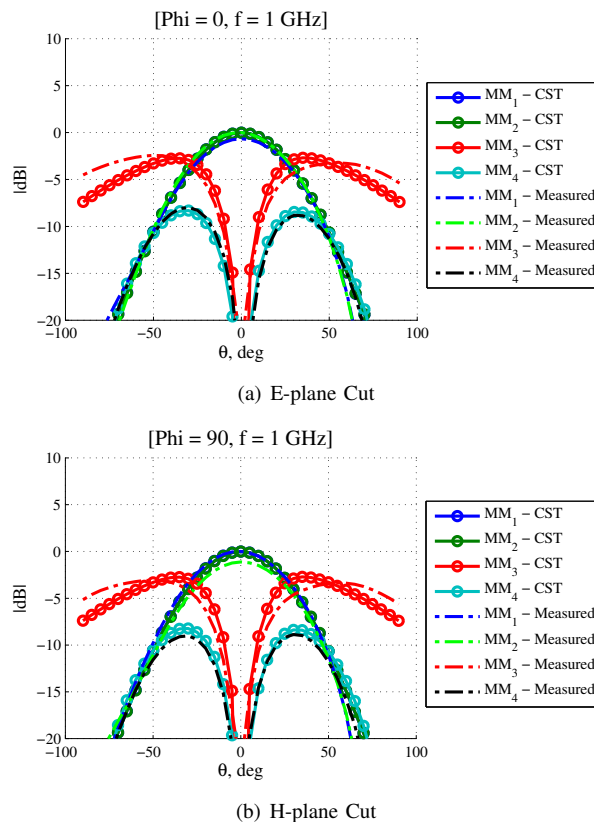


Fig. 14. Measured and simulated normalised E-and H-plane farfield gain patterns for a quad-mode antenna

Figure 5.34: Transformed measured pattern cuts (from [103])

IONS AND RECOMMENDATIONS

s a general technique to transform S-ld antenna patterns from one set of ports which yields optimally low levels of cross-talk can for instance be calculated consisting of arbitrary combinations of very quickly by optimising the transformation constants instead of running technique is valid for N -ports, and for full-wave optimisations of the full structure. It is shown port voltages and currents. The inverse transformation used extensively in software The inverse procedure is also possible and can be used to good effect to valid for a specific relationship between problems. In Chapter 2, it was shown that mathematical interpolation models can be used efficiently to model the S-parameters of a network, as a function of one or more variables. For multi-line (or multi-port) networks, ad-mode antenna example. It is shown this quickly becomes prohibitive since an $N \times N$ network is described by an $N \times N$ S-matrix, requiring N^2 functions to be modelled in general. Using the s and antenna far-fields for multi-mode the same way a single transformation technique can be derived which can be utilized to verify multi-mode will ensure that many mixed-mode S-parameters become negligible, requiring without complicated measuring circuits. no models.

CKNOWLEDGMENT

is shown running through a thin section of dielectric. The electric fields at the ports are shown in Fig. 5.28 for all single-ended modes and the modes in which every pair of lines is excited with differential and common modes respectively.

REFERENCES

Eisenstadt, "Combined differential and common-eters: theory and simulation," *IEEE Trans. Mi-*vol. 43, no. 7, Jul. 1995, pp. 1530-1539.
Eisenstadt, "Pure-Mode Network Analyzer fornts of multi-mode S-Parameters of Differential *Microwave Theory Tech.*, vol. 45, no. 7, Jul. 1997,

- [3] A. Ferrero, M. Pirola, "Generalized mixed-mode S-parameters", *IEEE Trans. Microwave Theory Tech.*, vol. 54, no. 1, Jan. 1995, pp. 458-463.
- [4] A. Hayat, B. Hakobsson, and S. Gong, "Mixed-mode S-parameter conversion for networks with coupled differential signals," *Proc. 37th European Microwave Conf.*, vol. 1, Oct. 2007, pp. 238-241.
- [5] S.G. Hay and J.D. O'Sullivan, "Analysis of common-mode effects in a dual-polarized planar connected-array antenna," *Radio Science*, vol. 43, no. 3, Jun. 2008, pp. 463-470.
- [6] J.J. Pantoja, N.M. Pea, F. Roman, F. Vega and F. Rachidi, "Wideband Experimental Characterization of Differential Antennas," *8th European Conf. on Antennas and Propagation (EuCAP)*, April 2012, pp. 2131-2139.
- [7] S. Liao, Q. Xue, and J. Xu, "A Differentially Fed Magneto-Electric Dipole Antenna with a Simple Structure," *IEEE Antennas and Propagation Magazine*, Vol. 52, No. 7, October 2013.
- [8] K. Kinoshita and N. Ishii, "One-port measurement for coupling between terminals and absence of mode conversion in a hybrid," *Proc. 2014 IEEE International Workshop on Electromagnetics*, Aug. 2014, Sapporo, Hokkaido, Japan, pp. 70-71.
- [9] D.S. Prinsloo, P. Meyer, R. Maaskant, and M. Ivashina, "Design of an active dual-mode antenna with near hemispherical field of view coverage," *11th Conf. on Electromagnetics in Advanced Applications (ICEAA)*, Sep. 2013, pp. 1064-1067.
- [10] D.S. Prinsloo, R. Maaskant, M.V. Ivashina, and P. Meyer, "Mixed-mode analysis for all single-ended modes and the receiving antenna providing near-hemispherical field-of-view coverage," *IEEE Trans. Antennas and Propagation*, vol. 62, no. 8, August 2014, pp. 3951-3961.
- [11] D.S. Prinsloo, P. Meyer, M.V. Ivashina, and R. Maaskant, "A quad-mode antenna for accurate polarimetric measurements over an ultra-wide field-of-view," *8th European Conf. on Antennas and Propagation (EuCAP)*, April 2014, pp. 3794-3797.
- [12] K. Kurokawa, "Power waves and the Scattering matrix" *IEEE Trans. Microwave Theory Tech.*, vol. MTT-13, no. 3, pp. 194-202, Mar. 1965.
- [13] T.S. Beukman, M. Ivashina, R. Maaskant, J.P. Meyer, C. Bencivenni, "A quadraxial feed for ultra-wide bandwidth quadruple-ridged flared

$$\begin{bmatrix} k_{11}^{11} & k_{12}^{11} & \dots & k_{1N}^{11} \\ \vdots & \vdots & \ddots & \vdots \\ k_{N1}^{11} & k_{N2}^{11} & \dots & k_{NN}^{11} \end{bmatrix}$$

ist be related by (5), with \mathcal{I}_N denoting the identity matrix, for conservation of power under lossless conditions is guaranteed.

$$\mathbf{K}^{\dagger} \mathbf{K}^i = \mathcal{I}_N \quad (5)$$

d waves at each port of both networks are related to the port voltage and current at that port by the definitions by Kurokawa for real port

$$\mathbf{Z}^{A,B} \frac{1}{2} (\mathbf{a}^{A,B} + \mathbf{b}^{A,B}) \quad (6a)$$

$$\mathbf{Z}^{A,B} \frac{1}{2} (\mathbf{a}^{A,B} - \mathbf{b}^{A,B}) \quad (6b)$$

ote $[N \times 1]$ matrices containing the incident and reflected waves respectively. The diagonal matrices containing the port impedances as shown in (7).

$$\begin{bmatrix} Z_1^{A,B} & \dots & 0 \\ \vdots & \ddots & \vdots \\ 0 & \dots & Z_N^{A,B} \end{bmatrix} \quad (7)$$

$$\begin{aligned} (\mathbf{Z}^A)^{\frac{1}{2}} + \frac{1}{2} (\mathbf{Z}^B)^{\frac{1}{2}} \mathbf{K}^i (\mathbf{Z}^A)^{\frac{1}{2}} \\ (\mathbf{Z}^A)^{\frac{1}{2}} - \frac{1}{2} (\mathbf{Z}^B)^{\frac{1}{2}} \mathbf{K}^i (\mathbf{Z}^A)^{\frac{1}{2}} \end{aligned}$$

and waves of network B can be calculated from network A by (9a) and (9b).

$$\begin{aligned} \mathbf{b} &= \mathbf{M}_S \mathbf{a}^A + \mathbf{M}_C \mathbf{b}^A \\ \mathbf{b} &= \mathbf{M}_C \mathbf{a}^A + \mathbf{M}_S \mathbf{b}^A \end{aligned}$$

CHAPTER 5. ANTENNAS, ANTENNA FEEDS, AND MIXED-MODE FORMULATIONS

From the centre is used, as shown in Fig. 5.32. A dielectric cylinder is inserted in the centre of the transmission line. The coupling between lines. For this example, the dielectric has a radius of 0.5mm, and is positioned with an axial symmetry, at a distance of 1.414mm from the centre. The dielectric disc has a permittivity of 20, and is 1mm in thick

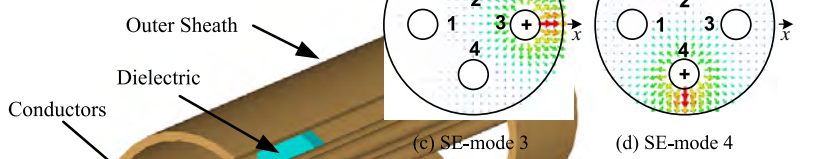


Fig. 5.32: Four-conductor transmission line (from [104])

Figure 5.33: Single-ended port electric fields (from [104])

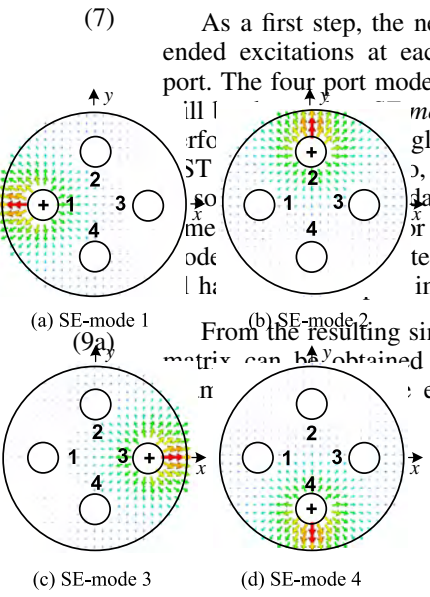


Fig. 5.33: Single-ended field distributions for port modes 1-4

differential and common excitations at each port. These excitations as well as their respective electric field distributions are shown in Fig. 4 and denoted as *MM-modes*. To calculate the MM S-matrix, any set of port impedances can in principle be used. However, as we would like to verify the transformed result using CST, the port impedance calculated for each MM-mode by a fast two-dimensional analysis in CST is used. For this analysis, each mode of the set is excited using a multi-pin feed with the indicated polarity.

5.4.8 Assessment

The 2014 paper [90] holds special significance for me, as it marked my first move into the antenna and microwave community. It also made use of a number of concepts from

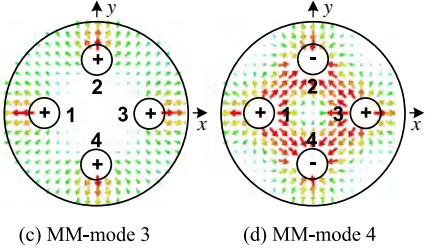


Fig. 4. Multi-mode field distributions for port modes 1-4

differential and common excitations at each port. These excitations as well as their respective electric field distributions are shown in Fig. 4 and denoted as *MM-modes*. To calculate the MM S-matrix, any set of port impedances can in principle be used. However, as we would like to verify the transformed result using CST, the port impedance calculated for each MM-mode by a fast two-dimensional analysis in CST is used. For this analysis, each mode of the set is excited using a multi-pin feed with the indicated polarity.

From the two-dimensional CST analysis, and with the single-ended multi-pin feed, the port impedances are calculated for each MM-mode by a fast two-dimensional analysis in CST is used. For this analysis, each mode of the set is excited using a multi-pin feed with the indicated polarity.

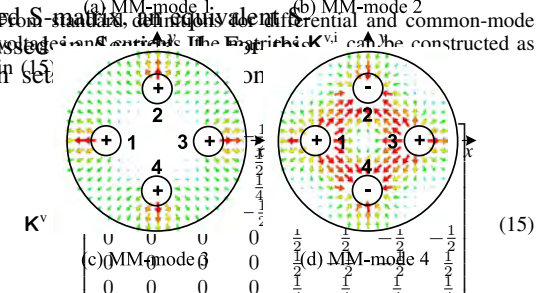


Figure 5.34: Mixed-mode port electric fields (from [104])

$$\mathbf{K}^v = \begin{bmatrix} \frac{1}{2} & \frac{1}{2} & 0 & 0 \\ \frac{1}{2} & -\frac{1}{2} & 0 & 0 \\ 1 & 1 & 1 & 1 \\ \frac{1}{2} & -\frac{1}{2} & \frac{1}{2} & -\frac{1}{2} \end{bmatrix}$$

As this example is used to illustrate the technique, the transformed S-matrix is compared to a full CST analysis of the structure, this time excited by the four multi-mode excitations shown in Fig. 4. Fig. 5 shows the comparison for port 2 short-circuited, and Fig. 6 shows the comparison for port 2 open-circuited. In both cases, the main subscript refers to the port number, and the subscript in brackets refers to the mode number. It is clear that the transformation produces the same results as the full CST analysis, with the very small deviations due to the way CST calculates impedances.

As the standard transformation in (12) is very widely used in literature and in software, it is important to point out the error made when using it when coupled lines are present at the port planes. Fig. 7 shows the same S-parameters as in Fig 6, but using the simple standard transformation. It is clear that significant errors are incurred.

While only illustrated with simulation, the same procedure can be applied for practical measurements. In the case of this example, it would imply that for each measurement, a transmission line with characteristic impedance equal to the single-ended impedance of that line is used to excite each

$$\begin{aligned} \mathbf{Z}^{\text{SE}} &= \text{diag}(125, 125, 50, 50) \\ \mathbf{Z}^{\text{MM}} &= \text{diag}(66.9, 66.9, 125, 125) \end{aligned}$$

From standard definition of voltages and currents, the S-matrix in (15) and (16).

$$\mathbf{K}^v = \begin{bmatrix} \frac{1}{2} & \frac{1}{2} & 0 & 0 \\ \frac{1}{2} & -\frac{1}{2} & 0 & 0 \\ 1 & 1 & 1 & 1 \\ \frac{1}{2} & -\frac{1}{2} & \frac{1}{2} & -\frac{1}{2} \end{bmatrix}$$

$$\mathbf{K}^i = \begin{bmatrix} \frac{1}{2} & \frac{1}{2} & 0 & 0 \\ \frac{1}{2} & -\frac{1}{2} & 0 & 0 \\ 1 & 1 & 1 & 1 \\ \frac{1}{2} & -\frac{1}{2} & \frac{1}{2} & -\frac{1}{2} \end{bmatrix}$$

As before, $\mathbf{K}^i = (\mathbf{K}^v)^{-1}$, therefore $\mathbf{K}^v \mathbf{Z}^{\text{SE}} (\mathbf{K}^i)^{-1}$, therefore can be used.

As this example is used to illustrate the technique, this time excited by the four multi-mode excitations shown in Fig. 4. Fig. 5 shows the comparison for port 2 short-circuited, and Fig. 6 shows the comparison for port 2 open-circuited. In both cases, the main subscript refers to the port number, and the subscript in brackets refers to the mode number. It is clear that the transformation produces the same results as the full CST analysis, with the very small deviations due to the way CST calculates impedances.

As the standard transformation in (12) is very widely used in literature and in software, it is important to point out the error made when using it when coupled lines are present at the port planes. Fig. 7 shows the same S-parameters as in Fig 6, but using the simple standard transformation. It is clear that significant errors are incurred.

While only illustrated with simulation, the same procedure can be applied for practical measurements. In the case of this example, it would imply that for each measurement, a transmission line with characteristic impedance equal to the single-ended impedance of that line is used to excite each

CHAPTER 5. ANTENNAS, ANTENNA FEEDS, AND MIXED-MODE FORMULATIONS

106

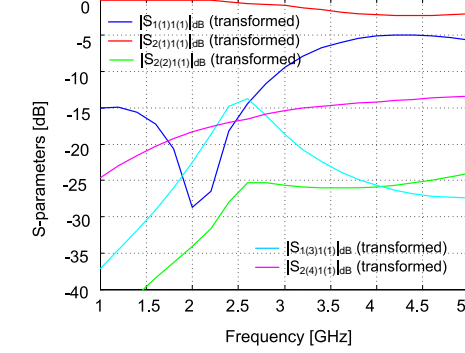
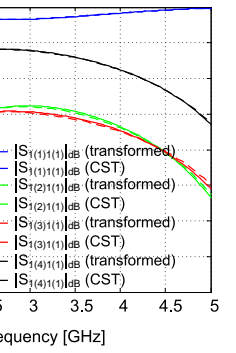


Fig. 5. Comparison of simulated transformed single-ended S-parameters and simulated multi-mode S-parameters for port 2 shorted

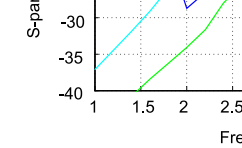


Fig. 7. Comparison of simulated transformed single-ended S-parameters and simulated multi-mode S-parameters for port 2 shorted

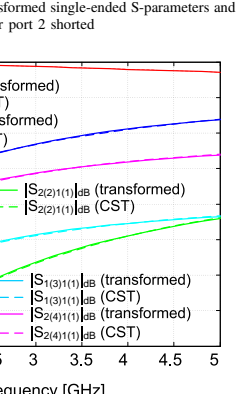


Figure 5.35: Comparison of simulated transformed single-ended S-parameters and simulated multi-mode S-parameters for port 2 shorted using simple transformation (from [104])

Figure 5.36: Comparison of simulated transformed single-ended S-parameters and simulated multi-mode S-parameters for port 2 shorted using full transformation (from [104])

The authors thank CST for providing software and support, as well as the NRF for financial assistance.

Petrie Meyer

REFERENCES

- [1] D. Bockelman and W. Eisenstadt, "Combined differential mode scattering parameters: theory and simulation," *microwave Theory Tech.*, vol. 43, no. 7, Jul. 1995, pp. 1064-1070.
- [2] P. Meyer and D. Prinsloo, "Generalized Multi-Mode Antenna and Antenna Far-Field Conversions," *IEEE Trans. Propagation*, submitted December 2014.
- [3] A. Huynh, P. Hakansson, and S. Gong, "Mixed-mode conversion for networks with coupled differential signals," *European Microwave Conference*, Munich, Oct. 2007.
- [4] D. Prinsloo, P. Meyer, R. Maaskant, and M. Ivashina, "An active dual-mode antenna with near hemispherical coverage," *Int. Conf. on Electromagnetics in Advances* (ICEAA), Sep. 2013, pp. 1064-1067.
- [5] D. Prinsloo, P. Meyer, M.V. Ivashina, and R. Maaskant, "A dual-mode antenna for accurate polarimetric measurement wide field-of-view," *8th European Conf. on Antennas* (EuCAP), April 2014, pp. 3794-3797.
- [6] T.S. Beukman, M. Ivashina, R. Maaskant, P. Meyer, C. Bencivenni, "A quadraxial feed for ultra-wide bandwidth quadruple-ridged flared horn antennas," *8th European Conference on Antennas and Propagation* (EuCAP 2014), The Hague, The Netherlands, April 2014, pp. 3794-3797.
- [7] D. Prinsloo, R. Maaskant, M.V. Ivashina, and P. Meyer, "Mixed-mode sensitivity analysis of a combined differential and common mode active receiving antenna providing near-hemispherical field-of-view coverage," *IEEE Trans. Antennas and Propagation*, vol. 62, no. 8, pp. 3951-3961, Aug. 2014.

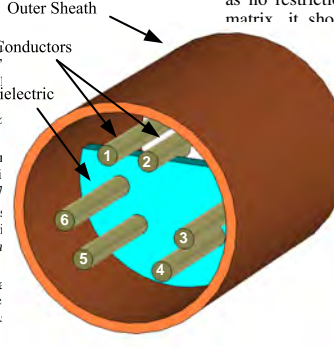


Figure 5.37: Six conductor transmission line (from [105])

IV. CONCLUSION

This paper shows how the generalized multi-mode scattering transformation can be used for the analysis of transmission lines. A four-port example is used to illustrate the technique, but the technique is not limited to four ports or lines, or any specific sets of modes. The S-parameters for multi-mode analysis can be calculated from a single set of single-ended S-parameters.

CONCLUSION

The generalized multi-mode scattering transformation can be used for the analysis of transmission lines. A four-port example is used to illustrate the technique, but the technique is not limited to four ports or lines, or any specific sets of modes. The S-parameters for multi-mode analysis can be calculated from a single set of single-ended S-parameters.

An infinite number of sets of S-parameters can be calculated for this structure. For the purposes of this paper, only two will be shown. Firstly, each conductor can be excited at each of its ports, with all the others terminated in 50 ohm loads. Such an analysis can readily be performed using single-ended S-parameters. Secondly, a full three-dimensional analysis can be performed for each conductor, with all the others terminated in 50 ohm loads. The work also led to an international patent, which was a milestone of a different nature. I believe the work itself established and developed a number of concepts which have been of great importance to the field of multi-mode analysis. While this can be reduced substantially using reciprocity and symmetry in the longitudinal direction, the dielectric disc reduces the number of symmetries in the transverse plane. Using the generalized multi-mode S-parameter transformation, various other sets of S-parameters would be computed from the single-ended set, without additional computational cost. Only the QMA set for this structure is the one obtained by exciting each set of six conductors with both common-mode and differential-mode signals at each port. These excitations as well as their respective electric field distributions are shown in Fig. 3(b) and denoted as MM-modes. To calculate the MM S-matrix, any set of port impedances can in principle be used. Here, the port impedance calculated for each MM-mode by a fast two-dimensional analysis in CST is used. For this analysis, each mode of the set is excited using a multi-pin feed with the indicated polarity.

From the two-dimensional CST analysis, and with the single-ended case represented by network A (denoted SE) and the multi-mode case by network B (denoted MM), the impedance matrices necessary for the transformation in (10) are shown in (14).

$$\begin{aligned} \mathbf{Z}^{\text{SE}} &= \text{diag} (50) \\ \mathbf{Z}^{\text{MM}} &= \text{diag} (138, 138, 138, 138, 138, 138, 70, 70, 70, 70, 70, 70) \end{aligned} \quad (14)$$

From standard definitions for differential and common-mode voltages and currents, the matrices

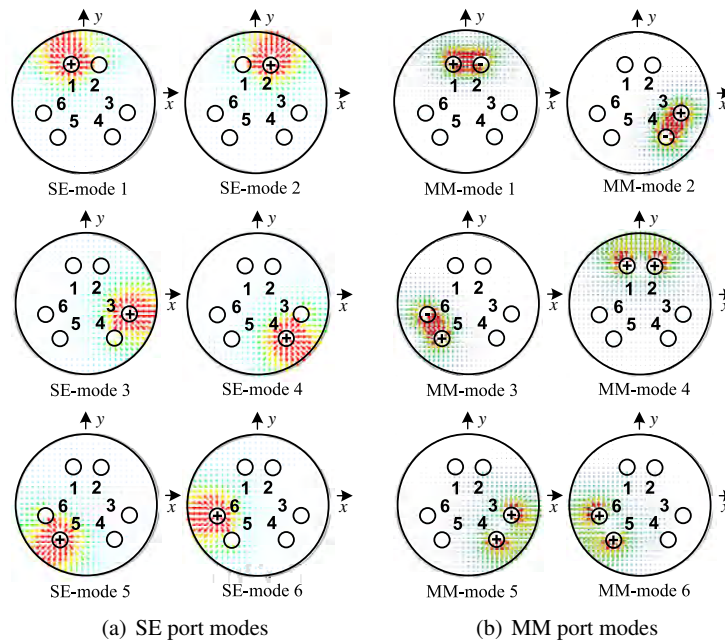


Figure 3: Electric field distributions for port modes
Figure 5.38: Six conductor transmission line port electric fields (from [105])

Petrie Meyer

$\mathbf{K}^{v,1}$ can be constructed as in (15)

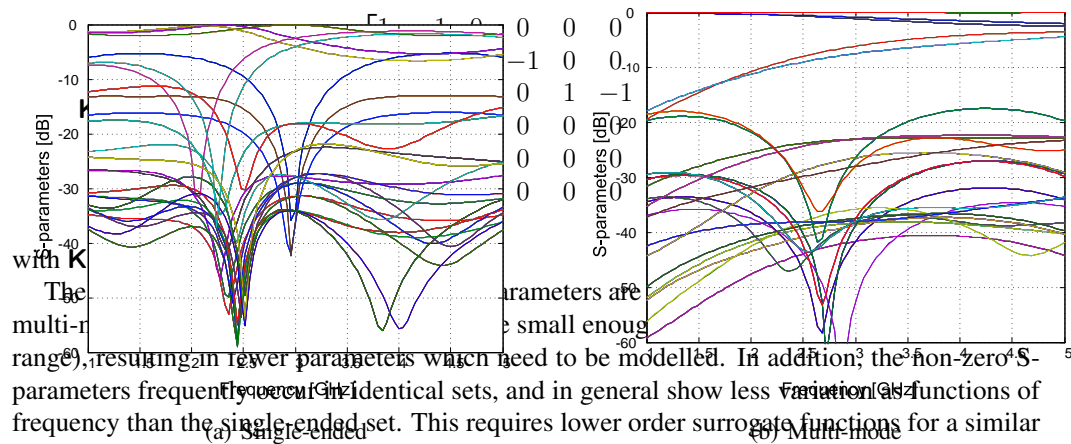


Figure 4: Single-ended and multi-mode S-parameters
Figure 5.39: Six conductor transmission line S-parameters (from [105])

The given multi-mode set is of course only one example, and in general, each problem can be analyzed in order to find the optimum transformation matrix which will result in the smallest number of non-zero S-parameters which can be modelled with the lowest order functions. The transformation technique has very few limitations mathematically, and can be included into most surrogate algorithms very easily as a data pre-conditioning step. This requires lower order surrogate functions for a similar modelling accuracy. Taken in combination, the change in the choice of excitation functions will result in a significant simplification of the required multi-port surrogate model.

5.5. Reflection antenna feeds

The given multi-mode set is of course only one example, and in general, each problem can be analyzed in order to find the optimum transformation matrix which will result in the smallest number of non-zero S-parameters which can be modelled with the lowest order functions. The transformation technique has very few limitations mathematically, and can be included into most surrogate algorithms very easily as a data pre-conditioning step. This requires lower order surrogate functions for a similar modelling accuracy. Taken in combination, the change in the choice of excitation functions will result in a significant simplification of the required multi-port surrogate model.

5.6. Conclusion

The given multi-mode set is of course only one example, and in general, each problem can be analyzed in order to find the optimum transformation matrix which will result in the smallest number of non-zero S-parameters which can be modelled with the lowest order functions. The transformation technique has very few limitations mathematically, and can be included into most surrogate algorithms very easily as a data pre-conditioning step. This requires lower order surrogate functions for a similar modelling accuracy. Taken in combination, the change in the choice of excitation functions will result in a significant simplification of the required multi-port surrogate model.

ACKNOWLEDGEMENT

The authors thank CST for providing software and support.

REFERENCES

- [1] P. Meyer, D.S. Prinsloo, Generalized Multi-Mode Scattering Parameter and Antenna Far-Field Conversions. *IEEE Trans. Antennas and Propagation*, **63**, 4815-4825, 2015.
- [2] P. Meyer, Multi-Conductor Transmission Line Analysis Using the Generalized Multi-Mode S-parameter Transformation. *19th IEEE Workshop on Signal and Power Integrity (SPI-2015)*, Berlin, Germany, March 2015.

[106].

For radio astronomy, bandwidth is normally of very high importance, and for the SKA a frequency range of 1-20 GHz is envisaged for the reflector array. This is an exceedingly complex problem, as not only does the input reflection match have to be sufficiently good over a 1:20 bandwidth, but the illumination of the reflector has to ideally be constant in terms of beam width and phase centre over this whole band. The *quadruple-ridged flared horn (QRFH)* antenna is one of the best candidates to achieve bandwidths approaching this, as it offers unique abilities to control the beamwidth over very wide frequency ranges, using combinations of higher order waveguide modes at the feed aperture. The control of these modes is however very difficult, and most QRFH antennas

Quadruple-Ridged Flared Horn Antenna

The basic structure of a QRFH is shown in Fig. 5.40, with a cross-section of the flared section in Fig. 5.41. Virtually all design procedures at the time approximated the flare curve using exponential curves, and simply optimised the

ridge taper of a quadruple-ridged flared horn to produce a desired aperture field distribution. An example is presented which produces a horn with improved efficiency over a 6:1 bandwidth. The profile of this taper is shown in Fig. 1.

As such an optimisation should ideally include the reflector, a time-varying aperture field distribution is possible to improve the antenna performance. A QRFH is designed for an offset Gregorian reflector system and produces an aperture efficiency above 50% across the entire operational bandwidth (6:1).

The widely used approach for designing a quadruple-ridged flared horn (QRFH) is to employ simple analytical functions for the tapering of the ridge and sidewall profiles in the flared section of the horn [1]. A search function is typically used to find an optimal solution for the tapering parameters of these tapering profile functions [2]. This approach is not only very time consuming but it does not necessarily provide an optimal geometry for the radiating

1 INTRODUCTION

The widely used approach for designing a quadruple-ridged flared horn (QRFH) is to employ simple analytical functions for the tapering of the ridge and sidewall profiles in the flared section of the horn [1]. A search function is typically used to find an optimal solution for the tapering parameters of these tapering profile functions [2]. This approach is not only very time consuming but it does not necessarily provide an optimal geometry for the radiating

Fig. 1. Cross-section of the QRFH antenna with the quadraxial feed.

Figure 5.40: QRFH structure (from [108])

As such an optimisation should ideally include the reflector, a time-varying aperture field distribution is possible to improve the antenna performance. A QRFH is designed for an offset Gregorian reflector system and produces an aperture efficiency above 50% across the entire operational bandwidth (6:1).

The widely used approach for designing a quadruple-ridged flared horn (QRFH) is to employ simple analytical functions for the tapering of the ridge and sidewall profiles in the flared section of the horn [1]. A search function is typically used to find an optimal solution for the tapering parameters of these tapering profile functions [2]. This approach is not only very time consuming but it does not necessarily provide an optimal geometry for the radiating

There are a few considerations that need to be taken into account when designing a QRFH. The first is the choice of the aperture field distribution. This is chosen from a set of available QRFHs employed with exponential tapering functions. This feed pattern produces an aperture efficiency of 72% in the OG system. In order to evaluate the far-field performance from a modal perspective, the aperture field distribution is calculated from the far-field using a technique proposed by Ludwig for circular apertures [6].

The optimal pattern is used as a reference for the design performance at all frequencies over the operational bandwidth of 2 to 12 GHz. At each frequency the coefficients of all the cylindrical modes above cut-off are calculated for an aperture diam-

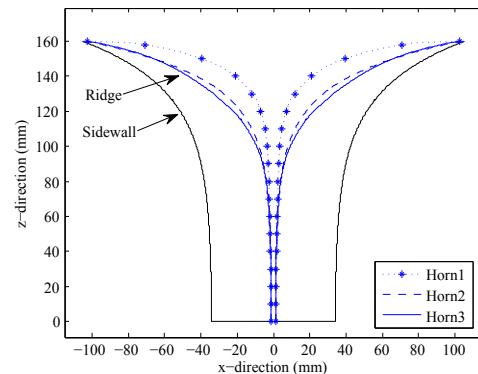


Figure 5.41: Cross-section of flared ridges (from [108])

2 STRATEGY FOR THE SYNTHESIS

The aim of this work is to develop an ultra-wide band antenna feed consisting of a quadruple-ridged flared horn (QRFH) antenna. The design of the QRFH is based on the design of the OG system. The specific system used here has a $F/2$ ratio of 0.95 with the main and sub-reflector. The design presented here has as specific goals a high aperture efficiency (above 50%) and an acceptable input impedance match in order to maximize the aperture efficiency.

The design presented here has as specific goals a high aperture efficiency (above 50%) and an acceptable input impedance match in order to maximize the aperture efficiency. The design presented here has as specific goals a high aperture efficiency (above 50%) and an acceptable input impedance match in order to maximize the aperture efficiency.

The design presented here has as specific goals a high aperture efficiency (above 50%) and an acceptable input impedance match in order to maximize the aperture efficiency.

problem of the coaxial-to-waveguide transition was addressed. In standard QRFH-antennas, this is done by running a very thin coaxial line cross-wise through one of the (thin) ridges, and extending the centre conductor across the gap, as shown in Fig. 5.42(b). Such a transition however generates multiple modes right at the base of the horn, requiring the control of all these modes throughout the whole length of the horn. To solve this problem, the structure in Fig. 5.42(a) was proposed [107], [112]. This structure used a novel *quadraxial feed*, where a four-line transmission line (a quadraxial line) feeds directly via four lines into each of the four ridges.

The advantage of the quadraxial feed is that a very pure single-mode excitation can be applied by simply exciting the four pins correctly. The effect of this is quite dramatic, as shown in Fig. 5.43, where Fig. 5.43(a) shows the magnitudes of the modes excited at the base of the horn using the conventional feed, with Fig. 5.43(b) showing the same when the quadraxial feed is used. It is evident that, especially at higher frequencies, the quadraxial feed generates significantly fewer modes. In this first paper, the aim was to simply create a pure TE_{11} -mode, which was shown to give a significantly better beamwidth performance over frequency. A follow-up paper presented a very simple circuit model for the proposed quadraxial feed, which made it possible to design such a feed without numerical electromagnetic analysis [113].

Once a way was established to guarantee an almost pure TE_{11} -mode at the base of the horn, the design of the tapered section of the horn could be addressed. This was performed in two steps: firstly, the aperture plane modal content which would produce a desired illumination pattern was calculated using the procedure by Ludwig, and secondly, the taper is designed to generate these modes. This procedure was presented in [108].

Fig. 5.44 show the relative TE -mode magnitudes which will produce an optimal aperture field over frequency for a feed intended to work in an unshaped offset Gregorian system, with an F/D ratio of 0.55, and main and sub-reflectors having diameters of 15m and 5m respectively. The difference between the required relative magnitude of the TE_{11} -mode at low and high frequencies is quite substantial, requiring careful control. To achieve such a control, a taper design based on the cut-off frequencies of the different modes at various points in the taper were used as design parameters, where it is assumed that a mode below cut-off does not contribute to the aperture field. An example for three different horns is shown in Fig. 5.45.

The full technique was presented for a possible solution to the SKA Phase 2 antennas in 2016 in an IEEE Transactions paper [114]. The manufactured prototype is shown in Figs. 5.46 and 5.47, where Fig. 5.46 shows the whole structure, milled from Aluminium, and Fig. 5.47 the quadraxial feed and the transition to four coaxial ports. This design included a number of improvements, including a stepped outside cylinder at the base of the horn to improve matching.

The measured results are shown in Figs. 5.48 and 5.49. A significant im-

CHAPTER 5. ANTENNAS, ANTENNA FEEDS, AND MIXED-MODE FORMULATIONS

The 8th European Conference on Antennas and Propagation (EuCAP 2014)

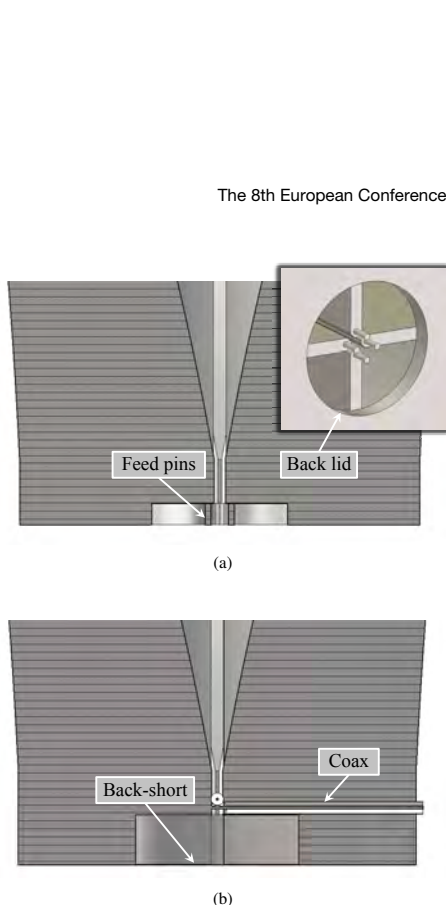


Fig. 2. CAD views of the cross-sections of two feed networks for the QRFH antenna in Fig. 1. (a) The quadraxial feed with centre conductors connected to the feed pins and the back lid. (b) The conventional feed with a back-short section and ridge-to-coax transition.

quadraxial transition (b) conventional transition (from [107])

differential impedance of the twinaxial line is the diameter of the cylinder in the back lid of the QRFH, shown in Fig.2(a). This diameter should be small enough in order for the higher-order modes to be below cut-off in the band of operation.

A unique feature of the QRFH antenna is that it can easily be separated into two independent sections as indicated in Fig. 1, reducing simulation time for design purposes. Here the throat section refers to the uniform waveguide terminated by the feeding network, while the flared section is the radiating part of the antenna. The flared section therefore serves as a good matching network between free-space and the fundamental TE_{11} mode in the throat.

However, the performance of the proposed antenna was compared with the conventional balun consisting of a back-short section and ridge-to-coax transition as shown in Fig. 2(b), a QRFH antenna operating in TM_{01} mode is very sensitive to the dimensions of the throat dimensions (i.e. cylinder diameter, ridge thickness, gap width, etc.) are taken from an existing QRFH design for a back-feed with a maximum efficiency of 50%.

In an environment where optimisation of the antenna dimensions (i.e. horn length, aperture size and taper) are optimised for constant beamwidth over the frequency range, while the horn is excited by a TM_{01} mode. The product is an antenna capable of being fed by either the coax- or twinax-feed.

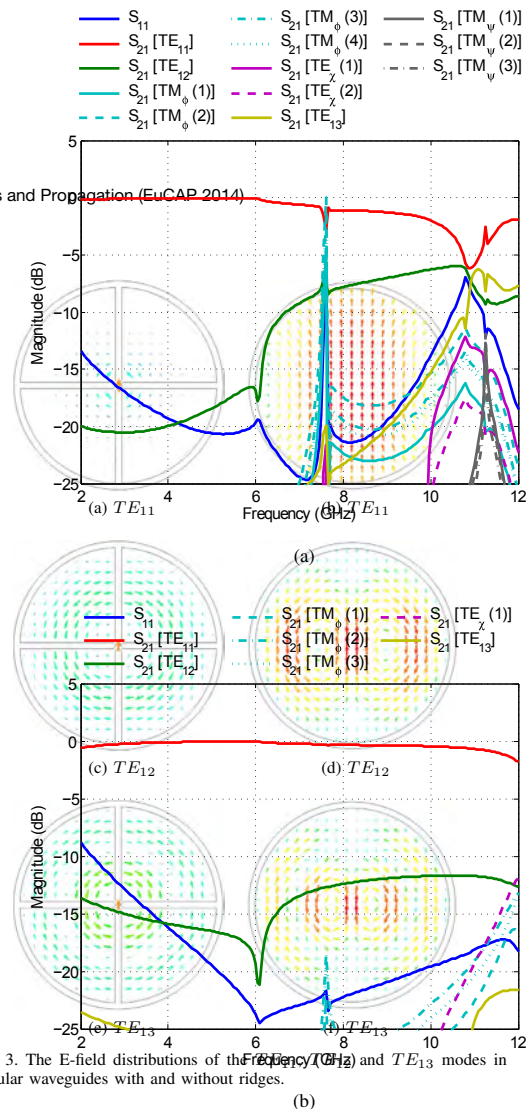


Fig. 3. The E-field distributions of the TE_{11} and TE_{13} modes in circular waveguides with and without ridges.

Figure 4. The simulated S-parameters of the throat section of the QRFH, excited by either the coax- or twinax-feed. In these configurations port 1 is connected to the feed structure and a waveguide port terminating in a TM_{01} mode should be dominant. The field distributions of a superposition of cylindrical modes, $\{TM_{01}, TM_{11}, TM_{21}\} \subset TM_{\phi}$, and $\{TE_{11}, TE_{12}, TE_{13}\} \subset TM_{\psi}$, are shown. The required radiation and the subordinate modes should be in the order of power $TM_{11}, TE_{12}, TM_{12}, TE_{13}$, etc. In Fig. 3 the field distributions of the first three TE modes are shown for clarity. Furthermore, due to the two-fold symmetry of the aperture field distribution, all even-order modes are undesired. (TE_{11} and TM_{11} are close to 0 dB) for both high frequencies and a high-order modes. Using these measured results, predictions of the full system and its waveguide port with the coax-feed and the twinax-feed for the majority of the CST-MWS. For this purpose a waveguide port is placed at the plane where the flared section of the complete QRFH is subordinate. The simulated S-parameters of the throat section will be a peak in the radiation pattern, as shown in Fig. 4(a) and 4(b), respectively. These results only include the dominant TE_{11} mode.

As expected, the TE_{11} mode is most strongly excited over

TE_{11} mode, the throat, aperture. Further at the lower imbalance of is evanescent.

Another is a cut-off frequency strong resonance $|S_{2,1}|$ of the not present of TE_{13} and range in Fig. at 7.6 GHz.

The TM_{01} modes. In ridge specific cylindrical between the tions as a s to its own cylindrical superposition modes represent TM_{01} and L re which is the capacitive lo Fig. 4 refer

It is clear excited in the feed substrate higher-order the QRFH,

Although in the liter with about (typically de a factor of results from where the c the coaxial f mode. This cannot be co sion technic was introdu suppress the to improve in the H-plane

To illustra band solution the E, H and antenna whe feed. Each g

ter of $1.4\lambda_{l0}$ [wavelength of the lowest operational frequency (f_{l0}) in free space]. The magnitudes of the significant mode coefficients are indicated by the circles in Fig. 2 and are normalized with the total sum of the magnitudes of the calculated coefficients.

CHAPTER 5. ANTENNAS, ANTENNA FEEDS, AND MIXED-MODE FORMULATIONS

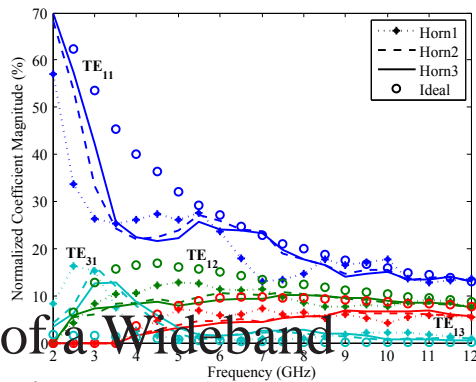


Figure 5.44: Aperture modes (from Petrie Meyer, Member, IEEE, Marianna V. Ivashina, Senior Member, IEEE, and Rob Maaskant, Senior Member, IEEE)



Fig. 1. Photo of the manufactured QRFH.

Figure 5.46: QRFH antenna prototype (from [114]).

As the design described here is only concerned with the flared section of the horn, i.e. $z > 0$, in certain sections of the horn. Over such a wide bandwidth control of these modes is very challenging, as the cutoff frequency and propagation constant of each mode are functions of the varying horn cross section. Modal aspects become even more of a concern in the work reported here, as in this case for an overmoded horn with a diameter of $0.45\lambda_{l0}$. This feed allows for an almost pure TE_{11} mode excitation of the plane of the horn. The entire structure is then optimized to try and mitigate the aforementioned detrimental aspects. This design approach consumes time and resources, without giving much control over specific radiation aspects. For example, the QRFH geometry reported in [1] consists of 15 unknowns. The desired set of values is obtained from their database which consists of 10 000 different QRFH geometries, computed by dedicated workstations.

In this paper, a design technique is introduced, which specifically focuses on controlling and utilizing modal content inside the horn. The proposed technique enables a systematic targeting of modal-related radiation effects, which in combination with the ability to design the feeding network separately from the radiating structure—e.g., through equivalent circuit models [10], [11]—obviates the need for extensive multivariable electromagnetic optimization. A fundamental part of the technique is the use of a quadraxial feed [8], [11] as excitation for the QRFH. This feed suppresses higher order modes at the input and consequently allows for good control over the modal content in the horn. A QRFH (shown in Fig. 1) is designed and

5.6 Conclusion

The work on antennas, antenna feeds, and mixed-mode formulations, and is set to continue. My knowledge of multi-mode networks, and passive structures proved invaluable when applied to the field of antennas, especially the work presented in this chapter. South Africa is set

$$x = \left(\frac{a_{ap} - a_{th}}{e^{RL} - 1} \right) e^{Rz} + \left(\frac{a_{th} e^{RL} - a_{ap}}{e^{RL} - 1} \right) \quad (1)$$

where a_{ap} and a_{th} are the aperture and throat radii respectively, L is the flared section length and R is the exponential opening rate of the function. In the design discussed here, this function is used for the sidewall taper with $R=0.035$ and corresponds to an existing QRFH design.

3 DESIGN CONSIDERATIONS AND RESULTS

A simulation is set up in CST's Microwave Studio which consists of a uniform circular quadraxial waveguide with a fixed outer diameter and a varying gap between ridges. The cutoff frequencies of the significant modes are determined from the simulations for different ridge gaps. By applying this data to the profile of a QRFH, either the sidewall diameter, the throat radius, or the gap between ridges, a specific mode can be excited at a point in the horn. The design of the horn is then optimized using the technique from [108].

Figure 9. Simulated input reflection coefficient of the QRFH with one set of pins excited in the differential mode.

3.1 Horn1: Constant Cut-off

The first horn is designed with the technique of a constant cut-off. The horn is excited in the differential mode, and the reflection coefficient is shown in Fig. 3. The horn is designed with a diameter of $0.83\lambda_{l0}$, which is calculated using the formula $f_{l0} = c/\lambda_{l0}$. The horn is excited in the differential mode, and the reflection coefficient is shown in Fig. 3. The horn is designed with a diameter of $0.83\lambda_{l0}$, which is calculated using the formula $f_{l0} = c/\lambda_{l0}$. The horn is excited in the differential mode, and the reflection coefficient is shown in Fig. 3.

causes a sudden increase in the beamwidth as well as the polarization. The horn is excited in the differential mode, and the reflection coefficient is shown in Fig. 3. The horn is designed with a diameter of $0.83\lambda_{l0}$, which is calculated using the formula $f_{l0} = c/\lambda_{l0}$. The horn is excited in the differential mode, and the reflection coefficient is shown in Fig. 3.

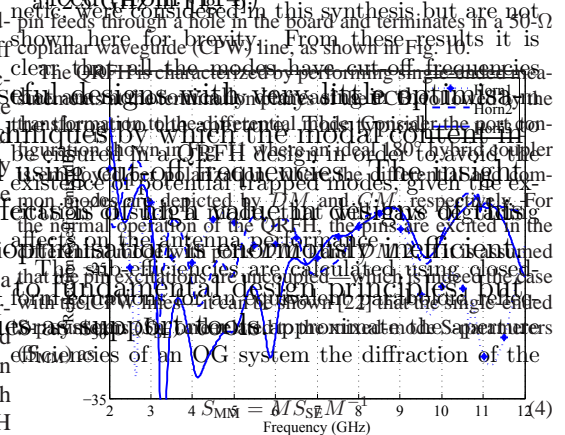


Figure 4: Reflection coefficients of the horns fed only in the TE_{11} mode. The plot shows the simulated and measured results for the horns. The horn is designed with a diameter of $0.83\lambda_{l0}$, which is calculated using the formula $f_{l0} = c/\lambda_{l0}$. The horn is excited in the differential mode, and the reflection coefficient is shown in Fig. 3.

where S_{11} is the reflection coefficient, f is the frequency, and c is the speed of light.

Figure 4: Reflection coefficients of the horns fed only in the TE_{11} mode. The plot shows the simulated and measured results for the horns. The horn is designed with a diameter of $0.83\lambda_{l0}$, which is calculated using the formula $f_{l0} = c/\lambda_{l0}$. The horn is excited in the differential mode, and the reflection coefficient is shown in Fig. 3.

where S_{11} is the reflection coefficient, f is the frequency, and c is the speed of light.

Figure 4: Reflection coefficients of the horns fed only in the TE_{11} mode. The plot shows the simulated and measured results for the horns. The horn is designed with a diameter of $0.83\lambda_{l0}$, which is calculated using the formula $f_{l0} = c/\lambda_{l0}$. The horn is excited in the differential mode, and the reflection coefficient is shown in Fig. 3.

where S_{11} is the reflection coefficient, f is the frequency, and c is the speed of light.

Figure 4: Reflection coefficients of the horns fed only in the TE_{11} mode. The plot shows the simulated and measured results for the horns. The horn is designed with a diameter of $0.83\lambda_{l0}$, which is calculated using the formula $f_{l0} = c/\lambda_{l0}$. The horn is excited in the differential mode, and the reflection coefficient is shown in Fig. 3.

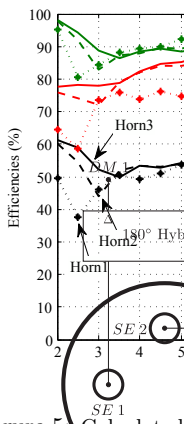


Figure 5: Calculated efficiencies of the horn reflector system.

3.2 Horn2: Suppressed Single-Ended Results

In order to mitigate the effects of the ridge at the aperture, the horn is designed with a diameter of $0.83\lambda_{l0}$, which is calculated using the formula $f_{l0} = c/\lambda_{l0}$. The horn is excited in the differential mode, and the reflection coefficient is shown in Fig. 3. The horn is designed with a diameter of $0.83\lambda_{l0}$, which is calculated using the formula $f_{l0} = c/\lambda_{l0}$. The horn is excited in the differential mode, and the reflection coefficient is shown in Fig. 3.

3.3 Horn3: Suppressed Mixed-Mode Results

and mixed-mode electric field components, represent either the TE_{11} or TE_{31} components. It is known from Fig. 2(a) that the horn this mode can be altered by the horn geometry. The horn is designed with a diameter of $0.83\lambda_{l0}$, which is calculated using the formula $f_{l0} = c/\lambda_{l0}$. The horn is excited in the differential mode, and the reflection coefficient is shown in Fig. 3. The horn is designed with a diameter of $0.83\lambda_{l0}$, which is calculated using the formula $f_{l0} = c/\lambda_{l0}$. The horn is excited in the differential mode, and the reflection coefficient is shown in Fig. 3.

where S_{11} is the reflection coefficient, f is the frequency, and c is the speed of light.

Figure 4: Reflection coefficients of the horns fed only in the TE_{11} mode. The plot shows the simulated and measured results for the horns. The horn is designed with a diameter of $0.83\lambda_{l0}$, which is calculated using the formula $f_{l0} = c/\lambda_{l0}$. The horn is excited in the differential mode, and the reflection coefficient is shown in Fig. 3.

where S_{11} is the reflection coefficient, f is the frequency, and c is the speed of light.

Figure 4: Reflection coefficients of the horns fed only in the TE_{11} mode. The plot shows the simulated and measured results for the horns. The horn is designed with a diameter of $0.83\lambda_{l0}$, which is calculated using the formula $f_{l0} = c/\lambda_{l0}$. The horn is excited in the differential mode, and the reflection coefficient is shown in Fig. 3.

where S_{11} is the reflection coefficient, f is the frequency, and c is the speed of light.

Figure 4: Reflection coefficients of the horns fed only in the TE_{11} mode. The plot shows the simulated and measured results for the horns. The horn is designed with a diameter of $0.83\lambda_{l0}$, which is calculated using the formula $f_{l0} = c/\lambda_{l0}$. The horn is excited in the differential mode, and the reflection coefficient is shown in Fig. 3.

where S_{11} is the reflection coefficient, f is the frequency, and c is the speed of light.

Figure 4: Reflection coefficients of the horns fed only in the TE_{11} mode. The plot shows the simulated and measured results for the horns. The horn is designed with a diameter of $0.83\lambda_{l0}$, which is calculated using the formula $f_{l0} = c/\lambda_{l0}$. The horn is excited in the differential mode, and the reflection coefficient is shown in Fig. 3.

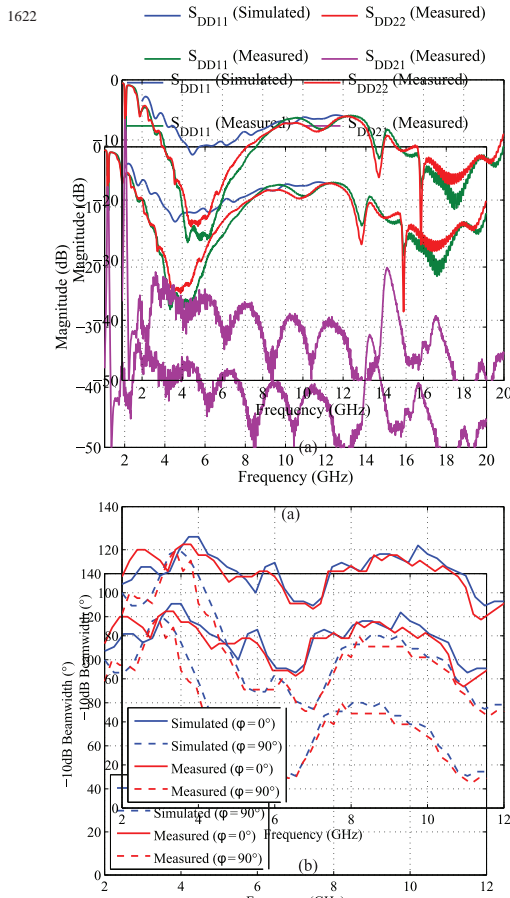


Fig. 12. Simulated and measured (a) S-parameters of the differential mode; and (b) the -10 -dB beamwidths in the E- and H-planes.

Figure 5.48: Measured results of the QRFH prototype (a) S-parameters of the differential mode and (b) the far-field radiation of the manufactured prototype was measured in an anechoic chamber using a probe antenna. In Fig. 12(b), the -10 -dB beamwidth results are shown for the E- and H-planes, where it is clear that the measured results agree well with the simulations. The H-plane beamwidth narrows between 3 and 5 GHz relative to E-plane beamwidth but then maintains a near-constant difference over the rest of the band, with an overall elliptic shape. The measured far-field patterns are given in Fig. 13 for different cut planes across the frequency range. It is clear that the main beam occurs in either of the principle planes, even at the highest frequencies. This is due to the careful control of the modal content in the horn back, however, it is evident that at higher frequencies, even at the normally problematic higher frequencies, the normalized cross-polarization patterns in the $\phi = 45^\circ$ are given in Fig. 13(c). Note that the measured cross-polarization levels are slightly lower than in the simulated results, due to the difficulty in positioning the horn with a 45° orientation with respect to the probe antenna.

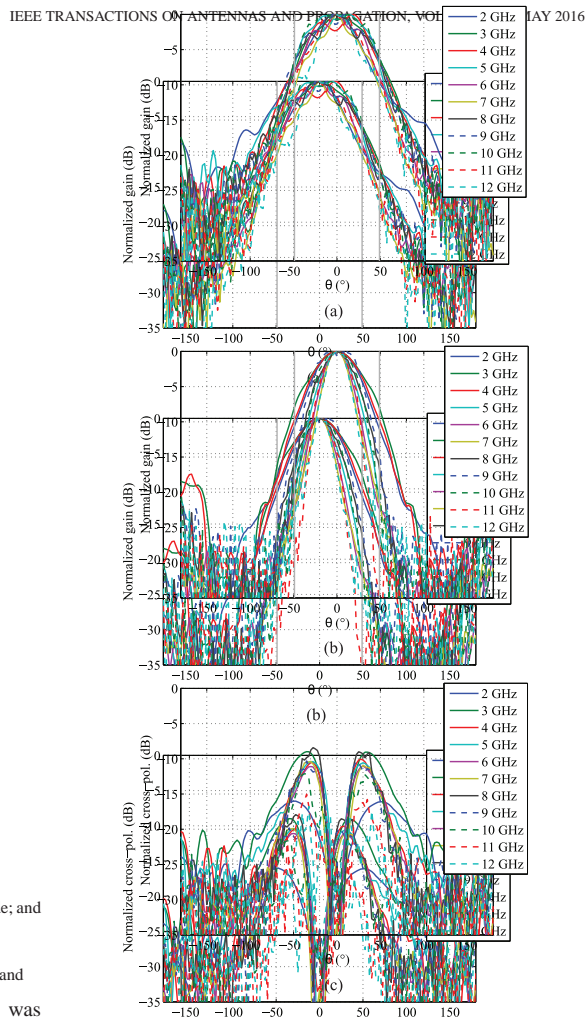


Fig. 13. Measured far-field patterns are shown from 2 to 12 GHz. The copolar results are given for the (a) E-plane and (b) H-plane cuts, while the cross-polar results are given for the (c) $\phi = 45^\circ$ plane.

Figure 5.49: Measured results of the QRFH prototype (a) E-plane cuts (b) H-plane cuts and (c) cross-polar results. The measured results are shown for the (a) E-plane and (b) H-plane cuts, while the cross-polar results are given for the (c) $\phi = 45^\circ$ plane. The measured results are shown for the (a) E-plane and (b) H-plane cuts, while the cross-polar results are given for the (c) $\phi = 45^\circ$ plane. The measured results are shown for the (a) E-plane and (b) H-plane cuts, while the cross-polar results are given for the (c) $\phi = 45^\circ$ plane. The measured results are shown for the (a) E-plane and (b) H-plane cuts, while the cross-polar results are given for the (c) $\phi = 45^\circ$ plane.

C. Performance in Reflector System

As this paper focuses on the design of a QRFH for a reflector antenna, the performance of the QRFH within the full reflector

As this paper focuses on the design of a QRFH for a reflector antenna, the performance of the QRFH within the full reflector

Chapter 6

Conclusions

This is the conclusion.

Appendices

Appendix A

Postgraduate Students

A.1 DEng Graduates

The DEng is the highest degree awarded by the Faculty of Engineering at Stellenbosch University. It is a lifetime award based on contributions over a full career.

1. D.B. Davidson - Contributions to Engineering Electromagnetics - (2017)
2. W.J. Perold - From High-Speed Superconducting Devices to Nanosensors (2017)

A.2 Postdoctoral Fellows

1. E. Knox-Davies - Scanning mm-wave antenna (2006-2007)
2. M. Schoeman - Meta-Modelling of Microwave Structures (2006-2007)
3. T. Sickel - X-band Limiters (2006-2007)
4. D. Prinsloo - Quad-Mode Antenna Arrays (2015-2016)

A.3 PhD Graduates

1. C. van Niekerk - Multi-Bias Decomposition-Based Optimisation for the Extraction of Small-Signal GaAs FET Models (1999)
2. R. Lehmensieck - Efficient Adaptive Sampling Applied to Multivariate, Multiple Output Rational Interpolation Models, with Applications in Electromagnetic-Based Device Modelling (2001)
3. W. Steyn - CAD-Based Iris Design Procedures for Multimode Coupled Cavity Devices (2002)

4. C.A.W. Vale - Growth-Based Computer Aided Design Strategies for Multimode Waveguide Design with the Aid of Functional Blocks (2001)
5. R.H. Geschke - Application of an Extended Huygens's Principle to Scattering Discontinuities in Waveguide (2004)
6. T. Sickel - Tuneable Evanescent Mode X-Band Waveguide Switch (2005)
7. M. Schoeman - Interpolation-Based Modelling of Microwave Ring Resonators (2006)
8. D.I.L. de Villiers - Analysis and Design of Conical Transmission Line Power Combiners (2007)
9. T. Stander - High-Power Broadband Absorptive Waveguide Filters (2009)
10. D.M.P. Smith - Aspects of Small Airborne Passive Millimetre-Wave Imaging Systems (2010)
11. S.O. Nasser - Miniaturised Multilayer RF and Microwave Circuits (2016)
12. D.S.vd M.Prinsloo - Multi-Mode Antennas for Hemispherical Field-of-View Coverage(2015)
13. T.S. Beukman - Modal-Based Design Techniques for Circular Quadruple-Ridged Flared Horn Antennas (2015)
14. T.G. Brand - Synthesis Methods for Multiband Coupled Resonator Filters (2014)
15. E. Meyer - Tunable Narrow-Band X-Band Bandpass Filters (2018)
16. S.K. Sharma - Variable Bandwidth Planar Coupled Resonator Filters

A.4 Current PhD students - 2018

1. R. Kenned - Optimum noise matching of very large connected antenna arrays
2. S. Maas - SIW Waffle-Iron Filters

A.5 Master's students upgraded to PhD

1. C.A.W. Vale
2. T. Sickel

3. D.I.L. de Villiers
4. T. Stander
5. E. Meyer (prev Botes)
6. R. Kenned

A.6 Master's Graduates

1. J.E. van Zyl - A Calibration Procedure for Superconducting Microwave Measurements Using One Calibration Standard (1994)
2. C. Smit - Die Ontwikkeling en Evaluasie van 'n Progressiewe Korrelasie kodesluitlus vir 'n Strekspektrum Kommunikasiestelsel (1995)
3. C. van Niekerk - An Investigation into the Manufacturing and Measurement of Superconducting Microwave Devices (1995)
4. J.C. Kruger - Design of Wideband, Low Loss, High Power Waveguide Couplers and Transitions for Implementation in Power Combiners and Dividers (1998)
5. W.J.A. van Brakel - Solving Three-Layer Planar Microwave Structures with the Method-of-Lines (1998)
6. W. Steyn - A Room Temperature X-Band Receiver Front End Optimised for Introduction of High Temperature Superconductor Technology (1998)
7. J.D. Theron - Die Ontwikkeling van 'n Koaksiale Resoneerder Filter vir Implementering in L-Band Dipleksers (1999)
8. M. MÅ¼ller - Neural Network Models of Slotted Waveguide Directional Couplers (2001)
9. A.P.E. van der Colff - Rekenaargesteuende Instelling van Gekoppelde-Resoneerder Filters deur die gebruik van Modelgebaseerde Parameteronttrekking (2002)
10. K.H. Cherenack - Modelling of Layered Cylindrical Dielectric Resonators with reference to Whispering Gallery Mode Resonators (2002)
11. L. Sam - The Design of a Coupled Coaxial Resonator Filter for Low Earth Orbit Satellites working at Microwave Frequencies (2002)
12. M. Schoeman - Mixed-Potential Integral Equation Technique for Hybrid Microstrip-Slotline Mutli-Layered Circuits with Horizontal and Vertical Shielding Walls (2003)

13. M.L. Strydom - Design of Equal Division Microwave Power Dividers (2003)
14. N. Coetzee - Asymmetrical S-band Coupled Resonator Filters (2005)
15. V.P. Netshifhire - The Design and Implementation of Microwave Receiver Front End Components (2005)
16. E.M Hansmann - An Investigation of Coupling Mechanisms in Narrow-band Microwave Filters (2009)
17. S. Maas - Coaxial Resonator Filters (2011)
18. S. Otto - A Study of Radio Astronomy Principles and SKA Pathfinder System Designs with Pulsar Science (2011)
19. M. van der Walt - A Design Environment for the Automated Optimisation of Low Cross-Polarisation Horn Antennas (2010)
20. K. Schoeman - Waveguide Antenna Feed for the Square Kilometre Array (2011)
21. D.S.vd M. Prinsloo - Characterisation of L-band Differential Low Noise Amplifiers (2011)
22. S.O. Nasser - An Investigation of the Equivalence between Compline and Evanescent-Mode Waveguide Filters and Aspects related to Reduction of Manufacturing Costs for Compline Filters (2011)
23. P. Terblanche - Electronically Adjustable Bandpass Filter (2011)
24. D.A. Botes - Wideband, Low-Noise Amplifiers for the Mid-Range SKA (2014)
25. M. van Wyk - The Ribbon Microphone: A Multi-Physics Educational Aid (2017)
26. G. van Tonder - Beamforming Techniques for a Quad-Mode Antenna Array (2016)
27. P.L. Benson - Tunable Lumped Element Notch Filter for UHF Communications Systems (2017)

A.7 Current Master's students

1. L. Johnson - Tunable Pedestal SIW Filters
2. A. Bester - Evaluation of the SU Antenna Range

Bibliography

- [1] W. Perold, “From High-Speed Superconducting Devices to Nanosensors,” Ph.D. dissertation, Department of Electrical and Electronic Engineering, Stellenbosch University, 2017.
- [2] D. Davidson, “Contributions to Engineering Electromagnetics,” Ph.D. dissertation, Department of Electrical and Electronic Engineering, Stellenbosch University, 2017.
- [3] R. Holemans, P. Van Der Walt, W. Rencken, P. Meyer, and P. Steyn, “Accurate procedures for the exact synthesis of high order narrow band distributed filters,” in *Second Joint Symposium on Antennas & Propagation and Microwave Theory and Techniques*, Pretoria, 1988, pp. 32.1–32.11.
- [4] R. Holemans, P. Van der Walt, W. Rencken, P. Meyer, and P. Steyn, “Accurate procedures for the exact synthesis of high order narrow band distributed filters,” *Transactions of the SAIEE*, vol. 80, no. 1, pp. 12–15, 1990.
- [5] P. Meyer and P. Van Der Walt, “Design of narrowband E plane waveguide filters,” in *Second Joint Symposium on Antennas & Propagation and Microwave Theory and Techniques*, Pretoria, 1988, pp. 26.1–26.11.
- [6] P. Meyer, “The design of E-plane waveguide filters with a pocket calculator,” *Joint Symposium on Antennas & Propagation and Microwave Theory and Techniques*, 1991.
- [7] P. Meyer and P. Van der Walt, “Design equations for narrow-band E-plane waveguide filters,” *Transactions of the SAIEE*, vol. 84, no. 3, pp. 226–229, 1993.
- [8] P. Meyer, “The design and analysis of waveguide E-plane filters with multiple round inductive posts using a Moment-Method approach,” in *IEEE AFRICON Conference 1996*, vol. 1, Stellenbosch, 1996, pp. 532–535.
- [9] —, “A comined Mode-Matching and Method-of-Lines procedure for the analysis of planar microwave structures,” PhD, Stellenbosch, 1995.

- [10] ———, “Solving microstrip discontinuities with a combined Mode-Matching and Method-of-Lines procedure,” *Microwave and Optical Technology Letters*, vol. 8, no. 1, pp. 4–8, 1995.
- [11] P. Meyer and P. Van Der Walt, “Closed-form expression for implementing the method of lines for two-layer boxed planar structures,” *Electronics Letters*, vol. 30, no. 18, pp. 1497–1498, 1994.
- [12] P. Meyer, “Analysis of microstrip filters with a combined Mode-Matching and Method-of-Lines procedure,” in *IEEE MTT-S International Microwave Symposium Digest 1995*, vol. 2, Orlando, 1995, pp. 837–840.
- [13] R. Geschke, “Application of an Extended Huygens’s Principle to Scattering Discontinuities in Waveguide,” Ph.D. dissertation, Department of Electrical and Electronic Engineering, Stellenbosch University, 2004.
- [14] R. Geschke, R. Ferrari, D. Davidson, and P. Meyer, “Application of extended Huygens’ principle to scattering discontinuities in waveguide,” in *2002 IEEE AFRICON Conference*, vol. 2, 2002, pp. 555–558.
- [15] ———, “Application of extended Huygens’ Principle to scattering discontinuities in waveguide,” *Transactions of the SAIEE*, vol. 94, no. 2, pp. 28–31, 2003.
- [16] ———, “Application of extended Huygens’ principle to dielectric posts in waveguide,” in *Proceedings of the IASTED International Conference on Antennas, Radar, and Wave Propagation*, 2004, pp. 107–110.
- [17] ———, “The solution of waveguide scattering problems by application of an extended Huygens formulation,” *IEEE Transactions on Microwave Theory and Techniques*, vol. 54, no. 10, pp. 3698–3705, 2006.
- [18] C. Vale and P. Meyer, “Automated intelligent mode selection for fast mode matching analysis of waveguide discontinuities,” in *IEEE MTT-S International Microwave Symposium Digest 2001*, vol. 1, Phoenix, 2001, pp. 1949–1952.
- [19] M. Schoeman, “Mixed-Potential Integral Equation Technique for Hybrid Microstrip-Slotline Mutli-Layered Circuits with Horizontal and Vertical Shielding Walls,” Master’s thesis, Department of Electrical and Electronic Engineering, Stellenbosch University, 2003.
- [20] M. Schoeman and P. Meyer, “On the structure and packing of the Moment matrix in problems supporting simultaneous electric and magnetic surface currents,” *Microwave and Optical Technology Letters*, vol. 41, no. 6, pp. 500–505, 2004.

- [21] D. De Villiers and P. Meyer, "An efficient grid placing technique for 2-D Method of Moments analysis of coupled line structures," in *2007 IEEE AFRICON Conference*, Windhoek, 2007, pp. 1–6.
- [22] J. van Zyl, "A Calibration Procedure for Superconducting Microwave Measurements Using One Calibration Standard," Master's thesis, Department of Electrical and Electronic Engineering, Stellenbosch University, 1994.
- [23] J. Van Zyl, P. Meyer, and C. van Niekerk, "Simplified calibration procedure for cryogenic microwave measurements," in *IEEE MTT-S International Microwave Symposium Digest 1996*, vol. 3, 1996, pp. 1403–1406.
- [24] C. van Niekerk and P. Meyer, "The development of a simple TRL microstrip calibration and test fixture suitable for measurements at cryogenic temperatures," in *IEEE AFRICON Conference 1996*, vol. 2, Stellenbosch, 1996, pp. 919–922.
- [25] C. Van Niekerk, "Multi-Bias Decomposition-Based Optimisation for the Extraction of Small-Signal GaAs FET Models," Ph.D. dissertation, Department of Electrical and Electronic Engineering, Stellenbosch University, 1999.
- [26] C. Van Niekerk and P. Meyer, "A new approach for the extraction of an FET equivalent circuit from measured S parameters," *Microwave and Optical Technology Letters*, vol. 11, no. 5, pp. 279–281, 1996.
- [27] ———, "Performance and limitations of decompositionbased parameter-extraction procedures for FET small-signal models," *IEEE Transactions on Microwave Theory and Techniques*, vol. 46, no. 11, pp. 1620–1627, 1998.
- [28] C. Van Niekerk, D. Schreurs, and P. Meyer, "Recent developments in non-linear device modelling techniques," in *IEEE AFRICON Conference 1999*, vol. 2, Cape Town, 1999, pp. 1105–1110.
- [29] C. Van Niekerk, P. Meyer, D. Schreurs, and P. Winson, "A robust integrated multibias parameter-extraction method for MESFET and HEMT models," *IEEE Transactions on Microwave Theory and Techniques*, vol. 48, no. 5, pp. 777–786, 2000.
- [30] R. Lehmensiek, "Efficient Adaptive Sampling Applied to Multivariate, Multiple Output Rational Interpolation Models, with Applications in Electromagnetic-Based Device Modelling," Ph.D. dissertation, Department of Electrical and Electronic Engineering, Stellenbosch University, 2001.

- [31] R. Lehmensiek and P. Meyer, "An efficient adaptive frequency sampling algorithm for model-based parameter estimation, as applied to Aggressive Space Mapping," *Microwave and Optical Technology Letters*, vol. 24, no. 1, pp. 71–78, 2000.
- [32] —, "Using efficient model-based parameter estimation for pole-free solutions of modal propagation constants, as applied to shielded planar structures," *ACES Journal*, vol. 16, no. 1, pp. 1–10, 2001.
- [33] P. Meyer, R. Lehmensiek, and W. Steyn, "On the application of rational interpolation to root-finding problems in microwave engineering," in *International Conference on Numerical Analysis and Applied Mathematics (ICNAAM) 2004*, Greece, 2004, pp. 265–268.
- [34] R. Lehmensiek and P. Meyer, "Creating accurate multivariate rational interpolation models of microwave circuits by using efficient adaptive sampling to minimize the number of computational electromagnetic analyses," *IEEE Transactions on Microwave Theory and Techniques*, vol. 49, no. 8, pp. 1419–1430, 2001.
- [35] —, "Using efficient multivariate adaptive sampling by minimizing the number of computational electromagnetic analysis needed to establish accurate interpolation models," in *IEEE MTT-S International Microwave Symposium Digest 2001*, vol. 1, Phoenix, 2001, pp. 1749–1752.
- [36] R. Lehmensiek, P. Meyer, and M. Müller, "Adaptive sampling applied to multivariate, multiple output rational interpolation models with application to microwave circuits," *International Journal of RF and Microwave Computer-Aided Engineering*, vol. 12, no. 4, pp. 332–340, 2002.
- [37] M. Schoeman, "Interpolation-Based Modelling of Microwave Ring Resonators," Ph.D. dissertation, Department of Electrical and Electronic Engineering, Stellenbosch University, 2006.
- [38] M. Schoeman and P. Meyer, "On the use of adaptive rational interpolation for the calculation of resonator characteristics from MoM analysis," in *International Conference on Adaptive Modeling and Simulation (AD-MOS) 2005*, Barcelona, 2005, pp. 317–320.
- [39] —, "On the use of adaptive rational interpolation for the calculation of resonator characteristics from EM analysis," in *International Journal of RF and Microwave Computer-Aided Engineering*, vol. 16, no. 6, 2006, pp. 545–553.
- [40] —, "Prediction of microwave resonator frequencies using 1D adaptive vector fitting," in *International Conference on Numerical Analysis and Applied Mathematics (ICNAAM) 2006*, Greece, 2006, pp. 472–475.

- [41] ———, “A comparative study on adaptive rational macromodels of highly resonant structures,” *International Journal of RF and Microwave Computer-Aided Engineering*, vol. 17, no. 2, pp. 281–285, 2007.
- [42] D. Deschrijver, M. Schoeman, T. Dhaene, and P. Meyer, “Experimental analysis on the relaxation of macromodeling methods,” in *2007 IEEE AFRICON Conference*, Windhoek, 2007, pp. 1–5.
- [43] ———, “Rational approximation of noisy frequency responses,” in *23rd International Review of Progress in Applied Computational Electromagnetics (ACES 2007)*, no. 3, Verona, 2007, pp. 1439–1444.
- [44] M. Schoeman, T. Dhaene, and P. Meyer, “Vector fitting and state equation transformations to extract SPICE models,” in *International Conference on Numerical Analysis and Applied Mathematics (ICNAAM) 2006*, no. 1, Greece, 2006, pp. 462–465.
- [45] P. Meyer, C. Vale, and W. Steyn, “On the design of waveguide devices using multiple propagating modes,” in *6th International Conference on Telecommunications in Modern Satellite, Cable and Broadcasting Service, TELSIKS 2003 - Proceedings*, vol. 1, 2003, pp. 329–338.
- [46] W. Steyn, “CAD-Based Iris Design Procedures for Multimode Coupled Cavity Devices,” Ph.D. dissertation, Department of Electrical and Electronic Engineering, Stellenbosch University, 2002.
- [47] W. Steyn, R. Lehmensiek, and P. Meyer, “Integrated CAD procedure for iris design in a multi-mode wave guide environment,” in *IEEE MTT-S International Microwave Symposium Digest 2001*, vol. 2, Phoenix, 2001, pp. 1163–1166.
- [48] W. Steyn and P. Meyer, “A shorted waveguide-stub coupling mechanism for narrow-band multimode coupled resonator filters,” *IEEE Transactions on Microwave Theory and Techniques*, vol. 52, no. 6, pp. 1622–1625, 2004.
- [49] C. Vale, “Growth-Based Computer Aided Design Strategies for Multimode Waveguide Design with the Aid of Functional Blocks,” Ph.D. dissertation, Department of Electrical and Electronic Engineering, Stellenbosch University, 2001.
- [50] C. Vale and P. Meyer, “A design procedure for co-existing multi-mode waveguide bandstop filters,” in *IEEE MTT-S International Microwave Symposium Digest 2000*, vol. 2, Boston, 2000, pp. 1189–1192.
- [51] C. Vale, P. Meyer, and K. Palmer, “A design procedure for bandstop filters in waveguides supporting multiple propagating modes,” *IEEE*

- Transactions on Microwave Theory and Techniques*, vol. 48, no. 12, pp. 2496–2503, 2000.
- [52] T. Stander, “High-Power Broadband Absorptive Waveguide Filters,” Ph.D. dissertation, Department of Electrical and Electronic Engineering, Stellenbosch University, 2009.
 - [53] T. Stander, P. Meyer, P. Van Der Walt, and W. Steyn, “Waffle-iron filters with oblique boss patterns,” in *Proceedings of the 2012 International Conference on Electromagnetics in Advanced Applications, ICEAA’12*, Cape Town, 2012, pp. 1256–1257.
 - [54] S. Maas and P. Meyer, “Multilayer SIW Waffle-Iron filters,” *IEEE Transactions on Microwave Theory and Techniques (submitted)*, 2018.
 - [55] T. Stander and P. Meyer, “Etched ring absorbing waveguide filter based on a slotted waveguide antenna response,” *Microwave and Optical Technology Letters*, vol. 50, no. 4, pp. 977–981, 2008.
 - [56] T. Stander, P. Meyer, and P. Van der Walt, “Compact high-power broadband absorptive filters using slotted waveguide harmonic pads,” *IET Microwaves, Antennas and Propagation*, vol. 8, no. 9, pp. 673–678, 2014.
 - [57] R. Geschke, B. Jukanovic, and P. Meyer, “Filter parameter extraction for triple-band composite split-ring resonators and filters,” *IEEE Transactions on Microwave Theory and Techniques*, vol. 59, no. 6, pp. 1500–1508, 2011.
 - [58] —, “Compact triple-band resonators using multiple split-ring resonators,” in *European Microwave Week 2009, EuMW 2009: Science, Progress and Quality at Radiofrequencies, Conference Proceedings - 39th European Microwave Conference, EuMC 2009*, Rome, 2009, pp. 366–369.
 - [59] M. Ninic, B. Jukanovic, and P. Meyer, “Reconfigurable multi-state composite split-ring resonators,” *IEEE Microwave and Wireless Components Letters*, vol. 26, no. 4, pp. 267–269, 2016.
 - [60] S. Qian, T. Brand, J. Hong, and P. Meyer, “The design of miniature multilayer bandpass filters with mixed couplings,” *IEEE Transactions on Microwave Theory and Techniques*, vol. 61, no. 12, pp. 4072–4078, 2013.
 - [61] S. Nassar, “Miniaturised Multilayer RF and Microwave Circuits,” Ph.D. dissertation, Department of Electrical and Electronic Engineering, Stellenbosch University, 2016.

- [62] P. Meyer and S. Nassar, "Pedestal substrate integrated waveguide resonators and filters," *IET Microwaves, Antennas & Propagation*, pp. 1–8, 2017.
- [63] E. Botes and P. Meyer, "Spatially decoupled varactor biasing for a tunable staircase filter," *IET Microwaves, Antennas and Propagation*, vol. 11, no. 1, pp. 10–16, 2017.
- [64] E. Meyer, "Tunable Narrow-Band X-Band Bandpass Filters," Ph.D. dissertation, Department of Electrical and Electronic Engineering, Stellenbosch University, 2018.
- [65] S. Sharma, "Variable Bandwidth Planar Coupled Resonator Filters," Ph.D. dissertation, Department of Electrical and Electronic Engineering, Stellenbosch University, 2018.
- [66] S. Sharma and P. Meyer, "Variable bandwidth coupled resonator filters utilizing tunable non-resonant node inverters," *IEEE Transactions on Microwave Theory and Techniques (submitted)*, 2018.
- [67] T. Brand, "Synthesis Methods for Multiband Coupled Resonator Filters," Ph.D. dissertation, Department of Electrical and Electronic Engineering, Stellenbosch University, 2014.
- [68] T. Brand, P. Meyer, and R. Geschke, "Designing multiband coupled-resonator filters using reactance transformations," *International Journal of RF and Microwave Computer-Aided Engineering*, vol. 25, no. 1, pp. 81–92, 2015.
- [69] P. Meyer and T. Brand, "Design equations for multi-band coupled-resonator filters using reactance mapping," in *2015 IEEE Asia-Pacific Microwave Conference Proceedings, APMC*, vol. 1, Nanjing, 2016, pp. 1–4.
- [70] P. Meyer, T. Brand, and R. Geschke, "Techniques for the synthesis of multi-band transfer functions," in *Recent Advances in Multi-Band Microstrip Filters*, Cambridge University Press, Ed., 2015, pp. 67–109.
- [71] N. Jankovic, V. Crnojevic-Bengin, P. Meyer, and J. Hong, "Design methods of multi-band filters," in *Recent Advances in Multi-Band Microstrip Filters*. Cambridge University Press, 2015, pp. 5–66.
- [72] T. Sickel, P. Meyer, and P. Van der Walt, "An in situ tunable diode mounting topology for high-power X-band waveguide switches," *IEEE Transactions on Microwave Theory and Techniques*, vol. 55, no. 2, pp. 281–285, 2007.

- [73] S. Nassar, P. Meyer, and P. Van Der Walt, "An S-band combline filter with reduced size and increased pass-band separation," in *Proceedings of 14th Conference on Microwave Techniques, COMITE 2015*, Pardubice, 2015, pp. 1–4.
- [74] J. Kruger and P. Meyer, "Finline and coaxial line to waveguide transitions at X-band," in *Proceedings of the South African Symposium on Communications and Signal Processing, COMSIG*, Cape Town, 1998, pp. 401–406.
- [75] J. Kruger, "Design of Wideband, Low Loss, High Power Waveguide Couplers and Transitions for Implementation in Power Combiners and Dividers," Master's thesis, Department of Electrical and Electronic Engineering, Stellenbosch University, 1998.
- [76] C. Vale and P. Meyer, "Designing high-performance finline tapers with vector-based optimization," *IEEE Transactions on Microwave Theory and Techniques*, vol. 47, no. 12, pp. 2467–2472, 1999.
- [77] P. Meyer and C. Vale, "Designing high-performance finline tapers with vector-based optimization," in *IEEE MTT-S International Microwave Symposium Digest 1999*, vol. 2, Anaheim, 1999, pp. 707–710.
- [78] P. Meyer, "Characteristics of tightly coupled crossed-guide waveguide directional couplers," in *1997 International Miteko Conference*, 1997, pp. 211–213.
- [79] P. Meyer and J. Kruger, "Wideband crossed-guide waveguide directional couplers," in *IEEE MTT-S International Microwave Symposium Digest 1998*, vol. 1, Baltimore, 1998, pp. 253–256.
- [80] D. De Villiers, "Analysis and Design of Conical Transmission Line Power Combiners," Ph.D. dissertation, Department of Electrical and Electronic Engineering, Stellenbosch University, 2007.
- [81] D. De Villiers, P. Van der Walt, and P. Meyer, "Design of a ten-way conical transmission line power Combiner," *IEEE Transactions on Microwave Theory and Techniques*, vol. 55, no. 2, pp. 302–308, 2007.
- [82] ———, "Design of conical transmission line power combiners using tapered line matching sections," *IEEE Transactions on Microwave Theory and Techniques*, vol. 56, no. 6, pp. 1478–1484, 2008.
- [83] D. De Villiers and P. Meyer, "Numerical calculation of analytic solutions for higher order modes in conical lines," *International Journal of RF and Microwave Computer-Aided Engineering*, vol. 19, no. 1, pp. 99–109, 2009.

- [84] D. De Villiers, P. Van der Walt, and P. Meyer, "Design constraints in conical line power combiners," in *2010 10th Mediterranean Microwave Symposium, MMS 2010*, Guzelyurt, 2010, pp. 148–151.
- [85] T. Sickel, "Tuneable Evanescent Mode X-Band Waveguide Switch," Ph.D. dissertation, Department of Electrical and Electronic Engineering, Stellenbosch University, 2005.
- [86] T. Sickel, P. Meyer, and P. Van Der Walt, "A waveguide PIN diode mount with thermal model for high-power applications," in *2014 18th IEEE Workshop on Signal and Power Integrity, SPI 2014 - Proceedings*, Ghent, 2014, pp. 1–4.
- [87] —, "Diode mounting topologies for X-band waveguide switches," in *2007 IEEE AFRICON Conference*, 2007, pp. 1–7.
- [88] D. Prinsloo, "Multi-Mode Antennas for Hemispherical Field-of-View Coverage," Ph.D. dissertation, Department of Electrical and Electronic Engineering, Stellenbosch University, 2015.
- [89] D. Prinsloo, P. Meyer, R. Maaskant, and M. Ivashina, "Design of an active dual-mode antenna with near hemispherical Field of View coverage," in *Proceedings of the 2013 International Conference on Electromagnetics in Advanced Applications, ICEAA 2013*, Turin, 2013, pp. 1064–1067.
- [90] D. Prinsloo, R. Maaskant, M. Ivashina, and P. Meyer, "Mixed-mode sensitivity analysis of a combined differential and common mode active receiving antenna providing near-hemispherical field-of-view coverage," *IEEE Transactions on Antennas and Propagation*, vol. 62, no. 8, pp. 3951–3961, 2014.
- [91] D. Prinsloo, P. Meyer, M. Ivashina, and R. Maaskant, "A quad-mode antenna for accurate polarimetric measurements over an ultra-wide field-of-view," in *8th European Conference on Antennas and Propagation, EuCAP 2014*, The Hague, 2014, pp. 3260–3263.
- [92] D. Prinsloo, P. Meyer, R. Maaskant, and M. Ivashina, "Quad-mode antenna for wide-scan sparse arrays," in *IEEE Antennas and Propagation Society, AP-S International Symposium (Digest)*, vol. 2015-Octob, Vancouver, 2015, pp. 1516–1518.
- [93] —, "Conical quad-mode antenna with integrated tapered slot antennas for wide-field polarimetry," in *Proceedings of the 2015 IEEE-APS Topical Conference on Antennas and Propagation in Wireless Communications, IEEE APWC 2015*, Turin, 2015, pp. 1235–1238.

- [94] D. Prinsloo, M. Ivashina, R. Maaskant, and P. Meyer, "Beamforming strategies for active multi-mode antennas: Maximum gain, Signal-to-Noise ratio, and polarization discrimination," in *Proceedings - 2014 International Conference on Electromagnetics in Advanced Applications, ICEAA 2014*, Aruba, 2014, pp. 507–510.
- [95] D. Prinsloo, P. Meyer, R. Maaskant, and M. Ivashina, "Irregular quad-mode antenna array: Field-of-View comparison with the swedish LOFAR station," in *2015 9th European Conference on Antennas and Propagation, EuCAP 2015*, Lisbon, 2015, pp. 1–5.
- [96] D. Prinsloo, R. Maaskant, M. Ivashina, A. Glazunov, and P. Meyer, "Synergy in design of phased array antennas for modern radio astronomy and wireless communication systems," in *2016 10th European Conference on Antennas and Propagation, EuCAP 2016*, Davos, 2016, pp. 1–5.
- [97] D. Prinsloo, A. Glazunov, R. Maaskant, M. Ivashina, V. Kukush, and P. Meyer, "Design of a quad-mode antenna with near-hemispherical gain coverage and its characterization in MIMO scenarios," *IEEE Transactions on Antennas and Propagation (submitted 2018)*, 2018.
- [98] D. Prinsloo, R. Maaskant, M. Ivashina, and P. Meyer, "Multi-mode composite antenna," 2015.
- [99] —, "Tapered slot quad-mode antenna," 2015.
- [100] D. Prinsloo, "Characterisation of L-band Differential Low Noise Amplifiers," Master's thesis, Department of Electrical and Electronic Engineering, Stellenbosch University, 2011.
- [101] D. Prinsloo and P. Meyer, "Noise figure measurement of three-port differential low-noise amplifiers," *Electronics Letters*, vol. 48, no. 10, pp. 578–580, 2012.
- [102] —, "Multi-mode noise parameters for multi-port networks," *IET Microwaves, Antennas and Propagation*, vol. 10, no. 3, pp. 333–338, 2016.
- [103] P. Meyer and D. Prinsloo, "Generalized multimode Scattering parameter and antenna far-field conversions," *IEEE Transactions on Antennas and Propagation*, vol. 63, no. 11, pp. 4818–4826, 2015.
- [104] P. Meyer, "Multi-conductor transmission line analysis using the generalized multi-mode S-parameter transformation," in *SPI 2015 - 19th IEEE Workshop on Signal and Power Integrity*, Berlin, 2015, pp. 1–4.
- [105] —, "On the use of S-parameter transformations to improve surrogate model behaviour of multiport networks," in *ECCOMAS Congress 2016 -*

- Proceedings of the 7th European Congress on Computational Methods in Applied Sciences and Engineering*, vol. 2, Crete, 2016, pp. 1–5.
- [106] T. Beukman, “Modal-Based Design Techniques for Circular Quadruple-Ridged Flared Horn Antennas,” Ph.D. dissertation, Department of Electrical and Electronic Engineering, Stellenbosch University, 2015.
 - [107] T. Beukman, M. Ivashina, R. Maaskant, P. Meyer, and C. Bencivenni, “A quadraaxial feed for ultra-wide bandwidth quadruple-ridged flared horn antennas,” in *8th European Conference on Antennas and Propagation, EuCAP 2014*, The Hague, 2014, pp. 3312–3316.
 - [108] T. Beukman, P. Meyer, M. Ivashina, R. Maaskant, and D. De Villiers, “Modal considerations for synthesizing the tapering profile of a quadruple-ridged flared horn antenna,” in *Proceedings - International Conference on Electromagnetics in Advanced Applications, ICEAA 2014*, Aruba, 2014, pp. 488–491.
 - [109] D. De Villiers and P. Meyer, “Broadband offset quad-ridged waveguide orthomode transducer,” *Electronics Letters*, vol. 45, no. 1, pp. 60–62, 2009.
 - [110] D. De Villiers, P. Meyer, and K. Palmer, “Design of a wideband orthomode transducer,” in *2009 IEEE AFRICON Conference*, Nairobi, 2009, pp. 1–6.
 - [111] K. Schoeman, P. Meyer, and D. De Villiers, “Exponential TEM horn with a convex triangular arc,” in *2013 IEEE AFRICON Conference*, Mauritius, 2013, pp. 1–4.
 - [112] M. Ivashina, T. Beukman, C. Bencivenni, O. Iupikov, R. Maaskant, P. Meyer, and M. Pantaleev, “Design of wideband quadruple-ridged flared horn feeds for future radio telescopes,” in *Antenna EMB Symposium, Swedish Microwave Days, 11-12 March, Gothenburg, Sweden*, 2014.
 - [113] T. Beukman, P. Meyer, R. Maaskant, and M. Ivashina, “Equivalent circuit of a quadraaxial feed for ultra-wide bandwidth quadruple-ridged flared horn antennas,” in *2015 9th European Conference on Antennas and Propagation, EuCAP 2015*, Lisbon, 2015, pp. 1–5.
 - [114] T. Beukman, P. Meyer, M. Ivashina, and R. Maaskant, “Modal-based design of a wideband quadruple-ridged flared horn antenna,” *IEEE Transactions on Antennas and Propagation*, vol. 64, no. 5, pp. 1615–1626, 2016.